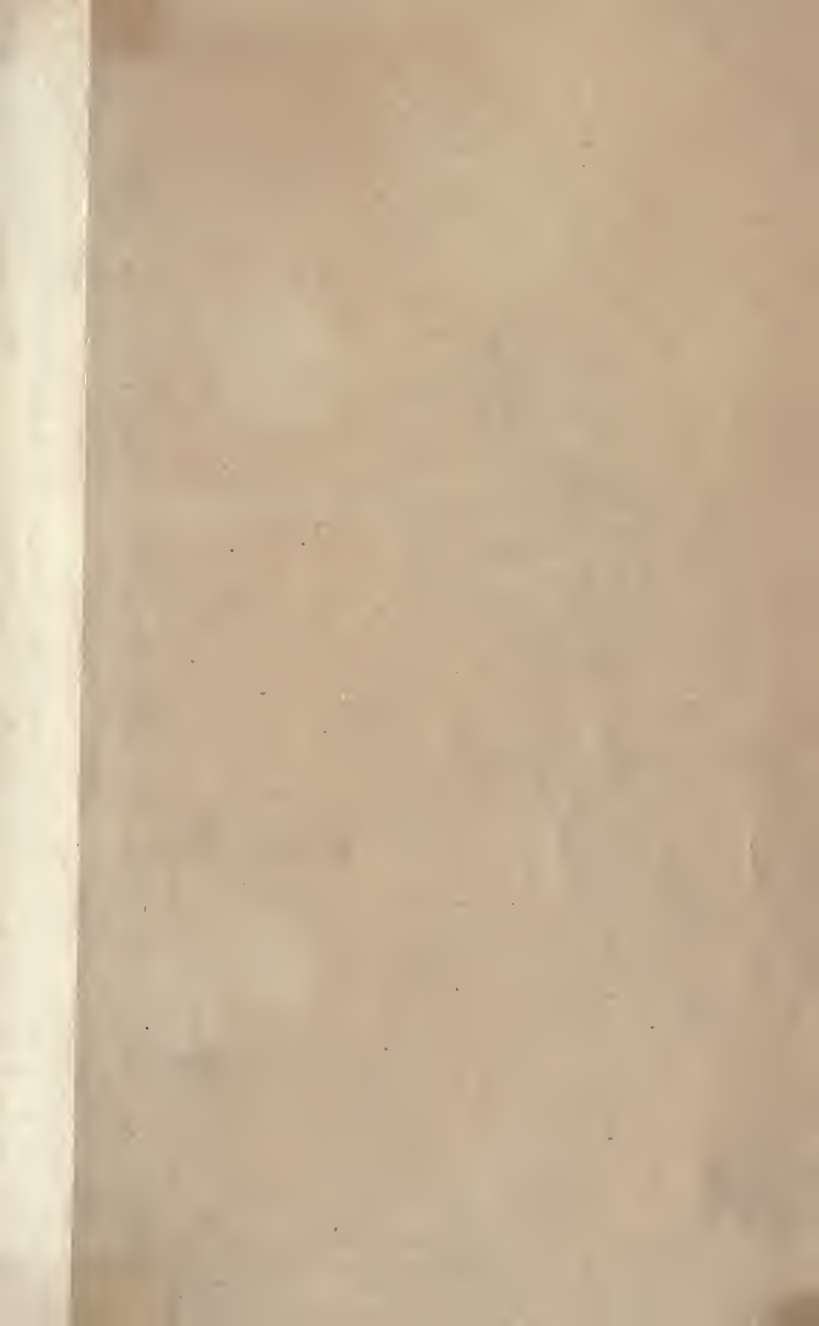




20 -



1





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

**RUSSIAN GRAMMAR**

## BY THE SAME AUTHOR

**FIRST RUSSIAN BOOK.** A Practical Manual of Russian Declensions. The case-endings and vocabularies with phonetic transcription, and numerous easy and useful phrases. 2s. 6d. net.

**SECOND RUSSIAN BOOK.** A Practical Manual of Russian Verbs. The most important verbs with full phonetic transcription, giving both aspects, and numerous examples of their use. 3s. 6d. net.

**THIRD RUSSIAN BOOK.** Extracts from AKSÁKOV, GRIGORÓVICH, HÉRZEN, and SALTYKÓV, with accents marked throughout, copious notes, and complete vocabulary. 2s. 6d. net.

**FOURTH RUSSIAN BOOK.** Russian and English Exercises, &c., specially designed for use with the above volumes, including examples of Russian correspondence. *[In preparation.]*

**THE BALKANS:** A History of Bulgaria, Serbia, Greece, Rumania, Turkey. By NEVILL FORBES, A. J. TOYNBEE, D. MITRANY, D. G. HOGARTH. Crown 8vo, with three maps. 5s. net.

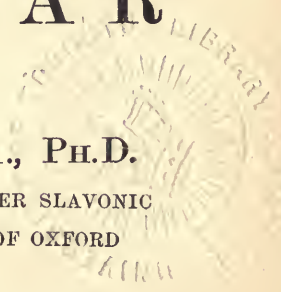
OR. 37  
F 6943r

# RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

BY

NEVILL FORBES, M.A., PH.D.

READER IN RUSSIAN AND THE OTHER SLAVONIC  
LANGUAGES IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD



SECOND EDITION

165217.  
20.9.21.

OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1917

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK

TORONTO MELBOURNE CAPE TOWN BOMBAY

HUMPHREY MILFORD

PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

514301

10.8.10



## PREFACE

THE accompanying volume is a practical rather than a scientific grammar. It is intended for the use of those students who are working under a teacher able to explain the difficulties of the language to them, and also for the use of those who are working at the language by themselves with the object of being able to read it; but it does not profess to be an adequate means of teaching any one working alone how to speak Russian.

As it is an elementary book, philological references and comparisons and etymological explanations have been avoided, in order not to discourage the beginner.

The most important points of the syntax that could be included in a book of this size have been mentioned, not in a part by themselves, but incorporated in the morphology.

I wish to thank Dr. Henry Bradley and Mr. Daniel Jones for the help which they have kindly given me with regard to one or two points of detail, particularly in those parts dealing with pronunciation. Syntactical examples have been gathered from the works of Púshkin, Gógol, Goncharóv, L. Tolstói, Dostoyévski, and Gárshin.

NEVILL FORBES.

OXFORD, *June, 1914.*

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

BESIDES being thoroughly revised, the grammar has been enlarged by several sections of a practical character; also an index of Russian words and phrases and an English subject-index have been added, which, it is thought, will be found useful.

N. F.

OXFORD, *July, 1916.*

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
Bibliography . . . . .	6-8
§ 1. Introduction: The Russians and the Russian Language . . . . .	9
§ 2. The Alphabet: Its History . . . . .	10, 11
Printed and Italic Alphabets . . . . .	12, 13
Russian as written . . . . .	14-18
§ 3. Pronunciation: The Vowels . . . . .	19
§ 4. Hard Vowels: а . . . . .	19, 20
§ 5. э . . . . .	20
§ 6. Ы . . . . .	21
§ 7. о . . . . .	21
§ 8. у . . . . .	21
§ 9. Ъ . . . . .	22
§ 10. Soft Vowels: я . . . . .	23
§ 11. е Ъ (ë) . . . . .	23, 24
§ 12. и (ï, i, v) . . . . .	26
§ 13. ю . . . . .	28
§ 14. Ь . . . . .	28
§ 15. The Consonants: б . . . . .	31
§ 16. в . . . . .	31
§ 17. г . . . . .	32
§ 18. д . . . . .	33
§ 19. ж . . . . .	34
§ 20. з . . . . .	34
§ 21. к . . . . .	35
§ 22. л . . . . .	35
§ 23. м . . . . .	36
§ 24. н . . . . .	36
§ 25. п . . . . .	37
§ 26. р . . . . .	37
§ 27. с . . . . .	38

# CONTENTS

3

			PAGE
§ 28.	т	. . . . .	38
§ 29.	ѣ	. . . . .	39
§ 30.	х	. . . . .	39
§ 31.	ц	. . . . .	39
§ 32.	ч	. . . . .	40
§ 33.	ш	. . . . .	40
§ 34.	щ	. . . . .	40
§ 35.	о	. . . . .	41
§ 36.	Phonetic transcription of sounds . . . . .		41
§ 37.	The Accent . . . . .		43
§ 38.	Declension of <u>Substantives</u> . . . . .		44
§ 39.	Masculine Nouns in -ъ, -ь, -ѣ . . . . .		45
§ 40.	Feminine	„ in -а, -я . . . . .	49
§ 41.	Neuter	„ in -о, -е . . . . .	51
§ 42.	Feminine	„ in -ь . . . . .	53
§ 43.	Neuter	„ in -я . . . . .	54
§ 44.	Note on terminations of Substantives . . . . .		55
§ 45.	Diminutives . . . . .		56
§ 46.	Declension of <u>Pronouns</u> . . . . .		58
	Personal	„ . . . . .	58
§ 47.	Possessive	„ . . . . .	60
§ 48.	Demonstrative	„ . . . . .	62
§ 49.	Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .		64
§ 50.	Definitive Pronouns . . . . .		67
§ 51.	Indefinite	„ . . . . .	68
§ 52.	Declension of <u>Adjectives</u> . . . . .		71
§ 53.	Hard	„ . . . . .	72
§ 54.	Soft	„ . . . . .	77
§ 55.	Possessive	„ . . . . .	80
§ 56.	Note on terminations of Adjectives . . . . .		82
§ 57.	Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .		83
	The Predicative Comparative . . . . .		83
§ 58.	The Attributive	„ . . . . .	86
§ 59.	The Superlative . . . . .		87
§ 60.	<u>The Numerals</u> . . . . .		88
	Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals . . . . .		88
§ 61.	Declension and use of the Numerals . . . . .		89
§ 62.	Cardinal Numbers in Composition . . . . .		94
§ 63.	Ordinal Numbers . . . . .		94

	PAGE
§ 64. Distributive Numerals . . . . .	95
§ 65. Multiplicative Numerals . . . . .	95
§ 66. Collective Numerals . . . . .	96
§ 67. Fractions . . . . .	97
§ 68. Expression of Time . . . . .	98
§ 69. Expression of Money-Values. . . . .	103
§ 70. <u>The Adverb</u> . . . . .	104
§ 71. Adverbs of Place . . . . .	106
§ 72.     "    Time . . . . .	108
§ 73.     "    Manner. . . . .	109
§ 74.     "    Degree and Quantity . . . . .	111
Note on the comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	114
§ 75. Particles and Conjunctions . . . . .	115
§ 76. Questions and Answers . . . . .	116
§ 77. Negations . . . . .	117
§ 78. <u>Subordinative Conjunctions</u> . . . . .	118
The Prepositions and the Use of the Cases with and without Prepositions . . . . .	118
§ 79. Alphabetical list of <u>Prepositions</u> . . . . .	118
§ 80. The Nominative . . . . .	120
§ 81. The Genitive . . . . .	120
§ 82. The Dative . . . . .	128
§ 83. The Accusative . . . . .	132
§ 84. The Instrumental . . . . .	138
§ 85. The Locative . . . . .	143
§ 86. <u>The Verb</u> . . . . .	146
§ 87. The Present . . . . .	147
§ 88. Present Regular Verbs, Classes I and II . . . . .	150
§ 89. Present Irregular Verbs . . . . .	161
§ 90. The Past . . . . .	162
§ 91. The Future . . . . .	167
§ 92. The Conditional . . . . .	167
§ 93. The Imperative . . . . .	168
§ 94. The Infinitive . . . . .	170
§ 95. The Gerund . . . . .	170
§ 96. The Participles: Present Participle Active . . . . .	172
§ 97.     "    Past . . . . .	172
§ 98.     "    Present     "    Passive . . . . .	172
§ 99.     "    Past         "    "    . . . . .	173

# CONTENTS

5

	PAGE
§ 100. The Reflexive Verb . . . . .	175
§ 101. The uses of the Verb . . . . .	176
The Aspects	
§ 102. Use of the Present . . . . .	179
§ 103. „ Past . . . . .	182
§ 104. „ Future . . . . .	186
§ 105. „ Conditional . . . . .	189
§ <u>106.</u> „ Imperative . . . . .	192
§ 107. „ Infinitive . . . . .	195
§ 108. „ Gerund . . . . .	199
§ <u>109.</u> „ Participles . . . . .	200
§ 110. „ Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive . . . . .	202
§ 111. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	204
§ <u>112.</u> How to express the verb <i>to be</i> . . . . .	206
§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs . . . . .	209
§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs . . . . .	217
§ 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs . . . . .	219
§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms . . . . .	221
§ 117. Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	228
§ <u>118.</u> Prepositions in composition with verbs, nouns, &c. . . . .	231
§ 119. Interjections . . . . .	245
§ 120. Relationships . . . . .	246
§ 121. Measures and Weights . . . . .	247
§ 122. Russian Abbreviations . . . . .	248
ADDENDA TO §§ 44, 48, 53, 55, 71, 72, 73, 74, 78, 106, 109,	
112, 117 . . . . .	249-252
INDEX OF RUSSIAN WORDS AND PHRASES . . . . .	253
SUBJECT-INDEX . . . . .	273

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### A. ACCENTED TEXTS

- Third Russian Book.* Extracts from AKSÁKOV, GRIGORÓVICH, HERZEN, and SALTÝKÓV, furnished with accents throughout, copious notes and complete vocabulary, by Nevill Forbes. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1917.
- A Word-for-Word Russian Story Book.* With interlinear phonetic transcription and translation, and annotated, for beginners. By Nevill Forbes. Oxford, B. H. Blackwell, 1916.
- A First Russian Reader,* from L. N. Tolstóy, with English notes and a vocabulary, by Percy Dearmer and V. A. Tananevich. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1915.
- Russian Reader,* from L. N. Tolstóy, with very full notes and vocabulary, by Boyer and Speranski, English edition by S. N. Harper and E. H. Minns. University of Chicago Press, 1906; sold in England by the Cambridge University Press.
- Sevastópol,* by L. N. Tolstóy, edited, with notes and vocabulary, by A. P. Goudy and E. Bullough. Cambridge: at the University Press, 1916 (other volumes are in preparation by the same editors).
- Bondar's Russian Readers,* with vocabulary on each page, and notes:  
No. 1, *Pikovaya Dáma (the Queen of Spades)*, by Púshkin.  
No. 2, *Razskázy (Short Stories)*, by Chékhov.  
London, Effingham Wilson, 1915-16.
- Russian Reader: Selections from Turgéniev's Poetry in Prose,* accented and annotated by B. A. Rudzinsky. Alva, R. Cunningham.

### B. DICTIONARIES, ETC.

- A New Pocket Dictionary of the English and Russian Languages.* By J. H. Freese. Part I, Russian-English (Part II, English-Russian, in preparation). London, Kegan Paul, 1916.
- Complete English-Russian and Complete Russian-English Dictionary.* Two vols. By A. Alexandrow. Published by the General Staff Office, Petrograd, 1904.
- Russian Dictionary (in Russian) of the Imperial Academy of Sciences,* Petrograd (not yet completed).
- Толкóвый словарь Живóго великорúсскою языка (Explanatory Dictionary of the Living Great-Russian Language).* By Dal. Four vols. 3rd edition, edited by Baudouin de Courtenay. Petrograd, Wolff and Co., 1903-9.

- Полный англо-русский словарь* (*Complete English-Russian Dictionary*).  
By S. G. Zaimónvski. Moscow, 'Mir' Publishing Company,  
1915 (Russian-English part to follow).
- Dictionnaire russe-français complet*. Par N. P. Makároff, 13th  
edition, published at Petrograd, by the author, 1916.
- Этимологический словарь русского языка* (*Etymological Russian  
Dictionary*). By A. Preobrazhénski. Moscow, Lissner and  
Sobko, 1910-14 (still in course of publication).
- Les racines de la langue russe*. By Léger and Bardonnaut. Paris,  
J. Maisonneuve, 1894.
- Русский Глаголь* (*Das russische Zeitwort—The Russian Verb*). An  
alphabetical list of a large number of Russian verbs, giving  
their imperfective and perfective aspects, accented. By  
Garbell, Körner, and Pervov. Published separately as part of  
the *Methode Toussaint-Langenscheidt*, by Langenscheidt, in  
Berlin, and by Wolff and Co., in Petrograd and Moscow.
- Dictionnaire des verbes russes, suivis de leurs aspects, modes et temps*  
(en préparation). Paris, Librairie russe et française L. Rodstein.

## C. GRAMMARS, ETC.

- First Russian Book*. (The case-endings and vocabularies with  
phonetic transcription, and numerous easy and useful phrases.)  
By Nevill Forbes. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1915.
- Second Russian Book*. (The most important verbs explained and  
given in both imperfective and perfective aspects, with full  
phonetic transcription, and numerous examples of their use.)  
By Nevill Forbes. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1916.
- Notes on the Russian Verbs*. By S. G. Stafford. London, Kegan  
Paul, 1915.
- Morphologie des aspects du verbe russe*. By A. Mazon. Paris,  
Librairie Honoré Champion. 1908.
- Emplois des aspects du verbe russe*. By A. Mazon. Paris, Librairie  
Honoré Champion, 1914.
- L'accent tonique dans la langue russe*. By Gaston Pérot. Travaux et  
Mémoires de l'Université de Lille, tome IX, mémoire No. 26.  
Lille, 1900.
- De l'accentuation du verbe russe*. By Paul Boyer. (Centenaire de  
l'École des langues orientales vivantes. Recueil de mémoires  
publié par les professeurs de l'école.) Paris, Imprimerie  
Nationale, 1895.

- Общій курсъ русской грамматики (General course of Russian Grammar)*. By V. A. Bogoróditski. Kazan, University Press, 1904.
- Курсъ грамматики русскаго языка. I: Фонетика (Course of Grammar of the Russian Language. I: Phonetics)*. By V. A. Bogoróditski. Warsaw, 1887.
- Полная этимология русскаго языка (Complete etymology of the Russian Language: an ordinary elementary Russian grammar, but giving a full account of the formation of words and valuable rules for their accentuation)*. By I. M. Dadýkin. Moscow, V. V. Dumnov, 1908.
- Грамматика русскаго языка (Grammar of the Russian Language)*. By D. N. Ovsyániko-Kulikóvski. Moscow, Sýtin and Co., 1908.
- Руководство къ изученію синтаксиса русскаго языка (Manual for learning the syntax of the Russian Language)*. By D. N. Ovsyániko-Kulikóvski. Moscow, Sýtin and Co., 1909.
- Элементы языковѣдѣнія и исторіи русскаго языка (Elements of Philology and of the History of the Russian Language)*. By V. Porzezinski. Moscow, Kushnérev and Co., 1910.
- Историческая русская грамматика (Historical Russian Grammar)*. By Buslájev. Two vols., 4th edition. Moscow, 1875.
- Филологическія Разысканія (Philological Researches, containing much valuable and interesting matter, including a chapter on accentuation)*. By Y. Grot. 4th edition, edited by K. Grot. Petrograd, 1899.
- Русское Правописаніе (Russian Orthography)*. By Y. Grot. 21st edition. Petrograd.
- Лекціи по исторіи русскаго языка (Lectures on the History of the Russian Language)*. By A. I. Sobolévski. 4th edition. Moscow, University Typography, 1907.
- 
- The Russians and their Language*. By Mme N. Jarintsov. Oxford, B. H. Blackwell.



## INTRODUCTION

### § 1. The Russians and the Russian Language.

RUSSIAN, like most of the other languages of Europe, belongs to the great Indo-European family of languages. Within this family it is one of the group of Slavonic languages, as German is one of the Germanic group of languages. The Slavonic group of languages includes Polish, Bohemian (or Czech), Slovak (in Northern Hungary), and Lusatian-Wendish (still spoken in the valley of the Spree), which form its Western, Slovene, Serbo-Croatian and Bulgarian, which form its Southern, and Russian, comprising Great, Little, and White Russian, which forms its Eastern and largest branch. The phonetics of the Slavonic languages have become differentiated from those of other European languages in such a way that their affinity with these latter is not always directly apparent. But one has only to look at such primitive words as сестра́ (sestrá), братъ (brat), сынъ (syn), дочь (doch'), бровь (brov'), борода́ (borodá), молоко́ (molokó), гусь (gus'), искá- (iská-) to see their close connexion with our *sister, brother, son, daughter, brow, beard, milk, goose, ask*. Other words, such as мать (mat'), домъ (dom), вѣра (vera), око (oko), видѣ- (vide-), immediately recall cognate words in Greek and Latin. Many, like вдовá (vdová), *widow*, have equivalents closely similar in most of the Indo-European languages. The population of the Russian Empire numbers about 175,000,000, and of these fully two-thirds, about 117,000,000, are Russians. Of these again about two-thirds, nearly 80,000,000, are Russians properly so called, or Great Russians, who occupy the whole of Northern, Central (as far west as Smolensk), Eastern and South-Eastern Russia, and Siberia; it is their language which is the vastly predominating one, which is also the official and the literary language, and is generally called Russian, though to distinguish it from Little and White Russian it is

termed Great Russian. Little Russian, a dialect of Russian so strongly differentiated as almost to justify its being called a separate language, is spoken by about thirty million people in Southern and South-Western Russia and in Eastern Galicia, where it is called Ruthenian. The White Russian dialect is spoken by about eight millions in Western Russia, the centre of which may be regarded as Mogilev (Могилѣвъ); it is not so different from Great Russian as is Little Russian.

## § 2.

### The Alphabet.

The alphabet used by the Russians and by the other Slavs of the orthodox confession, Serbians and Bulgarians, for the rendering of the sounds of their language is that known as the Cyrillic (кириллица). It is so called because its composition is attributed to St. Cyril (826-869), a Greek of Salonika, whose secular name was Constantine, who with his brother Methodius was commissioned by the Emperor Michael II to effect the conversion of Moravia, the Prince of Moravia having expressed a wish to see Christianity introduced into his country. Confronted with the problem how to communicate the Truth to the savages of Pannonia, he with great ingenuity elaborated an alphabet which with scientific accuracy represented the sounds of the Slavonic vernacular, so different from those of Greek. His work was facilitated by his knowledge of the Slavonic dialects current at that time in Macedonia, indeed it was on this account that he had been chosen to accomplish the task. The Slavonic language, for the transcription of whose sounds he composed his alphabet, is now generally considered to have been Old Bulgarian, which was, however, quite possibly intelligible to the inhabitants of Moravia at a time when the several Slavonic languages were without doubt very far from being so divergent from one another as they are to-day. Whether it was of the alphabet now called Cyrillic that St. Cyril was the author, or of the cognate alphabet called Glagolitic, still used in remote parts of Dalmatia, is uncertain, but it is probable that of the two, the latter, the Glagolitic, which has been proved to be older than the Cyrillic and was founded on the Greek minuscule script of the ninth century, was that actually compiled by him, and was later owing to the complexity of its character almost everywhere supplanted by the alphabet now known as the Cyrillic, which, founded on the Greek majuscule

script, was much clearer than the Glagolitic. The Cyrillic is the only alphabet the use of which the Russians have ever known, and it is not unnatural that its origin should have been attributed to the man who was the first to put down any Slavonic dialect in black on white, and has ever since been regarded as the fountain of their enlightenment by all Slavs of the Eastern faith. The art of writing was introduced into Russia simultaneously with Christianity in the tenth century, and the Cyrillic alphabet was imposed upon the country with as much vigour as the new religion, but with far less regard for local conditions. The alphabet had been an admirable instrument for rendering Old Bulgarian, but the phonology of that language was then already very different from that of Russian. Old Bulgarian (called in Russian 'Church-Slavonic'), however, immediately established itself as the language of the church, a position it still holds with quite inconsiderable modifications to-day; it became the only approved medium of expression for all literary work, and, though it could not remain altogether free from the influences of the vernacular Russian, especially in works of a secular character, yet the alphabet itself took such firm root, that no attempts to alter it have been successful. Of the influence of Old Bulgarian, or Church-Slavonic, on the grammatical forms and vocabulary of Russian, mention will be made later. Here it is only necessary to remind the student that the discrepancies between Russian as it is written and Russian as it is spoken, the illogicalness of Russian orthography, which owes its quaint charm to a sense of historical tradition and recalls that of our own language, and consequently much of the difficulty experienced in mastering Russian, are all due to the fact that the Cyrillic alphabet was not originally made for that language. It is necessary in every language to submit to certain conventions, and it is doubtful whether those which regulate the orthography of the Western Slavonic languages, e. g. Polish and Czech, which use a distorted Latin alphabet, are more rational and less formidable than those which govern Russian. Besides Sanskrit, the only language which has a really scientific alphabet, in which every letter corresponds exactly and without help of accents to the sound it is intended to represent, is Serbian, where there was no historical tradition strong enough to obstruct reform. The Cyrillic alphabet is based on that

of the Greek majuscule script but contains important additional signs, the origin of which is not known, representing sounds which never existed in Greek. Its directly Greek origin is apparent in the quite unnecessary incorporation in it, of ἥτα (η), ἰῶτα (ι), and ὦ ψιλόν (υ), which all had exactly the same value in Greek as it was spoken in the ninth century, viz. *i*, and in the necessity of inventing a separate sign for *b* (Б б), because the Greek β was in the ninth century only pronounced as *v*, except after *m*, e. g. λαμβάνω, while in Old Bulgarian *b* never followed on a nasal consonant. The Cyrillic characters, which were originally very plain, but had by the eighteenth century assumed somewhat complicated and unwieldy shapes, were by Peter the Great simplified for the requirements of modern printing and at the present time have the following appearance:

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
А а	<i>A a</i>	<i>a</i>	а
Б б	<i>B б</i>	<i>b</i>	бе
В в	<i>V в</i>	<i>v</i>	ве
Г г	<i>G г</i>	<i>g</i>	ге
Д д	<i>D д</i>	<i>d</i>	де
Е е	<i>E e</i>	<i>e</i> <sup>1</sup>	е
Ж ж	<i>Ж ж</i>	<i>zh</i>	же
З з	<i>Z з</i>	<i>z</i>	зе
И и	<i>I и</i>	<i>i</i> <sup>2</sup>	и
І і	<i>I і</i>		{ <i>i</i> съ точкой (= <i>i</i> with a dot) <i>й</i> съ краткой (= <i>i</i> with a short quantity)
Й й <sup>3</sup>	<i>Й й</i>		
К к	<i>K к</i>	<i>k</i>	ка
Л л	<i>L л</i>	<i>l</i>	эль

<sup>1</sup> After vowels, also after *ъ* and *ь*, both *e* and *ѣ* are transliterated *ye*.

<sup>2</sup> The very common adjectival terminations *-ий* and *-ій* are transliterated by the one letter *y* and *i* respectively.

<sup>3</sup> These four letters, *й ѣ ъ ь*, are never initial.

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
М м	<i>М м</i>	<i>m</i>	эмь
Н н	<i>Н н</i>	<i>n</i>	энь
О о	<i>О о</i>	<i>o</i>	о
П п	<i>П п</i>	<i>p</i>	пе
Р р	<i>Р р</i>	<i>r</i>	эрь
С с	<i>С с</i>	<i>s</i>	эсь
Т т	<i>Т т</i>	<i>t</i>	те
У у	<i>У у</i>	<i>u</i>	у
Ф ф	<i>Ф ф</i>	<i>f</i>	эфь
Х х	<i>Х х</i>	<i>kh</i> <sup>1</sup>	ха
Ц ц	<i>Ц ц</i>	<i>ts</i>	це
Ч ч	<i>Ч ч</i>	<i>ch</i>	че
Ш ш	<i>Ш ш</i>	<i>sh</i>	ша
Щ щ	<i>Щ щ</i>	<i>shch</i>	ща
Ъ ъ <sup>2</sup>	<i>Ъ ъ</i>	[omitted in transliteration, cf. § 9]	ерь <sup>4</sup>
Ы ы <sup>2</sup>	<i>Ы ы</i>	<i>y</i>	еры
Ь ь <sup>2</sup>	<i>Ь ь</i>	[usually omitted in transliteration, cf. § 14]	ерь <sup>5</sup>
Ѣ ѣ	<i>Ѣ ѣ</i>	<i>e</i> <sup>3</sup>	ять
Ѥ ѥ	<i>Ѥ ѥ</i>	<i>e</i>	э оборотное (= turned round)
Ю ю	<i>Ю ю</i>	<i>yu</i>	ю
Я я	<i>Я я</i>	<i>ya</i>	я
Ѧ ѧ	<i>Ѧ ѧ</i>	<i>f</i>	ѣта
Ѩ ѩ	<i>Ѩ ѩ</i>	<i>i</i>	ѣица

The place of English *x* is taken in Russian by *кx* or *кz*.

<sup>1</sup> Initial *x* is transliterated *h*.

<sup>2</sup> See note 3 on p. 12.

<sup>3</sup> See note 1 on p. 12.

<sup>4</sup> Also called *твёрдый знакъ* = *hard sign*.

<sup>5</sup> Also called *мягкий знакъ* = *soft sign*.

# The Written Alphabet

А	а	2	
Б	б	8	
В	<del>в</del> в	В	
Г	г	Г	
Д	д	д	
Е	е	е	
Ж	ж	ж	ж
З	з	з	З
И	и	и	И
І	і	і	І
К	к	к	К
Л	л	л	Л
М	м	м	М
Н	н	н	Н
О	о	о	О
П	п	п	П
Р	р	р	Р

С	с	С
Т	т	т
У	у	У
Ф	ф	Ф
Х	х	Х
Ц	ц	Ц
Ч	ч	Ч
Ш	ш	Ш
Щ	щ	Щ
—	ъ	Ъ
—	ы	Ы
—	ь	Ь
Ю	ю	Ю
Э	э	Э
Ю	ю	Ю
Я	я	Я
Ѧ	Ѧ	Ѧ

# How letters are addressed in Russian

Москва

Арбатъ д. 30 кв. 15

Е. В. Б. (Его Высокоблагородію)

Николаю Михайловичу Сергееву

---

Орловская губ

г. Мценскъ

с. Благодатное

Его Превосходительству

Андрею Петровичу Стоякину

для передачи Е. В. Б.

Борису Павловичу Смирновскому

---

Петроградъ

Главная Почта - до востребования

Его Святельству Князю

Анну Ильиничну Бюломорской

## RUSSIAN TRANSCRIPTION

Москва́

А́рба́тъ д. (= домъ) 30 кв. (= кварти́ра) 15  
Е.В.Б. (Ею́ Высокоблагоро́днo)   
Никола́ю Миха́йловичу Серге́еву.

Орловская губ. (= губе́рнiя)

и. (= и́родь) Ми́ценскъ

с. (= село́) Благода́тное

Ею́ Превосходи́тельству

Андре́ю Петро́вичу Стою́нину

для пере́дачи Е.В.Б.

Бори́су Па́вловичу Смирно́вскому.

Петроградъ

Гла́вная Пóчта, до востре́бованiя

Ея́ Сiя́тельству Кня́зiнь

Анна́ Илíнична́ Бело́морскoй.

## ENGLISH TRANSLATION

Moscow

Arbat (*House*) No. 30 (*Flat*) No. 15  
(*genitive*) His (*dative*) Highwellbornness  
(*dative*) Nicholas Mikháilovich Sergéyev.

Government (= *Province*) of Orél (Орёлъ)  
town Mtsensk

village Blagodátnoye

(*genitive*) His (*dative*) Excellency

(*dative*) Andrew Petróvich Stoyúnin

for handing-over<sup>1</sup> to His Highwellbornness

(*dative*) Boris Pávlovich Smirnóvski.

Petrograd

General Post Office, till called for (= *Poste Restante*)

(*genitive*) Her (*dative*) Serenity Princess

(*dative*) Anne Ilínichna (*cf. p. 81*) Belomórskaya.

<sup>1</sup> = B. P. Smirnóvski, c/o A. P. Stoyúnin.



## A letter in Russian

Многоуважаемый Господинъ С.!

Благодарю Васъ за Ваше письмо  
отъ 1<sup>го</sup> числа с.м., которое я полу-  
чилъ сегодня. Я очень радъ, что Вы  
донхали благополучно до Москвы, и  
надѣюсь скоро съ Вами познако-  
миться. Я буду Васъ ждать  
у себя завтра въ 11 ч. утра;  
если же это Вамъ неудобно, то  
я постараюсь прийти къ Вамъ  
въ день и въ часъ, которые Вы  
сами назначите. Въ при-  
ятномъ ожиданіи скоро съ  
Вами повидатся, и желаю  
Вамъ всего хорошаго, остаюсь

преданный Вамъ

А. Б.

## RUSSIAN TRANSCRIPTION

Многочуважаемый Господи́нъ С.!

Благодарю Васъ за Ваше письмо отъ 1го (= първаго) числа с. м. (= сего мѣсяца), которое я получилъ себѣдня. Я очень радъ, что Вы доѣхали благополучно до Москвы, и надѣюсь скоро съ Вами познакомиться. Я буду Васъ ждать у себя завтра въ 11 ч. (= часовъ) утра; если же это Вамъ неудобно, то я постараюсь прийти къ Вамъ въ день и въ часъ, которые Вы сами назначите. Въ приятномъ ожиданіи скоро съ Вами повидаться, и желая Вамъ всеобщаго, остаюсь

преданный Вамъ

А. В.

## ENGLISH TRANSLATION

MUCH-RESPECTED MR. S.,

Thank you for your letter of the 1st inst. (lit. date of this month), which I received to-day. I am very glad that you have reached Moscow safely, and hope soon to make your acquaintance. I shall expect you at my house to-morrow at 11 a.m.; but if this is inconvenient for you, then I will try and come to (see) you on a day and at an hour which you shall yourself fix. In the pleasant expectation of soon meeting you, and wishing you every good, I remain,

devoted to you,

A. V.

(N. B.—People with whom one is already acquainted are always addressed by the Christian name and the patronymic. *Dear Sir* (Милостивый Государь = Merciful Sovereign) is used in very formal or business letters, usually with the name added. *Dear* (дорогой, милый) is only used to relations or intimate friends; a more formal ending is глубокоуважающій Васъ, cf. p. 201. An intermediate opening is любезный = *amiable*.)

## PRONUNCIATION

### § 3. The Vowels.

There are ten vowels in Russian, five hard and, corresponding to these, five soft or palatalized, and two so-called mute vowels, one hard and one soft. A soft or palatalized vowel means a hard vowel preceded by the sound of the English letter *y* in such a way as to make a monophthong; e.g. the sound contained in the English words *you* or *yew* is really a palatalized *u*. This process of turning a hard into a soft vowel is called palatalization and plays a very important part in Russian. Whenever a soft or palatal vowel is preceded immediately by a consonant, the latter is affected by the *y*-sound of the palatal vowel and coalesces with it, the result being a softened or palatalized consonant. A consonant followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced differently from one followed by a hard vowel, though the effect of the palatal vowel is much greater on some consonants than on others, while the effect of certain palatal vowels is greater than that of others.

Further, a palatal vowel sometimes affects the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, though here again certain palatal vowels particularly affect certain hard vowels.

The pronunciation of the vowels is further influenced by the position of the accent. The Russian is a stress accent and is mobile, i.e. it can fall on any syllable. There are certain rules for the placing of the accent, but as they are positively riddled with exceptions, it is far more difficult to learn them from a book than by ear or by reading accented texts; they have therefore been omitted in this grammar, the accent itself, however, of course being marked in the case of each word mentioned.

### § 4. Hard Vowels.

The five hard vowels are

а э ы о у

and the mute vowel ъ.

**A a = a** k e d

when accented and not followed by a palatal vowel (sc. with an intermediate consonant) is pronounced somewhat as in *father* but is more like the *a* in the French *ma = my* (f.), or in the German *das Land*, e. g. да = *yes*, рано = *early*, мало = *little* (adverb). When not accented (and not followed by a palatal vowel) it is of the same quality as accented *a* only much shorter, e. g. работа = *work*. If, however, it precedes the accent by more than one syllable, or if, following the accent, it is itself followed by a hard vowel, then it is pronounced like the obscure vowel in English, i. e. like the first *a* in *paternal* or like *er* in *order*, e. g. тараканъ = *cockroach*, облако = *cloud*. Accented and unaccented *a*, when followed in a subsequent syllable by a palatal vowel, is pronounced much sharper, more like *a* in the French word *Espagne*, e. g. in such words as Италия = *Italy* (pronounced as Italians pronounce *Italia*), далекó = *far*, даю́ = *I give*. For the pronunciation of accented *a* when followed by the soft mute vowel *ь*, cf. § 14. Initial *a* is very rare in Russian.

## § 5.

**Ә ә = e**

(called in Russian э оборóтное = *turned round*) occurs only in two or three genuinely Russian words (in which it is always accented) as a demonstrative prefix, but is common in words of foreign origin. Its pronunciation depends on whether it is followed in the next syllable by a hard or a soft (palatalized) vowel. If the vowel in the following syllable is hard, e. g. in the word это = *this* (N.), ә is pronounced very open and has the value of *e*, *ai*, or *a* as they are pronounced respectively in the English words *ere*, *air*, or *fare* in the South of England. If the vowel in the following syllable is soft (e. g. и = *i*) ә is pronounced like *a* in the Northern English *hate*, e. g. эти = *these* (M.F.N.), but with the lips still closer together. In foreign words ә has the value of *e* in the English word *end*, e. g. эрмитажъ = *the hermitage*, экземпляръ = *copy, specimen*, Эдуардъ = *Edward*, when unaccented; if accented, it is liable to the same changes as the demonstrative pronominal prefix mentioned above, e. g. поэтъ = *poet*, but поэтѣ = *poet* (locative case); in the first case ә is pronounced open, as in это, in the second more closed, as in эти.

## § 6.

**Ы ы = y**

This is the vowel the pronunciation of which causes most difficulty to foreigners, but less to Britons than to Germans or Frenchmen, because a sound very much like it exists in English. Its approximately correct pronunciation is best attained by saying with clenched teeth the syllables containing *y i* in the following English words: *Whitby, till, mill, rill, sill, sandy*. Russian words with similar syllables are, e. g. *быль = he was, ты = thou, мы = we, пыль = he dug, сынъ = son, дымъ = smoke*. The pronunciation of *ы* is comparatively little affected by being unaccented or by subsequent soft vowels. The *ы* in e. g. *была́, she was*, scarcely differs at all from that in *быль*. The *ы* in e. g. *были = they were* (where it is followed by the soft vowel *и*) is pronounced not quite so thickly, but is not affected in the same way as is *э* (§ 5). It is important not to confuse the vowel *y* now adopted to transliterate *ы* in English with the semi-vowel *y* which denotes palatalization. *ы* is never initial, and cannot stand after *к, г, х, ж, ч, ш, or щ*, after which letters its place is always taken by *и*. It is important to notice, however, that after *ж* and *ш* the vowel *и* is pronounced like *ы*.

## § 7.

**О о = o**

has the value, when accented, of the Italian *o* in *Roma*, much opener than the English *o* in *shore*, and more like the *aw* in *saw*. Examples: *онъ = he, дома = at home*. When unaccented the quality of *o* is entirely changed, and it is pronounced like unaccented *a* (cf. § 4), i. e. like the obscure vowel in English, i. e. like the first *a* in *paternal*, or like the *er* in *order*, e. g. in the words *пора́ = time, хорошо́ = all right, доро́го = dear (adv.)*, in all of which it sounds much more like an *a* than an *o*. This peculiarity of Russian as spoken in Moscow and to the west and south of that city explains the old English rendering of *Москва́ (Moscow)* by *Muscovy*. The effect of a soft vowel on *o* in a preceding syllable is very marked; the palatalization is anticipated and *o* is pronounced almost like *oi* in English *oil*, e. g. in *боли́ = pains*.

## § 8.

**У у = u**

when accented is pronounced like English *oo* in *boot*, e. g. *у́тка = duck, могу́ = I can, у́мный = clever*; when unaccented it is

shorter, like English *oo* in *book*, e. g. *могутъ* = *they can*, *чугунъ* = *cast-iron*. It is not affected by a subsequent soft vowel as much as are *a*, *э*, and *o*, though slight anticipation of the palatal also takes place. The reason why Russian *u* is written *y* is that the sound could only be represented in Greek by *ov*, which was incorporated in the Cyrillic alphabet as *oy* and for long written thus; these were later made into a compound letter *Ѹ*, which in its turn became gradually assimilated to the Western European *y*, but with a different value.

## § 9.

## Ъ ъ

called in Russian *ерь* (pronounced *yare*, the *a* having the value of *a* in the English words *ware*, *fare*, and the *r* being rolled) or *твёрдый знакъ* = *the hard sign*, is the hard mute vowel. This letter, at the time the alphabet was made for the Old Bulgarian language in the ninth century, had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *u*, probably like the *u* in the English word *bulb*, which value it still retains in modern Bulgarian. The letter was adopted by the Russians together with all the rest of the alphabet at the time of their conversion in the tenth century, but there is nothing to prove that there was a sound corresponding to this letter in the Russian as spoken then, though it is probable that at some earlier period the sound had existed also in Russian. In Russian as we know it this letter has never been anything more than a cipher. Its function is a purely negative one, viz. to show that the preceding consonant is not palatalized (softened) but pronounced hard, a fact which the total omission of this letter would indicate equally clearly. In the advertisement columns of the press, in some newspapers, and by people who either make a point of being up-to-date or wish to save time and space, it is frequently omitted, but in all printed books, in the majority of newspapers, and by most people it is still used owing to the authority of tradition and convention. *ъ* is commonest as a terminal, it is never initial, and the convention for the use of medial *ъ* is that in those words which begin with a soft vowel and are compounded with a preposition ending in a hard consonant, the preposition retains the *ъ*, e. g. *объ + яснѣніе* = *explanation* is written *объяснѣніе*.

### § 10. Soft Vowels.

The five corresponding soft or palatal vowels are

я е (ѣ) и (й i v) [ѳ] ю

and the mute vowel ъ.

#### Я я = ya

is palatalized а and when accented is pronounced like it, e.g. Ялта = *Yalta*. When it is preceded by a consonant it coalesces with it and forms a palatalized consonant, e.g. няня = *nurse*, where н has the value of *gn* in the French word *Espagne*, дядя = *uncle*, where д is like *dy* in *Rudyard*.

In the syllable immediately preceding or following the accent я retains its quality but is much shorter. When preceding the accent by more than one syllable its quality changes and it is pronounced like a short *i* or *e*, e.g. рядъ = *rank, row*, is pronounced *ryád*, nom. pl. ряды́ = *the ranks* : *ryadý* (cf. § 6), but рядовой́ = *a private*, *rydavóí* or *ryedavóí*.

я never occurs after ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ.

### § 11. Е е and Ъ ъ (or Ь ѣ)

е and ѣ in Old Bulgarian represented two distinct sounds, е : ѣ and ѣ : ē, but they are both pronounced exactly alike in Russian, where the quantitative differences between ѣ and ē have been lost. The letter ѣ (called ять), which has two forms ѣ and ѣ (ѣ and ѣ), is only retained thanks to historical tradition. Like ѣ it has been abandoned in the Government telegraph service, and the words in which its use is etymologically essential have with immense difficulty to be memorized. Unaccented е and ѣ are always pronounced *ye* as in *yet*, e.g. Екатерина́ = *Catherine*, pron. *Yekatyerína* (*i* = Italian *i*); Вѣлградъ = *Belgrade*, pron. *Byelgrád*; ѣда́ = *food*, pron. *yedá*. Accented, the pronunciation of е and ѣ is affected like that of э (cf. § 5) by the character of the vowel in the following syllable. If followed by a hard vowel in the following syllable, by a hard terminal consonant, or if terminal themselves, they are pronounced like е in similar case, only preceded by the *y* semi-vowel, i.e. very open, as in English *air*, *fare*, e.g. газѣта = *newspaper*, pron. *gazyéta*; ужѣ = *already*, pron. *uzhé*; ѣду = *I am riding*, pron. *yédu*; мнѣ = *to me*, pron. *mnyé*; ѣмъ = *I eat*, pron. *yém*.

If followed by a soft (or palatalized) vowel accented *e* and *ѣ* are pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, or like the English word *yea*, but with the lips still closer together, e.g. газѣтъ = *newspaper* (dat. sing.), ѣсли = *if*, ѣдетъ = *he is riding*, ей = *to her*, здѣсь = *here*. The consonants ж, ч, ш, щ absorb the *y*-sound inherent in *e* (*ѣ*), so that when preceded by them *e* sounds like *э*, e.g. женá = *wife*, pron. *zhená*; человѣкъ = *human being*, pron. *chelavyék*; шея = *neck*, pron. *shéya*; щекá = *cheek*, pron. *shcheká*, though when ч and щ (which are palatal consonants) are followed by accented *e* (*ѣ*), the *y*-sound is still audible unless the words are spoken very rapidly, e.g. чѣмъ (inst. sing. of что = *what*) = *than*, pron. *chyem*; чѣрезъ = *over, through, across*, pron. *chyéryez*; щель = *chink, crack*, pron. *shchyel'* (*l'* = palatalized *l*).

[Ě ě = *yo*]

It is a peculiarity of Russian that accented *e* before a hard consonant or when terminal, although in certain categories of words pronounced as stated above, yet in the majority of cases changes its quality and is pronounced like a Russian *o* (cf. § 7) preceded by *y* semi-vowel. This vowel which is really a palatalized *o* corresponding to hard *o* is not counted as a separate vowel and is therefore here placed in brackets. At one time it was the custom in writing and printing to differentiate this *ě* by placing a diaeresis over it, but as Russians know instinctively when to pronounce *e* as *yo*, such an aid was felt to be unnecessary and is now seldom used. In this book the pronunciation of *e* as *yo* is indicated throughout. As only accented *e* is pronounced *yo*, the accent is in these cases omitted and replaced by the diaeresis. Examples: село = *village*, pron. *syeló*; but сѣла = *villages*, pron. *syóla*; ѣсли = *if* (*и* is a soft vowel and softens or palatalizes the preceding consonant, therefore *e* retains its original value), but ѣлка = *spruce-tree*, pron. *yólka* (*а* is a hard vowel); вѣсело = *cheerful* (adv.), pron. *vyésyelo* (*e* is a soft vowel and palatalizes the *с*, therefore the first *e* retains its original value), but весѣлая = *cheerful* (nom. sing. F.), pron. *vyesyólaya* (because although *я* is soft, yet the vowel which immediately follows accented *e* is hard). Accented *e* followed by a consonant + *ъ* is also pronounced *yo* as *ъ* has the value of a hard vowel, e.g. вѣлъ = *he led*, pron. *vyól*; нѣсъ = *he brought*, pron. *nyós*; ѣжъ = *hedgehog*, pron. *yósh* (cf. § 19).



Terminal accented *e* is always pronounced *yo* except in the one word *ужé* mentioned above, e. g. *eö* = *her* (acc. sing. from *онá*), pron. *yeyó*; *моë* = *my* (nom. acc. sing. N.), pron. *măyó*. Just as *e*, although followed by a hard consonant and vowel, is nevertheless in many cases not pronounced *yo* (cf. p. 23), so conversely it is pronounced *yo* in many cases where it is not to be expected, i. e. although followed by a soft or palatalized consonant and vowel; such cases are entirely due to analogical influence; e. g. *ведёмъ* = *we are leading*, pron. *vyedyóm*, has by its analogy caused *ведёте* = *you are leading*, to be pronounced *vyedyótye*, although the accented *e* is followed by palatalized consonant and soft vowel *e*; *теленокъ* = *calf*, pron. *tyelyónak*, and *теленкъ* = *calf* (loc. sing.), pron. *tyelyónkye*, influenced by the *e* in the nom. and in all the other cases, although followed by the soft vowel *ѣ*; *горóу* = *hill*, pron. *garóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -а), has influenced *землёу* = *earth*, pron. *zyemlyóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -а) although followed by the soft vowel *ю* = *yu*. In cases where there is no analogical influence, accented *e* before a soft vowel or palatalized consonant is pronounced *ye*, as would be expected, e. g. *Шеремётевъ* = *Sheryemyétyev*, *моёй* = instr. sing. F. from *моѣ* = *my*, pron. *mayéi*.

The consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ* absorb the *y*-sound inherent in *ě*, so that when preceded by them *ě* sounds just like *o*, e. g. *жёнъ* (= gen. pl. from *женá* = *wife*), pron. *zhon*; *чёмъ* (loc. sing. from *что* = *what*), pron. *chom*; *шёлъ* (= past tense of *идти* = *to go*), pron. *shol*; *ещё* = *more*, pron. *yeshchó*, colloquially often *ishchó*.

On the analogy of accented *e* followed by a hard consonant and vowel being pronounced *yo*, accented *ѣ* followed by a hard consonant and vowel is also in certain cases pronounced *yo*, a result of the two letters being pronounced identically. *ѣ* is thus pronounced in the following words: *сѣдла* = *saddles* (nom. sing. *сѣдло*), *гнѣзда* = *nests* (nom. sing. *гнѣздо*), *звѣзды* = *stars* (nom. sing. *звѣзда*), *приобрѣлъ* = *obtained* (past tense from *приобрѣсти*), *цвѣлъ* = *blossomed* (past tense from *цвѣсти*), *надѣванъ* = *put on* (part. pass. from *надѣвать*), and *запечатлѣнъ* = *marked* (part. pass. from *запечатлѣть*). Even accented *я* is in three cases pronounced *yo*, owing again to the confusion caused by the similarity in the pronunciation of unaccented *e*, *ѣ*, and *я*; the three words in question are: *трясъ* = *shook* (past tense from *трясти*), *запрягъ* = *harnessed* (past tense from *запрячь*), and *ей* = *of her* (gen. sing. from *онá*). In

all these cases unaccented е, ѣ, and я are short vowels of very uncertain quality; they vary from *ă* to *ě* and *ĩ*, hence the confusion in the pronunciation of certain words where they bear the accent.

## § 12.

## И (ĭ i v, cf. § 1)

These four letters represent only one sound, which is that of the Italian *i*, and the reasons for their existence and for the continuance of their use are purely conventional and traditional.

и (sometimes called и простое = *simple i*)

is by far the most common of the four; it is used (i) at the beginning of words, if followed by a consonant; (ii) in the middle of words, if preceded and followed by a consonant; (iii) in the middle of words, if it is preceded by a vowel but at the same time begins a fresh syllable itself; and (iv) at the end of words if it stands as a single vowel, or if, preceded by another vowel, it forms a fresh syllable itself.

ѣ,

called и съ краткой (= *i with a short quantity*), is only used after another vowel when it forms one syllable (i.e. a diphthong) with it, therefore never at the beginning of words.

и,

called и съ точкой (= *i with a dot*), is only used before another vowel when it does not form one syllable with it, therefore never at the end of words.

ѵ,

called ижица (= *little yoke*, dim. of иго = *yoke*), is a transcription of the Greek *υ* (upsilon), which in late Greek acquired the value of short *i*. In modern Russian it is only used in a few ecclesiastical words of Greek origin, and its place even in these is often taken by и.

и being a palatal (or soft) vowel always affects the pronunciation of a preceding consonant, though the y-sound which comes between it and a preceding consonant is not always so clearly audible as it is in the case of е. The influence of и also extends further back than the consonant immediately preceding it, and affects the pronunciation of the vowel in the preceding syllable (cf. examples of the pronunciation of hard vowels when followed by и in the next syllable, §§ 5, 7). The consonants most

noticeably affected by a subsequent *n* are *т* (*t*) and *д* (*d*), *н* (*n*) and *л* (*l*), cf. the pronunciation of *эти* = *these*, § 5, and of *дитя* = *child*, which is pronounced *dyitya*, the first syllable like *d'ye* in the phrase *how d'ye do*, *они* = *they*, pron. *anyí*; *молитва*, pron. *malyítva*. The difficulty which Russians have in pronouncing a clean *i*-sound after *t* and *d* is often to be noticed in their pronunciation of certain French words, such as *dites*, *bottines*, or indeed in that of any foreign words where *t* and *d* are followed by *i*, in which cases they are inclined to insert a *y*-sound between the consonant and the vowel.

It is to be noticed that *n* after the consonants *ж* and *ш* is pronounced like *ы*, i. e. it becomes hard and loses its palatal quality, e. g. *жиръ* = *fat, grease*, pron. *zhыр*, *жизнь* = *life*, pron. *zhызn'* (*n'* = palatalized *n*), *широкий* = *broad* (nom. sing. masc.), pron. *shyróki*, *шире* = *broader*, pron. *shjrye*. After *ч* and *щ* on the other hand *n* is always palatal.

Curiously enough initial *n* in Russian has lost its preiortization; in Russian words beginning with *n*, the *n* is pronounced *i* and not *yi* as one would expect, e. g. *ива* = *willow* is pronounced *iva* (*i* = Italian *i*) and not *yiva*. The only exceptions to this are certain cases of the personal pronoun *онъ* = *he*, in which initial *n* is pronounced *yi*: *имъ* = *by him* (pron. *yim*), *ихъ* = *of them* (*yikh*), *ими* = *by them* (*yími*). These contain the original stem of the personal pronoun, *yi*, whose defective nominative was supplied by those of the demonstrative pronoun *онъ*.

In the syllables *-ый*, *-ий*, *-ой*, in which the nom. sing. masc. of all Russian adjectives and of very many Russian family names (which are mostly adjectival in form) end, *-й* is merely the second half of a diphthong and is pronounced like *y* in the English word *boy*. It is to be noticed that in diphthongs such as *аѣ* and *оѣ* occurring in other words the *ѣ* is often barely audible, e. g. *пойди* = *go!* or *come!* sounds like *padyí*, *Миха́йло* = *Michael*, like *Mikhálo*.

The effect on the pronunciation of *n* of the absence or the presence of the accent on it is inappreciable; its pronunciation alters merely quantitatively, not qualitatively. Similarly, *n* being a palatal vowel, its pronunciation is not affected by the presence of another palatal vowel in any subsequent syllable.

The form of the letter **и** is derived from the Greek **η** (*ἦτα*); it is curious to note that while the Greek **η** has become **и** in Russian, the Greek **η** appears in Russian as **и** (cf. § 24).

For *ë* cf. § 11.

§ 13.

**Ю ю = yu**

is pronounced like the English word *you*, i. e. the Italian *u* preceded by the semi-vowel *y*, e. g. **люблю́** (*lyublyú*) = *I love, I like*. The letter itself is a combination of **ι** (*ἰῶτα*) and **ο** (*ὀ μικρόν*). Its pronunciation is not affected by the presence or absence of the accent. **ю** is also used to represent French *u* and German *ü* in transliteration, e. g. **Брюссель** *Bruxelles*, **Нюрнбергъ** *Nürnberg*.

§ 14.

**Ь ь<sup>1</sup>**

called in Russian **ерь** or **мягкий знакъ** = *the soft sign*, is the soft mute vowel. It is a word which is difficult both to transcribe adequately and to pronounce in English, but may be approximately rendered by *yér*, pronouncing the *e* like the *ai* in the English word *waiſt* and the final *rr* with the tip of the tongue, softening or palatalizing them by adding to them the sound of the semi-vowel *y*, without, however, allowing the additional sound to form an additional syllable. Like **ѣ**, the hard mute vowel, it once had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *i*, but in course of time its quality changed, it lost its power of forming a syllable, and became merely the sign of palatalization of a preceding consonant. Unlike **ѣ**, however, it still plays an important part in Russian orthography and pronunciation, and could not easily be dispensed with. It is the only visible indication there is of the softening or palatalization of a preceding consonant. As already mentioned, this softening or palatalization is difficult to explain in the terms of a language, such as English, in which this particular process is comparatively rare; the general effect is to add to the preceding consonant a *y*-sound without allowing the sound thus added to form an additional syllable. The actual sound of a palatalized consonant of course occurs frequently enough in many other languages, e. g. *d* is palatalized

---

<sup>1</sup> In transliteration **ь** is popularly omitted, but in this book and for all scientific and bibliographical purposes its presence is indicated by an apostrophe, e. g. **царь** = *tsar'*.

in the English word *educate*, *n* in the Italian word *ogni*, *l* in the Spanish word *llama*, but the difficulty in Russian is that these palatalized consonants occur as often as not at the end of words, and it is in these cases that their pronunciation is a stumbling-block to foreigners. A further difficulty is caused by the fact that the consonant palatalized by *ь*, or rather *ь* itself, influences the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, causing a throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, in German called the *i-Vorschlag*.

Examples of the similar effect of *п* on a hard vowel in a preceding syllable have already been given (cf. §§ 5, 7). A good instance of that produced by *ь* is the name of the Russian town Харьковъ, the *a* of which is pronounced like the *ai* in the word *Cairo*; the first syllable Харь- is pronounced almost like the English word *hire*, rolling the *r*. Another word in which the effect of *ь* on a preceding hard vowel is very marked is царь = *tsar*', in which the *a* is pronounced almost like the *ai* of *Cairo*; another is the name of the Siberian river Обь, commonly written in English *Obi*, but really a monosyllabic word, the pronunciation of which is approximately *Oip* (cf. § 15), *oi* having the value of *oi* in the English *coin*. This throwing-back of the *i*-sound is far more marked in the case of *a* and *o* than in that of the other hard vowels *ы* and *у*, while after *э* the soft mute vowel never occurs. The effect of the soft mute vowel, itself a palatal, on a preceding soft or palatal vowel is most marked in the case of *я* and *е* (ѣ), and scarcely noticeable in that of *и* and *ю*; in the only case where it occurs after *ѣ*, i. e. in the 2nd sing. of the present of some verbs, it is, like *ъ*, not pronounced at all. An example of *ь* after *я* is the word пять = *five*; in this case the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not so marked as in that of the corresponding hard vowel *a*, but is nevertheless noticeable, while the final *т* is softened and pronounced, e. g. like the *Thi*- in the French name *Thiers*, i. e. it is palatalized, but does not form a syllable. The difference between *я* followed by *ь* and *я* followed by a hard vowel is very noticeable in the two words пять = *five* and пято = *heel*; in the latter *я* has the value of *ya* in the English words *yard*, *yarn*, while in the former it is nearly as thin as the *ya* in *Yat*, though not quite. *Е* or *ѣ* followed by *ь* is pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, but with lips still closer together, e. g. *есть* = *there is*, is pronounced

approximately like *yaist*, i. e. like the English *waist*, with a palatalized *t*. The pronunciation of these consonants followed by *ь* is one of the greatest difficulties for Englishmen talking Russian, and the very name of this letter—*ерь*—is one of the hardest words in the language to pronounce correctly.

It is to be noticed that in the 2nd pers. sing. of the present of all verbs, which without exception ends in *-шь*, the *ь* has no effect at all, and the *ш* is pronounced hard, as if it were *штъ*, e. g. *идёшь* = *thou goest*, pron. *idyósh*; *видишь* = *thou seest*, pron. *vidyish*.

*ь* may occur in the middle as well as at the end of words, though it cannot stand at the beginning of a word. Its function is always the same, viz. to palatalize or soften a preceding consonant. Etymologically it always represents the last remains of a lost *ř* when it occurs in Russian words, and it is also used frequently in the transcription of foreign words. The word *возьму́* = *I shall take*, is pronounced approximately *vaizmú* or *voizmú* (*ai* as in Cairo, *oi* as in coin), and is of only two, not three syllables; *семья́* = *family*, is pronounced *syemyá*; *бью́* = *I hit*, is pronounced *byú* (of course as one syllable); *чьё́* = *whose* (N., interrog. pron.), *chyó* (as one syllable), and so on. In a number of neuter nouns ending in *-е*, either *і* or *ь* may be used, and the pronunciation is the same, e. g. *имѣніе* or *имѣнье* = *property* (pronounced *imyénye*—usually as three, but sometimes as four syllables). *ь* is used in the transcription of foreign words such as *пьяніно* = *an upright piano*, pronounced *pianino*, as in Italian, and always after *l* in foreign words before consonants or at the end, to show that the *l* is to be pronounced as single *l* in French and not like the Russian deep *л*, e. g. *Ольденбургъ* = *Oldenburg*, *Брюссель* = *Brussels*. It may be added that the effect of *ь* on terminal dentals, nasals, and liquid consonants is far more marked than on labials, palatals, and sibilants. *ь* does not occur after gutturals, which become palatals before it, and is never initial.

## The Consonants.

## § 15.

## Б б = b

is pronounced as in English, except medial б before a voiceless consonant and final б (sc. бѣ or бь), when it becomes voiceless, i.e. *p*, e.g. лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*; голубъ = *pigeon*, pron. *gólup*; голубчикъ = *little pigeon*, 'my dear', pron. *galúpchik*.<sup>1</sup>

Before a palatal vowel *b* is palatalized (softened), though it is not as much affected by palatalization as are some other consonants; indeed in rapid speech, when unaccented, the palatalization is sometimes scarcely noticeable, e.g. безъ = *without*, pron. *byez* (one syllable), but in rapid conversation *bez*, though it is of course never wrong to bring out the palatalization. It is always better to over-palatalize than to under-palatalize. Before an accented palatal vowel *b* is of course always palatalized, e.g. побѣда = *victory*, pron. *pabyéda* (three syllables), бью = *I hit*, pron. *byu* (one syllable).

Before the palatal vowel *я*, however, even when this is accented, the palatalization of б is not expressed, owing to the physical inconvenience involved in doing so, e.g. любитъ = *he loves*, pron. *lyúbit*; убійца = *murderer*, pron. *úbitsa*, though it is very important to remember that the *i* here is pronounced like the English *ee* in e.g. *beet*, never like *i* in the words *bit*, *bill*. As Greek β was pronounced *v* at the time the Cyrillic alphabet was made, a new sign, viz. б, had to be invented to represent *b*.

## § 16.

## В в = v

is pronounced as in English, except medial в before a voiceless consonant and final в (sc. вѣ or вь), when it becomes voiceless, i.e. *f*, e.g. ровъ = *ditch*, pron. *rof*; любовь = *love*, pron. *lyubóif* (two syllables, cf. § 14); ковшъ = *ladle*, pron. *kofsh*.

Before a palatal vowel *v* is palatalized (softened), following б in this respect (q.v.). As in the case of б, the extent to which the palatalization is noticeable depends very much on whether the palatal vowel is accented or not, while before the palatal vowel *я*

<sup>1</sup> It is worth remarking that the word рубль = *rouble*, is pronounced *rup*, as if it ended in бь.

it is not expressed at all, even when this is accented, e.g. весна́ = *spring (of the year)*, pron. *vyesná*, which in rapid conversation may often sound like *vesná*, but вѣра = *faith*, always *vyéra*, the *yer* of which is pronounced like *ierre* in the French *Pierre*; вѣю = *I wind*, pron. *vyu*, like the English *view*; вино́ = *wine*, pron. *vinó* (*i* = Italian *i*).

In the transliteration of foreign words beginning with *eu-* and *auto-* the Greek *v* is in Russian represented by *в*, e.g. Еврѣи́й = *Eugen*, pron. *Yevgyéni*, автомоби́ль = *motor-car*, pron. *astamabil'*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 17.

## Г г = g

is pronounced in various ways. Initial *г* is always hard, like *g* in the English *go*, when followed by a vowel or by the consonants *в, л, р, н, ж, з*. In the word гдѣ́ = *where*, *г* is usually pronounced like a voiced *kh*, and may be transcribed *gh—ghdyé*, though sometimes here also as hard *g* or even as *k*. Г is also pronounced *gh* in the vocative of Господь́ = *Lord*: Господи́, pron. *ghóspodyi*.

Medial *г* before a voiceless consonant is pronounced *kh*, like *ch* in the Scotch *loch*, e.g. ко́гти = *claws*, pron. *kókhlyi*; before a voiced consonant it is pronounced usually *gh*, but also sometimes *g* or *k*, e.g. ко́гда́ = *when*, pron. *kaghdá*, but also *kakdá* and *kagdá*.

Medial *г* before a vowel is hard, e.g. мно́го = *much*, pron. *mnóga*, but is as often as not pronounced *gh*, *mnógha*, могу́ = *I am able*, is pronounced *magú*, but as frequently *maghú*. In the oblique cases of the word Богъ́ = *God*, *г* is always pronounced *gh*, e.g. Бо́гу = *to God*, *bóghu*. In the genitive singular masculine and neuter of all adjectives (in which connexion it is important to remember that most Russian family names are adjectives) and declinable pronouns, -аго, -его, -ого, and -яго, *г* is pronounced *v*, e.g. е́го = *of him*, pron. *yevó*; Толсто́го = *of Tolstói*, pron. *Talstóva*. The reason for this is that the Old Bulgarian orthography adopted by the Russians was never altered by the latter to correspond to Russian pronunciation, which in this case differed from that of Old Bulgarian. It is a good instance to quote when Russians accuse English of being written one way and spoken another. It is important to remember that the word мно́го = *much* (quoted above) is not a genitive but an indeclinable pronoun, and is therefore not affected by this rule; likewise the negative немно́го = *little*.



Final *г* (sc. *гъ*) is always voiceless, i.e. *k*, except in the word *Богъ* = *God*, when it is pronounced *kh* as in Scotch *loch*, e.g. *могъ* = *I was able*, pron. *mok*, but *Богъ* always *bokh*.

*г* cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *и*) nor by *ь*; *г* followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced hard, but with a *y*-sound immediately afterwards, e.g. по *Волгѣ* (= dat. of *Волга*) = *along the Volga* (pron. *Vólgye*), географія = *geography*, pron. *gyeográfia*, but in rapid speech the *y* is scarcely noticeable. In the transliteration of foreign names and words *г* is always used to represent *h*, a quaint convention established by Peter the Great; *х* would have been in most cases more rational. The resulting phenomena are often bizarre, e.g. В. Гюго = *V. Hugo*, Гаруйчъ-Гукъ-фанъ-Голландъ = *Harwich—Hook of Holland*, Гуль = *Hull* (N.B. *not*, as might be thought, *Goole*); гидрофобія = *hydrophobia*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 18.

### Д *д* = *d*

The pronunciation of the dental consonants in particular is affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial *д* before a hard vowel, also initial and medial *д+в, л, м, н, р* is very frequently, i.e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth. The sound produced is more like the Irish *d*, rather than the ordinary English *d*, which is of course not *inter-dental*, but *cerebral*, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches not the teeth but the roof of the mouth. On the other hand, no aspirate is audible in the Russian *д* before a hard vowel. In the pronunciation of some Russians the *inter-dental* quality of the *д* before a hard vowel is not so noticeable, but as a general rule it is strictly *inter-dental* as opposed to our purely *cerebral d*. It may be remarked that it is physically easier to give the full value to the hard vowels *а, о, ы, у* after an *inter-dental* than after a *cerebral d*, and therefore the *inter-dental* pronunciation for a foreigner is doubly important.

Initial and medial *д* before a palatal (soft) vowel is, on the other hand, not *inter-dental* but strongly *palatalized*, i.e. pronounced like *dy* in, e.g. the English *d'you (think)*, e.g. дядя = *uncle*, pron. *dyádyá* (only two syllables), дѣло = *matter*, pron. *dyélo*, Одѣсса

— *Odéssa*, pron. *Adyéssa*, дитя́ = *child*, pron. *dyityá*. This explains how it is that Russians, although such good linguists, sometimes mispronounce foreign words, e.g. *Dickens*, often pronounced *Dyickens*, *Divonne* = *Dyivonne*, &c. Medial д followed by the palatal vowel ь + another consonant is difficult for foreigners to pronounce, e.g. седьмо́й = *seventh*, is only a disyllable, pron. *suedymói*, in which *dy* has the same quality as the *d'y* in *d'you*; it is important to remember that it is neither English *d* nor English *j*. In the imperatives бѹдьте = *be* (2nd pl.) and сядѹте = *be seated* (2nd pl.) the дѹ becomes as it were lost in the т, which is strongly emphasized as if it were тт, so that these words (both very common) are pronounced *búttye* (*u* of course as in Italian), *syáttye*.

Final д (sc. дѹ) becomes voiceless, i. e. *t*, but as т is a hard vowel д still remains inter-dental, i. e. with the tip of the tongue touching both rows of teeth, e.g. годѹ = *year*, pron. *got*. Final д (sc. дѹ) is pronounced like palatalized *t*, e.g. like *t y* in *let you*, e.g. бѹдь = *be* (2nd sing.), pron. *búty*, which is of course a monosyllable, the *y* here only representing palatalization. In the transliteration of foreign names дж is used to represent *j*, e.g. Джэмзѹ = *James*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 19.

### Ж ж = zh

is pronounced like *s* in the English word *measure*, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, sc. жь or жѹ, when it becomes voiceless itself, i. e. *sh*. The effect of a palatal vowel on medial ж is to make it slightly thinner (the *y*-sound is scarcely noticeable), something between *z* and *zh*, though nearer to *zh* than to *z*. Examples: жена́ = *wife*, pron. *zhená*, жа́жда = *thirst*, pron. *zházhdú*, му́жикѹ = *peasants*, pron. *muzhyki*, му́жѹ = *husband*, pron. *mush*, ло́жка = *spoon*, pron. *lúshka*. For the pronunciation of и, е, and ё after ж cf. §§ 11, 12. ы cannot stand after ж, which turns it into и. ь after final ж has not the effect on preceding vowels described in § 14. ж is always used to represent French *j*, e.g. журна́ль = *magazine* (from French *journal*), and with д (дж) to represent English *j* (cf. § 18). The form of this letter is of unknown origin.

### § 20.

### З з = z

is pronounced as in English, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, i. e. зь or зѹ, when it becomes voiceless

itself, i. e. *s*, as in *sun*. The effect of a palatal vowel on *з* when medial is merely to soften it by adding to it a *y*-sound, but in an unaccented syllable this is scarcely noticeable. Examples: злой *malicious*, pron. *zloi*, зеркало = *mirror*, pron. *zyérkala*, зима = *winter*, pron. *zimá*, указъ = *decree*, pron. *ukas* (*u* = Italian *u*). In words where *з* is followed by *ж* (q. v.) the latter absorbs the former, e. g. ѣзжу = *I ride*, pron. *yézhju*, with emphasis on the *zh*. Whenever the prepositions раз- (= *dis-*), воз- (= *up*), and низ- (= *down*), which are only used in composition, are compounded with a word beginning with a voiceless consonant (except *с*), the *з* is pronounced and written as *с*; e. g. расколъ = *dissent*, pron. *raskól*, восходъ = *ascent*, pron. *vaskhót*, but рассказъ = *tale*, pron. *raskás*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 21. К к = *k*

is pronounced as in English, except before *к*, *г*, and *т*, when it is usually pronounced *kh* (i. e. like *ch* in Scotch *loch*). Examples: какъ = *how*, pron. *kak*; къмъ = *by whom*, pron. *kyem* (one syllable), but къ кому = *to whom*, pron. *khkamú* (two syllables); кто = *who*, pron. *knto*. *к* cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *и*) nor by *ь*.

### § 22. Л л = *l*

is pronounced in two very distinct ways, according to whether it is followed by a hard or a soft (palatal) vowel. Before a hard vowel, or before a consonant followed by a hard vowel, it is pronounced as in Yorkshire or Scotland, i. e. with the tip of the tongue curling upwards, leaving a space between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. This is often called guttural *l*, but it is really rather cerebral than guttural. Some Russians pronounce it without touching, or barely touching, the palate with the tip of the tongue, so that it sounds like *w*. The Polish deep *l*, written in Polish *ł*, is almost always thus pronounced. Those Englishmen who find it difficult to pronounce the deep Russian *l* as *l*, can solve the difficulty at the imminent risk of being mistaken for West Russians, by fearlessly pronouncing *л* before hard vowels like English *w*, e. g. лампа = *lamp*, pron. *lámpa*, wámpa (*a* of course as in Italian); луна = *moon*, pron. *luná*, wuná; лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*, wop; лось = *reindeer*, pron. *lois*, wois; ёлка = *Christmas-tree*,

pron. *yólka*, *yóvka*; лгунъ = *liar*, pron. *lgun*, *wgun*; былъ = *he was*, pron. *byl*, very much like the English word *bill*, or *byw*, *biw*; была = *she was*, pron. *bylá*, or *bywá* (*y* here having the sound of *y* in *hymn*). It is also like the second *l* in *little*.

Before a soft (palatal) vowel, on the other hand, л is pronounced like Italian *gl* in e. g. *degli*, or like Spanish *ll* in e. g. *llama*, i. e. it is palatal, formed by pressing the whole front part of the tongue against the palate. E. g. лёдъ = *ice*, pron. *lyot*; липа = *lime-tree*, pron. *lyipa*; лью = *I pour*, pron. *lyu*; люди = *people*, pron. *lyúdyi*. Final ль is rather difficult for Englishmen to pronounce, but the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, contained in the ъ, on to the preceding vowel is very marked and makes it easier, e. g. боль = *pain*, pron. very much like *boil*, but giving the л the value of Italian *gl*. Ль followed by other consonants is still more difficult to pronounce, but it is made easier by running the preceding syllable right into it, e. g. на льдѣ = *on the ice*, is pronounced approximately *naildú*, *ai* having the value of *ai* in *Cairo*, нельзѣ = *it is impossible*, pron. *nyalezýá* in two syllables, *-yale* like the American *Yale*, and л having the value of Italian *gl*. Л followed by a consonant and a palatal vowel is also pronounced like Italian *gl*, e. g. лже-прорѣкъ = *false prophet*, pron. *lzhepravórk*. Foreign names ending in *l* are written in Russian with final ль, e. g. Брюссель = *Brussels*, but foreign words which are regarded as having become Russian are written with лъ, e. g. капиталъ = *capital* (sc. money).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

### § 23.

#### М м = m

is pronounced as in English. Final мь is difficult to pronounce; it is of course softened, just as *m* in the English word *mew*, but in rapid conversation this is scarcely noticeable. It is easier for foreigners to express palatalization by emphasizing the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e. g. семь = *seven*, pron. *syame*, *syaim*, like the English words *same*, *aim*; восемь = *eight*, pron. *vóisyame*, which in rapid conversation becomes *vóisim* or *vóisyem*. In the syllable мн the *y*-sound is very difficult to express after м, even for Russians, and is therefore inaudible, e. g. мимо = *past* (prep.), pron. *mima*.

### § 24.

#### Н н = n

is pronounced as in English. The same applies to final нь as to final мь; the sound нь is, however, more familiar to Englishmen as

it is exactly the same as French and Italian *gn*, e. g. *Boulogne* is written in Russian Булонь. In Russian words ending in нь the palatalization is if anything more marked than in those with final мь, and the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is equally marked, e. g. конь = *steed*, is pronounced *koigne*, like *Boulogne*, though in rapid conversation it sounds like the English word *coin* pronounced very short, just as *Boulogne* spoken by many Englishmen sounds like *boo-loin*. In the syllable ни the *y*-sound must always be expressed, though it is difficult for Englishmen to do so, e. g. съ ними = *with them*, is pronounced *snyimi*, -*yi*- having the sound of the English word *ye*.

The Russian Н is derived from the Greek Ν. The reason why it is in Russian written Н is that while the middle stroke of our N has remained sloping, the middle stroke of the same letter in Russian has become horizontal; in Old Bulgarian the letter was written Н and in Russian it has become Н.

## § 25.

И и = *y*

is pronounced as in English. Palatalized и, i. e. и before a palatal vowel, is pronounced simply *py*-, as in English *piano*, except in the syllable ни, where it is almost impossible to express the *y*-sound, e. g. перо = *pen*, pron. like the French word *Pierrot*, but иль = *he drank*, pron. like the English word *peel*. Final иь is very rare; it is difficult for an Englishman to express the ь, but its effect on the preceding vowel is obvious, e. g. цѣпь = *chain*, pron. *tsyape* (one syllable), -*ape* as in English *tape*, but цѣпъ = *flail*, pron. *tsyep*, as in English *tepid*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 26.

Р р = *r*

is pronounced as in Scotland; it is always rolled with the tip of the tongue, and never under any circumstances pronounced as in English or German. Exactly the same applies to palatalized р and to ри as to palatalized и and ни, e. g. Рязань = *Ryazan*, pron. *Ryazagne* (-*gne* as in French); but Рига = *Riga*, *ri*- as in English *reel*, but rolling the *r*. Medial and final рь is difficult to pronounce, but is made easier by the marked throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e. g. царь = *tsar*, pron. *tsair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in Cairo), Харьковъ = *Har'kov*, pron. *Hairkaf* (*ai* again as in Cairo), ерь = the name of the letter ь, pron. *yair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in the English word *aim*),

but *еръ* = the name of the letter *ъ*, pron. *yare*, rolling the *r* (like the English word *fare*).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 27.

## С с = s

is pronounced *always* like English voiceless *s* in e. g. *second*. Palatalized *c* is simply *s* + the *y*-sound, which latter is, however, inaudible in the syllable *сп*, e. g. *сѣмя* = *seed*, pron. *syémya*, but *сила* = *strength*, pron. *síla* or *shva*; *сѣжѹ* = *I sit*, pron. *sizhú*. The same applies to medial and final *съ* as to *рь* and *пъ*, e. g. *мо́ска* = *rug*, pron. *móiska*, *oi* as in the English word *moist*, though the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not always so easy, e. g. *Русь* = the old name of Russia, pron. *Rúis*, in one syllable, *u* as *oo* in English, with a slight *i*-sound between the *u* and *s*, which gives the *s* a somewhat minced or affected character. After a palatal vowel the effect of final *ь* is only noticeable in the attenuation of the *s*, e. g. *бо́юсь* = *I fear* (where *-сь* is the reflexive pronoun), pron. *bayús*; *мо́юсь* = *I wash myself*, pron. *móyus*; in these cases the *y*-sound after the final *c* is distinctly audible, but very difficult for foreigners to reproduce.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

## § 28.

## Т т = t

The pronunciation of *т*, as of *д* (q. v.), is particularly affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial *т* before a hard vowel, also initial and medial *т + в, к, л, м, н, р*, also final *-тъ*, is very frequently, i. e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i. e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth, or at any rate it is dental, i. e. the tongue touches the tops of the upper teeth, and not cerebral as in English. As in the case of *д*, most foreigners will find that it is easier to give their full value to the hard vowels after a dental, than after a cerebral *т*; it is also far easier to roll the *r* after dental than after cerebral *д* and *т*, e. g. *три* = *three*, must on no account be pronounced like the English word *tree*, but like our *three* without *h* and rolling the *r*.

Initial and medial *т* before a palatal vowel is, on the other hand, not inter-dental or dental, but strongly palatalized, i. e. pronounced like *ty* in e. g. *let you*, e. g. *тѣло* = *body*, pron. *tyélo* or *tyéwo*; *пѣти* = *to go (on foot)*, pron. *ityi*; *тебѣ* = *to thee*, pron. *tyebyé*; *тѣмно* = *dark*, (adv.), pron. *tyómna*.

Initial or medial  $\tau$  followed by  $\bar{y}$  + a consonant is difficult to pronounce, e. g.  $\tau\bar{y}ma$  = *darkness*, is only one syllable, pron. *tymá*. Final  $\tau\bar{y}$  is pronounced in the same way and is if anything more difficult for most beginners; it is of very common occurrence, as it is the ordinary infinitival ending, e. g.  $\text{говори́тъ}$  = *to speak*, pron. *gavarítŷ*, in three syllables, the  $y$  of course not forming a syllable, but merely palatalizing the  $\tau$ . This is very important, as mispronunciation alters the meaning of the word, e. g.  $\text{говори́тъ}$  (hard) = *he speaks* (3rd sing.), pron. *gavarítŷ*.

The pronunciation of final  $\bar{d}\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{t}\bar{y}$  is made more difficult by the fact that there is not with them, except when accented, any throwing-back of the  $i$ -sound on to the preceding vowel, e. g.  $\bar{d}\bar{y}lat\bar{y}$  = *to do*, must *not* be pronounced *dyélait* but *dyélaty* (in two syllables with palatalized  $t$ ); but, N. B.,  $\text{ма́тъ}$  = *mother*, pron. *maítŷ* in one syllable with palatalized  $t$ . For Englishmen in particular it is important to remember that final  $\bar{t}\bar{y}$  is neither  $t$  nor  $ts$  nor  $ch$ , but palatalized, just as it is in the English word *actual*; the difficulty is to pronounce the palatalized  $t$  at the end of a word with no vowel following and without letting it form an extra syllable.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek; the italic form *m* (and that of the written capital) is the result of the gradual lengthening downwards of the two ends of the bar across the top of the letter  $\tau$ .

§ 29.  $\Phi \phi = f$

is pronounced as in English, and occurs only in words of foreign origin, e. g.  $\text{фото́графъ}$  = *photographer*, pron. *fatógraf*.

This letter is derived directly from the Greek.

§ 30.  $\Psi \psi = kh$

is pronounced like *ch* in Scotch or German *loch* by some, but by others more like the English aspirate *h*.  $\Psi$  cannot be followed by  $\bar{y}$  (which it turns into  $\bar{h}$ ) nor by  $\bar{y}$ . It is always used to render the Greek  $\chi$  (from which it is derived), e. g.  $\text{археоло́гія}$  = *archaeology*.

§ 31.  $\Upsilon \upsilon = ts$

is pronounced as in English *lots*, e. g.  $\text{Ца́рицынь}$  (lit. *Tsaritsa's* or *Empress's*), a town on the Volga, pron. *Tsarítsyn*;  $\text{Ца́рское Село́}$

(lit. *Tsar's* or *Emperor's village*), a town near Petrograd, pron. *Tsárskoye Syeló*. It is also used to render the Latin *c* before *e*, *i*, and *ae*, e. g. Цицеро́нъ = *Cicero*, Цэ́зарь = *Caesar*.

The form of the letter is of unknown origin.

§ 32.

Ч ч = *ch*

is pronounced as in English *church*, except that it is a palatal consonant, whereas ours is not. The result of this is that there is a tendency to pronounce even the hard vowels when they follow ч as if they were palatal, though orthography forbids the use of я and ю after ч; in practice this palatal pronunciation of the hard vowels is only noticeable when the latter are accented, e. g. чу́до = *wonder, miracle*, is pronounced almost as if it were чо́до, but in the plural чудеса́ the *y*-sound is not audible. ы cannot stand after ч, and it is important to remember that и after ч is pronounced like the *ee* in *cheese*, not like the *i* in *chill*, e. g. in the word чи́сто = *clean* (N., sing. and adverb). е (ѣ) after ч is pronounced *ye* if accented, e. g. Че́ховъ (the dramatic author), pron. *Chyékhof*, but when unaccented the *y*-sound is scarcely audible (cf. § 11). Ъ after final ч has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

§ 33.

Ш ш = *sh*

is pronounced as in the word *English*. ы cannot stand after ш, which turns it into и. For the pronunciation of е, и, and ѳ after ш cf. §§ 11, 12. Ъ after final ш has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14, but it is important to remember that the 2nd sing. of the presents of all verbs which without exception ends in -шь is always pronounced as if it were written -шь.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

§ 34.

Ш ш = *shch*

is broadly speaking pronounced as in *Ashchurch*, but it is to be noticed that it is pronounced in various ways by various people. By many it is pronounced *shch* as described, but by many others like a very emphatic *sh* with a palatal quality; thus the word шч = *cabbage-soup* (a national dish) is by some pronounced *shchi* (*i* as in *cheese*), by others *shyi* (in one syllable, the *i* as in *cheese*).



Being a compound of *ш* and *ч* it is made palatal by the palatal quality inherent in *ч*, and thus all vowels are pronounced after it as they are after *ч*, cf. § 32. *ы* cannot stand after *ш*, which turns it into *и*. *ь* after final *ш* has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter in Old Bulgarian was *ѡ*, that is to say a *ш* superimposed on a *т*, and in that language it had the value of *sh*, which it still retains in Modern Bulgarian.

## § 35.

⊕ ⊖ = *f*

is the Greek *θ* and is called in Russian *ѳ* (pron. *fitá*). It is only used in words and names of Greek origin, e.g. *Ѳомá* = *Thomas*, pron. *Famá*; *Ѳеодóсiя* = *Theodosia* (a town in the Crimea, pron. *Feodósia*).

The Greek *ξ* is represented in Russian by *кс*, e.g. *Алекса́ндръ* = *Alexander*, *аксио́ма* = *axiom*. The Latin *x* by *кз*, e.g. *экза́мень* = *examination* (educational), or *кс*, e.g. *эксплоата́ция* = *exploitation*.

## PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

§ 36. In the foregoing, §§ 4–35, the ordinary English letters only have been used to render the pronunciation of the Russian vowels and consonants. This has been done for the sake of general utility, but it must be understood that such a method of transcription is not only unscientific but also only approximately accurate. Appended is a list of the Russian sounds already enumerated and described together with their approximate equivalents in the signs currently used for phonetic spelling in England for the benefit of those students who are acquainted with the latter; needless to say that in a work of this size neither the list of Russian sounds nor that of their equivalents can pretend to include all the variations of pronunciation which occur, variations which are largely conditioned by the varying rates of spoken speech.

Russian letter.	Phonetic transcription.
<i>а</i>	{ followed by hard vowel } or final } <i>ɑ</i>
"	{ followed by a palatal } vowel or by <i>ь</i> } <i>ɤ</i>

<i>Russian letter.</i>	<i>Phonetic transcription.</i>
а	{ when pronounced like the } е { obscure vowel in English }
э	followed by a hard vowel е
„	followed by a palatal vowel е
ы	ɨ
о	when accented о
„	when unaccented э а
у	u
я	ja or ja
е (ѣ)	je or je
и	i or ji
ѐ	jɔ (after ж, ч, ш, щ = ɔ)
ю	ju
ь	'
б	b
в	v
г	g
д	d
ж	ʒ
з	z
к	k
л	l
м	m
н	n
п	p
р	r
с	s
т	t
ф	f
х	x
ц	ts
ч	tʃ
ш	ʃ
щ	ʃtʃ' or ʃtʃ' or ʃ'
ѐ	f

## THE ACCENT

§ 37. As has already been remarked, the accent in Russian is mobile, i. e. it may fall on any syllable. There are certain rules which govern it in certain cases, but their value is discounted by the existence of numerous exceptions. Correct accentuation is one of the greatest difficulties that Russian presents to the foreigner, as a misplaced accent may lead to disconcerting errors; at the best a foreigner who puts the accent on the wrong syllable will merely not be understood at all. The difficulty is increased by the fact that neither in writing nor in print is the accent marked, and in addition by the fact that in many cases words, though spelt identically, have quite different meanings according to where the accent is placed, e. g. мука́ = *flour*, but му́ка = *torment*; плачу́ = *I pray*, but пла́чу = *I weep*; во́ды = *waters* (nom. pl.), but водо́й = *some water* (gen. sing.), and many others.

Although the Russians talk much more musically than the English, the Russian accent is not a musical, but a stress accent. The accented syllable is always very strongly emphasized (in contrast to French), and the unaccented syllables consequently lose in some cases the full value of their vowels, e. g. unaccented o is always pronounced *a* (like our *u* in *but*), e. g. доро́га = *road*, pron. *daróga*; unaccented я like *i* or *e*, e. g. пятьдеся́ть = *fifty* (lit. *cing dizaines*), pron. *pidyesyát*. It should be mentioned that in a number of cases the same word is often accented differently by different but equally well educated Russians, e. g. тёмно and темно́ = *dark* (adv.), и́наче and пна́че = *otherwise*, воро́та and воротá = *gateway*, and also that the accent is often withdrawn altogether from the noun by a preposition governing it, e. g. за́ руку = *by the hand* (ру́ку = acc. sing. of рука́ = *hand*), на́ голову = *on the head* (sc. *on to*; го́лову = acc. sing. of голова́ = *head*, во́-время = *in good time* (the hyphen is used to distinguish it from во время + gen. = *during* . . .), and sometimes from the past tense of a verb by the negative particle, e. g. не́ было, не́ было = *was not*, не́ далъ = *did not give*, though such cases both as regards nouns and verbs are the exception rather than the rule.

Failing the help *viva voce* of a competent teacher, beginners are recommended to read only accented texts, of which many have been published, in order to get used to the accent and also to read poetry, where the position of the accent is always indicated by the metre.

A list of accented texts published is given in the bibliography at the beginning of this book. By observing carefully the accents on the most commonly used cases and parts of the most commonly used nouns, verbs, &c., the student will learn where to place the accent far more quickly than by learning rules and exceptions which always contain forms that are rarely used. The accent is invariably marked in all dictionaries, even in those Russian dictionaries printed in Russia for the exclusive use of Russians, but in Russian grammars printed in Russia it is usually omitted.

## THE DECLENSION OF THE SUBSTANTIVES

§ 38. There are three genders in Russian—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; and two numbers—Singular and Plural, though traces of the Dual are numerous in the declensions.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Russian corresponding to our *the, a, an*. The context is usually sufficient to indicate which is meant, whether *the* or *a*; otherwise recourse must be had to the demonstrative or indefinite pronouns. The demonstrative pronoun is sometimes used as a definite article after the noun which it qualifies, though only in the colloquial language (cf. § 48).

There are six cases in Russian, viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental, and Locative*. This last is sometimes called the *Prepositional*, because it is never used except after one of the five prepositions: *о* = *concerning*, *въ* = *in*, *на* = *on*, *при* = *in the presence of*, *по* = *after*. The *Instrumental* can be used without a preposition, when it denotes the instrument or agent by means of which anything is done. It is also used after certain prepositions, and then loses the meaning which the name implies. For the remains of the *Vocative* in modern Russian cf. § 39, Obs. 9.

§ 39. Masculine Nouns having the Nom. Sing. in -ъ, -ь, -й.

Almost all masculines end in -ъ, -ь, or -й. All nouns which end in -ъ and -й are masculine.

All nouns which end in -ъ are called *hard*, those ending in -ь or -й *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel, begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

A peculiarity of the masculine nouns is that in the case of animate things the acc. sing. is the same as the gen. sing., while in the case of inanimate things it is the same as the nom. sing.; this rule applies also to the plural.

Examples: (hard) столъ = *table*; народъ = *people, nation*; (soft) царь = *tsar*'; олень = *deer*; сарайъ = *coach-house*.

*Singular.*

N.	столъ	народъ	царь	олень
G.	стола	народа	царя	оленя
D.	столу	народу	царю	оленю
A.	столъ	народъ	царя	оленя
I.	столомъ	народомъ	царёмъ	олёнемъ
L.	столъ	народъ	царь	олень

*Plural.*

N.	столы	народы	цари	олени
G.	столовъ	народовъ	царей	олёней
D.	столамъ	народамъ	царямъ	олёнямъ
A.	столы	народы	царей	олёней
I.	столами	народами	царями	олёнями
L.	столахъ	народохъ	царяхъ	олёняхъ

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N.	сарай	сарай
G.	сарая	сараяевъ
D.	сараяю	сараямъ
A.	сарай	сарай
I.	сараяемъ	сараями
L.	сарайъ	сараяхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The acc. sing. and plur. of all masculine nouns is the same as the nom. sing. and plur. in the case of inanimate, and the same as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate things: thus the acc. sing. of *сто́ль* is *сто́ль*, but of *ца́рь*—*ца́ря*.

2. The masc. nouns in *-ъ* have borrowed the ending of the gen. plur. *-ей* (e. g. *ца́рей*) from another declension.

3. The nom. acc. pl. of all masc. nouns in *-къ*, *-гъ*, *-хъ*, *-чъ*, *-щъ*, *-жь*, *-шъ*, end in *-ки*, *-ги*, *-хи*, *-чи*, *-щи*, *-жи*, *-ши* (i. e. take *-и* instead of *-ы*), because *ы* cannot stand after a guttural or after *ч*, *щ*, *ж*, or *ш*, e. g. *ма́льчикъ* = *boy*, nom. pl. *ма́льчики*; *но́жь* = *knife*, nom. pl. *но́жи*; *клю́чь* = *key*, nom. pl. *клю́чи*.

4. The inst. sing. and gen. plur. of all masc. nouns in *-жь*, *-чъ*, *-шъ*, *-щъ*, end respectively in *-емъ* (*-ёмъ* if accented) and *-ей*, e. g. *това́рищъ*, = *companion*, inst. sing. *това́рищемъ*, gen. pl. *това́рищей*; *но́жь* = *knife*, inst. sing. *но́жёмъ* (pron. *nazhóm*), gen. pl. *но́жей*; *клю́чь* = *key*, inst. sing. *клю́чёмъ*, gen. pl. *клю́чей*; *экипа́жь* = *carriage*, inst. sing. *экипа́жемъ*, gen. pl. *экипа́жей*. All these nouns were originally soft and have only latterly become hard. In the same way the nouns ending in *-ць* were originally soft; of these, those which have the last syllable accented have become hard throughout, e. g. *оте́ць* = *father*, makes inst. sing. *отцо́мъ* and gen. plur. *отцо́въ*, but those which are not accented on the last syllable still make their inst. sing. in *-емъ*, and their gen. plur. in *-евъ*, e. g. *мѣ́сяць* = *moon* or *month*, inst. sing. *мѣ́сяцемъ* and gen. plur. *мѣ́сяцевъ*.

5. A large number of words which contain *e* or *o* in the last syllable of the nom. sing. lose this vowel in the oblique cases when, while on the *e* or *o* in the nom., the accent afterwards passes to the case-ending, and sometimes also when the accent throughout is on the first syllable; the emphasis on the accented syllable is so strong that the weak vowel of the unaccented syllable disappears, e. g. *оте́ць* = *father*, gen. sing. *отца́*, dat. sing. *отцу́*, nom. pl. *отцы́*; *за́мокъ* = *castle*, *за́мка*; *дворе́ць* = *palace*, gen. sing. *дворца́*; *песо́къ* = *sand*, *песка́*; *кусо́къ* = *piece*, *куска́*; *де́нь* = *day*, gen. sing. *дня́*. In *ле́въ* = *lion*, *ле́дь* = *ice*, and *ле́нь* = *flax*, *e* becomes *ь* to show that the *л* remains soft, e. g. *ле́дь* = *ice*, gen. sing. *льда́*, but *ло́вь* = *forehead*, gen. sing. *ло́ба*, with hard *л*. The *e* is retained in cases where

its omission would cause an excessive accumulation of consonants, e. g. мертвѣць = *corpse* makes gen. sing. мертвецá. A few words in -ѣй make gen. sing. in -ья, dat. in -ю, nom. pl. -и, &c.; e. g. ручѣй = *stream*, gen. sing. ручья, also воробѣй = *sparrow*, муравѣй = *ant*, and соловѣй = *nightingale*, nom. pl. соловьи, &c.

Words in -ѣмъ make their gen. sing. in -йма, dat. sing. -йму, &c.; e. g. заѣмъ = *loan*, gen. займа. Боѣць = *fighter*, gen. бойца, and заяць = *hare*, by analogy, makes зайца.

In other cases where the same process apparently occurs the e and o have merely been inserted in the nom. sing. to make pronunciation easier, e. g. вѣтеръ = *wind*, gen. sing. вѣтра; огонь = *fire*, огня; уголь = *corner*, угла, уголь = *coal*, угля.

6. Masculine nouns denoting divisible matter have a gen. sing. in -у (-ю) when the gen. is used in a partitive sense, e. g. фунтъ чаю = *a pound of tea*, from чай = *tea*; máло нарѣду = *few people* (lit. *little of people*), but мнѣнiе нарѣда = *the opinion of the people*, though this gen. has become usual in a number of cases where there is no idea of partition, e. g. съ виду = *by sight*, безъ толку = *without sense*, съ низу = *from below*, съ верху = *from above*, отъ роду = *from one's birth*, изъ дому = *out of the house* (or *home*).

7. Several nouns have a loc. sing. in -у́, always accented, which is used after the prepositions въ = *in* and на = *on*, e. g. въ садѣ = *in the garden*, на мостѣ = *on the bridge*, въ . . . годѣ = *in the year . . .*, въ лѣсѣ = *in the forest*, на берѣгѣ = *on the bank* (or *shore*), на лугѣ = *in the meadow*, на краѣ = *on the edge* (from край), въ углу = *in the corner* (nom. уголь), на полѣ = *on the floor*, and others. Cf. § 68.

N.B. After the prepositions о (объ) = *about* and при = *near* the loc. in -ѣ is used.

8. Several nouns have a nom. pl. in -á, -я́, which is always accented. This is really the old nom. dual, but its use has extended from the dual to the plural; e. g. глазъ = *eye*, nom. pl. глаза́; берегъ = *bank*, nom. pl. берега́ = *the two banks of a river*, but also = *the shores of the ocean*; рогъ = *horn*, nom. pl. рога́; бокъ = *side*, nom. pl. бока́; also вечеръ = *evening* has nom. pl. вечера́; домъ = *house*, дома́; голосъ = *voice*, голоса́; колоколь = *bell*, колокола́; городъ = *town* makes города́; докторъ = *doctor*, докторá; профессоръ = *professor*, профессорá; учитель = *teacher*, учителя́; вѣкъ = *age, century*, годъ = *year*, and край = *country* have both вѣки and вѣка́, годы and годá, краи and край. A few have two forms of the

nom. pl. with different meanings: волосъ = *hair*, has волосá = *hairs*, and волосы = *hair* (coll.), *a head of hair*; образъ = *form, species, manner*, has образá = *holy images*, and образы = *forms*; хлѣбъ = *bread*, has хлѣбá = *the crops*, and хлѣбы = *loaves*; цвѣтъ = *colour*, has цвѣтá = *colours* and цвѣты = *flowers* (for the sing. the diminutive form цвѣтокъ is used, in the sense of a *single flower* or *blossom*); мѣхъ = (1) *bellows*, has nom. pl. мѣхи, = (2) *fur*, has мѣхá = *furs*. Several masculine nouns have a nom. pl. in -ья, which is really a feminine collective sing. in form, though used as a masculine nom. pl. Thus братъ = *brother* makes nom. pl. братья; стулъ = *chair*, nom. pl. стúлья; листь = *leaf* or *sheet of paper* makes листья = *leaves, leafage* (but regularly листы = *sheets of paper*); другъ = *friend*, nom. pl. друзья; мужъ = *husband*, мужья; зять = *brother-in-law* or *son-in-law*, зятья; князь = *prince*, князья. The last four make their gen. pl. in -ей, like царь, e. g. друзей, while братья makes gen. pl. братьевъ, стулъ—стúльевъ, as do some other less common nom. plurals in -ья; all, however, from the dat. pl. onwards go alike, e. g. друзьямъ, inst. pl. друзьями, loc. pl. друзьяхъ.

Сынъ = *son* has nom. pl. сыновья, gen. pl. сыновей, dat. pl. сыновьямъ, &c. Сосѣдъ = *neighbour* and чѣръ = *devil* make their plural like царь throughout, nom. pl. сосѣди, gen. pl. сосѣдей, &c.

A number of masculine nouns in -инъ, denoting individuals, make nom. pl. in -е and in the gen. pl. have no ending: гражданинъ = *citizen* makes nom. pl. граждáне, gen. pl. граждáнъ, from the dat. pl. onwards being regular, viz. граждáнамъ, &c.; англичанинъ = *Englishman*, nom. pl. англичáне, gen. pl. англичáнъ. Thus also татáринъ = *Tartar*, nom. pl. татáры; болгáринъ = *Bulgarian*, болгáры; датчáнинъ = *Dane*, датчáне (also accented датчанинъ, датчане); москвитянинъ = *citizen of Moscow*, москвитяне; римлянинъ = *Roman*, римляне; славянинъ = *Slav*, славяне; дворянинъ = *nobleman*, дворяне; крестьянинъ = *peasant*, крестьяне, and (not to be confused with the last, though of identical derivation) христианинъ = *Christian*, nom. pl. христиáне.

Господинъ = *Mr.*, makes nom. pl. господá = *Messieurs*, '*Gentlemen!*' (also '*Ladies and Gentlemen!*'), gen. pl. господъ, dat. pl. господамъ, &c. Хозяинъ = *host, householder*, makes nom. pl. хозяева = (1) *hosts* and (2) *host and hostess*, gen. pl. хозяевъ, dat. pl. хозяевамъ, &c. Several regular masculine nom. plurals make



their gen. pl. without any ending, as the above; this is really the old gen. pl. of this declension, while the form termed 'regular' in -овъ, -евъ was borrowed from another declension. Thus волосы = *hair* (collective) makes gen. pl. волосъ; разъ = *time, stroke, once*, gen. pl. разъ; солдатъ = *soldier*, gen. pl. солдатъ; глазъ = *eye*, gen. pl. глазъ; футъ = *foot* (measure), gen. pl. футъ, or фúтовъ; аршинъ = *yard* (measure), gen. pl. аршинъ.

The gen. pl. of человѣкъ = *human being*, the only case of the plural of this word which is used, is человѣкъ, and it is only used after numerals, e. g. сто человѣкъ = *a hundred people*.

9. Богъ = *God* has a voc. sing. Бóже, otherwise it is declined regularly, like столъ, viz. Бóга, &c. Господь = *Lord*, has a voc. sing. Гóсподи, and though soft in the nom., is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Гóспода, &c. Христóсь = *Christ*, is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Христá, &c. The old voc. of отець = *father* occurs in the phrase Отче нашъ = *Pater noster*.

§ 40. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -а, -я.

Almost all nouns ending in -а, -я are feminine. All those which end in -а are called *hard*, those ending in -я *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

As regards the accusative case, the acc. sing. of all nouns in -а, -я is quite different from the nom. sing., whether the thing be animate or inanimate. The acc. pl. of feminine nouns in -а, -я is the same as the nom. pl. in the case of inanimate, the same as the gen. pl. in the case of animate things. This is no doubt due to the influence of the masculine declension.

Examples: (hard) жéнщина = *woman*, сестрá = *sister*.

(soft) земл́я = *land*, áрмія = *army*.

*Singular.*

N.	жéнщина	сестрá	земл́я	áрмія
G.	жéнщины	сестрѣ	землѣ	áрміи
D.	жéнщинѣ	сестрѣ	землѣ	áрміи
A.	жéнщину	сестрѹ	зéмлю	áрмію
I.	жéнщиной	сестроѣ	землѣй	áрміей
L.	жéнщинѣ	сестрѣ	землѣ	áрміи

*Plural.*

N.	жѣнщины	сѣстры	зѣмли	ѣрміи
G.	жѣнщинѣ	сестѣрѣ	земѣль	ѣрміиѣ
D.	жѣнщинамѣ	сестра́мѣ	земля́мѣ	ѣрміямѣ
A.	жѣнщинѣ	сестѣрѣ	зѣмли	ѣрміи
I.	жѣнщинами	сестра́ми	земля́ми	ѣрміями
L.	жѣнщинахѣ	сестра́хѣ	земля́хѣ	ѣрміяхѣ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The inst. sing. of fem. nouns in -а, -я has two forms, the short -ой, -ей and the long -ою, -ею. The latter is the older and is still often used in poetry when an additional syllable is required, but in the colloquial language the shorter form is almost always used.

2. The gen. pl. of all fem. nouns ending in a vowel + я, which case would end in ѣ if the last letter of the stem were a consonant, is always written with an ѣ and is a diphthong, e. g. ше́я = neck makes gen. pl. шеѣ, ѣрмія = army makes ѣрміиѣ.

The gen. pl. of fem. nouns ending in -ья ends in -ѣй; e. g. статья = newspaper article, gen. pl. статей. Дѣ́дя = uncle also has gen. pl. дѣ́дей, and судья́ = judge, gen. pl. су́дей (судья́ is otherwise declined just like земля́, viz. gen. sing. судья́, nom. pl. су́дья, &c.).

3. The dat. and loc. sing. of fem. nouns ending in -ия ends in -иѣ, e. g. ѣрмія = army, dat. and loc. sing. ѣрміиѣ; рели́гія = religion, рели́гиѣ; Россі́я = Russia, Россіиѣ; А́нглія = England, А́нглииѣ.

Many fem. Christian names are spelt in two ways in the nom. sing., either -ия or -ья; if spelt in the former way, the dat. and loc. sing. ends in -иѣ; if in the latter, then in -ѣѣ: e. g. Со́фія = Sophia, dat. and loc. sing. Со́фиѣ, but Со́фья, dat. and loc. sing. Со́фьяѣ; the former spelling is preferable.

4. The gen. sing. and nom. acc. pl. of all fem. nouns in -ка, -га, -ха, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша end in -ки, -ги, -хи, -чи, -щи, -жи, -ши because ѣ cannot stand after a guttural or after ч, щ, ж, or ш.

5. The inst. sing. of all fem. nouns ending in -ца, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша ends in -ѣй (sometimes written -ѣи) if the accent falls on the ending, and in -ей if the accent falls on the root, e. g. Ца́рица = Tsaritsa has inst. sing. ца́рицей, but ду́ша = soul has inst. sing. душо́й.

6. A number of words whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation; e. g. сестра = *sister* has gen. pl. сестёръ; кошка = *cat*—кошекъ; земля = *land*—земель; деревня = *village*—деревень; барышня = *young lady*—барышень. A few such soft nouns become hard in the gen. pl., e. g. пѣсня = *song*, gen. pl. пѣсень; басня = *fable*—басень; башня = *tower*—башень. Nouns with ъ in the stem lengthen this to е in the gen. pl., e. g. судьба = *fate*, gen. pl. судьбъ; those with ѣ in the stem likewise, e. g. копейка = *kopek* (the coin), gen. pl. копеекъ (also spelt копѣйка, копѣекъ).

7. It is to be noted that there are a few masculine nouns and a number of names (mostly diminutives) ending in -а and -я and declined like feminine nouns: слуга = *male servant*,<sup>1</sup> юноша = *youth*, дѣдя = *uncle*, судья = *judge*, убійца = *murderer*, пьяница = *drunkard*.

Алёша = diminutive of Алексѣй = *Alexis*; Ваня = dim. of Иванъ = *John*; Володя = dim. of Владѣмиръ = *Vladimir*; Коля = dim. of Николай = *Nicholas*; Миша = dim. of Михайлъ = *Michael*; Пѣтя = dim. of Пѣтръ = *Peter*; Саша = dim. of Александръ = *Alexander*; Серёжа = dim. of Сергѣй = *Sergius*, and many others; notice also the name Ильѣ = *Elias*.

#### § 41. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -о, -е.

Almost all neuter nouns end in -о or -е. All nouns which end in -о or -е are neuter.

All nouns which end in -о are called *hard*, those ending in -е *soft*.

Examples: (hard) село = *village*.

(soft) { море = *sea*.  
имѣніе = *property* (sc. *land*).

#### Singular.

N.	село	море	имѣніе
G.	села	моря	имѣнія
D.	селу	морю	имѣнію
A.	село	море	имѣніе
I.	селомъ	моремъ	имѣніемъ
L.	селѣ	морѣ	имѣніи

<sup>1</sup> N.B. прислуга = a male or female servant is feminine.

<i>Plural.</i>		
N. сѣла	моря́	имѣ́нiя
G. сѣль	морей́	имѣ́нiй
D. сѣламъ	морямъ́	имѣ́нiямъ
A. сѣла	моря́	имѣ́нiя
I. сѣлами	морями́	имѣ́нiями
L. сѣлахъ	моряхъ́	имѣ́нiяхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter nouns in -e have borrowed the ending of the gen. pl. -ей (e. g. морей́) from another declension.

Nouns in -ье as a rule make their gen. pl. in -ей, e. g. ружьё = *gun*, gen. pl. ружей́, but платье = *dress or suit*, makes платьевъ́, and кúшанье = *dish (sc. the food)*—кúшаньевъ́.

Abstract nouns in -ie can also be spelt -ье, e. g. желáние or желáнье = *wish*; in the former case they are declined like имѣ́нiе and in the latter like мóре.

2. Neuter nouns in -че, -ще, -же, -ше, -це follow the hard declension, but make their inst. sing. in -емъ, e. g. учѣлище = *school*, inst. sing. учѣлищемъ́, but gen. sing. учѣлица, gen. pl. учѣлицъ́.

3. A number of hard neuter nouns whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation, e. g. окно́ = *window*, gen. pl. о́конъ; письмó = *letter*—писемъ́.

Яйцó = *egg* makes gen. pl. яйцъ́, = two syllables, while the nom. pl. is яйца́.

4. A number of neuter nouns have unexpected forms in the pl., thus я́блоко = *apple*, nom. pl. я́блоки, gen. pl. я́блокъ; плечó = *shoulder*, nom. pl. плéчи, gen. pl. плечъ́; колѣно́ = *knee*, nom. pl. колѣни, gen. pl. колѣней; ўхо́ = *ear* makes ўши, ушэй, око́ = *eye* (poetic)—о́чи, очей́; in the dat., inst., and loc. pl. these all follow селó, e. g. inst. pl. я́блоками, ушáми, плечáми (the endings in -и are relics of the old neuter dual, the eyes, ears, and shoulders being naturally mentioned in the dual oftener than in the plural). Не́бо = *heaven* makes nom. pl. небеса́, gen. pl. небесъ́; чудо́ = *miracle*—чудеса́, чудесъ́, dat. pl. небесáмъ, чудесáмъ, &c. О́блако = *cloud* has nom. pl. облака́, gen. pl. облако́въ; очкí = *spectacles* has gen. pl. очко́въ; судно́ = *vessel* has nom. pl. судá, gen. pl. судо́въ.

Дѣрево = *tree* makes nom. pl. дѣрѣвья, gen. pl. дѣрѣвьевъ, dat. pl. дѣрѣвьямъ, &c.; перо = *feather*, перо—пѣрья,—пѣрьевъ, &c.; крыло = *wing*—крыльця, &c. There is a whole category of words which are neuter in the pl. and masculine in the sing.; these are all names of young living things, e.g. ребята = *children*, (gen. pl. ребятъ), ребѣнокъ = *child*; щенята = *puppies*, sing. щенокъ; цыплята = *young fowls*, sing. цыплѣнокъ; жеребята = *foals*, sing. жеребѣнокъ; телята = *calves*, sing. телѣнокъ; поросята = *sucking-pigs*, sing. поросенокъ; котята = *kittens*, sing. котенокъ; all these words in the sing. come under obs. 5, § 39, i. e. gen. acc. sing. ребѣнка, &c.

#### § 42. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -ь.

A number of fem. nouns, especially abstract nouns derived from adjectives, such as радость = *joy*, from радъ = *glad*, end in -ь in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *i*-declension.

Example: лошадь = *horse*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	лошадь	лошади
G.	лошади	лошадѣй
D.	лошади	лошадѣмъ
A.	лошадь	лошадѣй
I.	лошадью	лошадьмѣ
L.	лошади	лошадѣхъ

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. The acc. pl. of names of animate things is the same as the gen. pl.; e.g. nom. pl. лошади = *horses*, gen. and acc. pl. лошадей; nom. pl. люди = *people, men and women* (which is used as the plural of человекъ, cf. p. 49; the singular of люди is людъ, a hard masculine noun, and means *a people*), gen. and acc. pl. людей, but кость = *bone*, gen. pl. костей, acc. pl. кости. The gen. pl. -ей of this declension is that borrowed by soft masc. and neuter nouns, cf. pp. 46, 52.

2. The regular inst. pl. of this declension, -ьми, has become replaced by that in -ями, borrowed from the soft fem. declension, in all words except the following: лошадь = *horse*, inst. pl. лошадьмѣ, люди = *people*—людьмѣ; кость = *bone*—костьмѣ; дверь = *door*—дверьмѣ; дѣти = *children*—дѣтьмѣ; but радость = *joy*—радостями; скорость = *speed*—скоростями; страсть = *passion*—страстями; сани (pl. only) = *sledge*—санями; часть = *part*—частями.

3. Those nouns which end in -чь, -щъ, -жь, and -шь, and цѣрковь = *church* (cf. the following paragraph) have the dat. pl. in -амъ, the inst. pl. in -ами, and the loc. pl. in -ахъ; e. g. ночь = *night*—ночамъ, ночами, ночахъ; вещь = *thing*—вещамъ, вещами, вещахъ; цѣрковь—церквѣмъ, церквѣми, церквѣхъ.

4. The five nouns цѣрковь = *church*, любовь = *love*, рожь = *rye*, ложь = *lie*, and вошь = *louse* lose the o in all the oblique cases except in the inst. sing. Thus, gen. sing. цѣркѣви, любѣви, ржи, &c., but inst. sing. цѣрковью, любовью. When, however, Любовь is used as a Christian name, = *Love*, then it retains the o; gen. sing. Любѣви, &c.

5. There is only one masc. noun in this declension: путь = *way*, (= *road* and *means*); it is declined exactly like лошадь except that the inst. sing. is путѣмъ and the inst. pl. путями.

6. The noun сажень = *seven feet* (measure) has gen. dat. sing. сажени and gen. pl. сажень.

7. The two nouns мать = *mother*, and дочь = *daughter* are declined as follows:

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	мать	матери
G.	матери	матерей
D.	матери	матерямъ
A.	мать	матерей
I.	матерю	матерямъ
L.	матери	матеряхъ

The inst. pl. матерямъ, дочерямъ are also used. In the colloquial language the use of мать and дочь is often replaced by that of the diminutives матушка (or мамаша) and дочка, which follow the ordinary fem. declension.

8. It is important to remember that the very common plurals люди = *people* and дѣти = *children*, are declined like the plural of лошадь.

### § 43. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -я.

A few neuter nouns end in -я in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *n*-declension.

Example: время = *time*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	врѣмя	временá
G.	врѣмени	временѣ
D.	врѣмени	временáмъ
A.	врѣмя	временá
I.	врѣменемъ	временáми
L.	врѣмени	временáхъ

Other common words in this declension are: *имя* = (*Christian name*), *плѣмя* = *tribe*, *плáмя* = *flame*, *брѣмя* = *burden*, and *сѣмя* = *seed* (which has an irregular gen. pl. *сѣмянѣ*), *знáмя* = *standard*, *стрѣмя* = *stirrup* (gen. pl. *стрѣмянѣ*).

The word *дитя* = *child*, which is neuter, is declined in the singular as follows:

N.	дитя́
G.	дитя́ти
D.	дитя́ти
A.	дитя́
I.	дитя́тей
L.	дитя́ти

The plural *дѣти* goes like *лóшадн* q. v.; in the colloquial language the alternative word for *child*, *ребѣнокъ* (cf. p. 53), is more commonly used for the singular, *child*, and *дѣти* more commonly for the plural, *children*.

The oblique cases of *дитя́* are very seldom used except in literature, and the plural of *ребѣнокъ*, *ребя́та*, is specially used in the meaning *comrades, boys*, e. g. among soldiers, though also commonly used for *children* by the peasants.

#### § 44. Note on the Terminations of Substantives.

All nouns ending in *-ъ, -й* are masculine.

„ „ „ *-о, -е* are neuter.

Nouns „ „ *-ь* are either masculine or feminine, e. g. *царь* = *tsar'*, masc., but *осень* = *autumn*, fem.

Most nouns ending in *-а, -я* are feminine, but a few are masculine and neuter, e. g. *слуга́* = (*man*-) *servant*, *судья́* = *judge*, masc., *имя́* = (*Christian*) *name*, neut.

Common terminations denoting male and female agents are: masc. *-икъ, -ель, -ецъ, -инъ, -унъ*; fem. *-ица, -иха, -ка, -унья*, and others, e. g.:

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
прикащикъ <i>salesman</i>	прикащица
ученикъ <i>pupil</i>	ученица
учитель <i>teacher</i>	учительница
пѣвецъ <i>singer</i>	пѣвица
самецъ <i>male</i> (sc. <i>beast</i> )	самка <i>female</i> (sc. <i>beast</i> )
купецъ <i>merchant</i>	купчиха ( <i>his wife</i> )
генераль <i>general</i>	генеральша ( <i>his wife</i> )
господинъ <i>Mr., gentleman</i>	госпожа <i>Mrs., lady</i>
гражданинъ <i>citizen</i>	гражданка ( <i>fem.</i> )
врунь <i>liar</i>	врунья
государь <i>sir, sovereign</i>	государыня <i>lady, sovereign</i>
баринъ <i>sir, master</i>	барыня <i>lady, mistress</i>

Notice that молодецъ = *clever chap, brave fellow* (a very common word of praise), умница = *clever-boots*, другъ = *friend*, and человекъ = *person*, can be used of either males or females. The feminine of врачъ = *doctor* is женщина врачъ = *woman doctor*.

Cf. also англичанка = *Englishwoman* (for masc. v. p. 48), нѣмецъ, нѣмка = *German* (pl. нѣмцы, fem. нѣмки). Similarly американецъ = *American*, венгерецъ = *Hungarian*, голландецъ = *Dutchman*, испанецъ = *Spaniard*, итальянецъ = *Italian*, норвежецъ = *Norwegian*, швейцарецъ = *Swiss*, ирландецъ = *Irishman*, and шотландецъ = *Scot*, all turn -ецъ into -ка for the fem. and -цы, -ки for the pl., gen. pl. = -цевъ, -окъ; португалецъ makes португалька, -льцы = *Portuguese*; австриецъ, австрийка, -йцы = *Austrian*; бельгиецъ, -йика, -йицы = *Belgian*; шведъ, шведка, шведы = *Swede*; грекъ, гречанка, греки = *Greek*; сербъ, сербиянка, сербы = *Servian*; турокъ, турчанка, турки = *Turk*; полякъ, полька, поляки = *Pole*; чехъ, чешка, чехи = *Bohemian*, and французъ, французанка, французы = *French*.

#### § 45. Diminutive Endings.

The extensive use of diminutives is one of the first things that strikes the beginner. Some words are only used in their diminutive forms, e. g. мальчикъ = *boy*, from which a further diminutive has had to be formed, viz. мальчишка = *little boy*. In many cases the diminutives are really meant to imply smallness, but very frequently they are used merely as a means of expressing affection, politeness, or good humour, and in such they are difficult, if not



impossible to translate in English. E. g. the conductor in a train always asks to see your билѣтики = *little tickets*; this does not imply that the tickets are small, but merely that the conductor would not refuse a drink.

The commonest diminutive endings are :

*Masculine.*

-икъ,	e. g.	мáльчикъ	=	boy
-ишка,	„	мальчи́шка	=	little boy
-екъ,	„	вну́чекъ	=	grandson
-ѣкъ,	„	звѣрёкъ	=	animal
-окъ,	„	дружо́къ	=	friend
-ецъ	„	брати́ецъ	=	brother
-ёнокъ,	„	коти́нокъ	=	kitten (cf. § 41, obs. 4)
-ичъ,	„	Петро́вичъ	=	son of Peter <sup>1</sup>

*Feminine.*

-ка,	„	дѣвочка	=	girl (till puberty)
-на,	„	Петро́вна	=	daughter of Peter <sup>1</sup>
-ца,	„	части́ца	=	part

*Neuter.*

-ко,	„	облачко	=	cloud
-цо,	„	письмецо́	=	letter
-це,	„	око́ньце	=	window

As an example of the varieties of diminutives that can be formed from one word, take the word дѣва = *virgin* (only used in such expressions as the 'Maid of Orleans', or старая дѣва = *an old maid*):

дѣви́ца = *spinster*.

дѣвка = *girl* (sc. *common girl, wench*, a very derogatory term).

дѣвочка = *girl* (up to 12).

дѣвушка = *girl* (from 12 till marriage, or till about 30).

дѣвчо́нка = *little girl*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Literally = *Peter's little one*; Петро́въ (masc.) and Петро́ва (fem.) are possessive adjectives formed from the word Пётръ = *Peter*, and to the stem Петров- are added -ичъ for the son and -на for the daughter. All other patronymics are formed analogously. Patronymics are often contracted in rapid conversation, e. g. Ива́нычъ for Ива́новичъ, &c.; Ма́рiя Ива́новна sounds like Ма́риiнна.

The following terminations imply good humour or affection specifically:

-ушка, -юшка, -ышко, -енька, -енка.

The following terminations are considered to imply depreciation:

-ишка, -ишко, -ёнка, -онка and sometimes -ушка.

The following are called augmentatives, as they usually imply largeness:

-ица, -ище, -ища.

## THE DECLENSION OF THE PRONOUNS

§ 46. The inflexions of these are for the most part different from those of the substantives, though there are a few points of similarity, e.g. the dat. pl. always ends in -мъ and the inst. pl. always in -ми.

### Personal Pronouns.

Я = I, ты = thou, онъ = he, она = she, оно = it, мы = we, вы = you, они, онѣ = they.

#### Singular.

N.	я	ты	онъ (neut. оно)	она
G.	меня	тебя	его	ея
D.	мнѣ	тебѣ	ему	ей
A.	меня	тебя	его	ея
I.	мною	тобою	имъ	ей
L.	мною	тобою	(н)ѣмъ	(н)ей

#### Plural.

N.	мы	вы	они (masc. and neut.), онѣ (fem.)
G.	насъ	васъ	ихъ
D.	намъ	вамъ	имъ
A.	насъ	васъ	ихъ
I.	нами	вами	ими
L.	насъ	васъ	(н)ихъ

### OBSERVATIONS.

1. There is a reflexive personal pronoun, себя, which has no nominative, and is declined alike in the sing. and pl.:

- G. себя  
 D. себя́  
 A. себя́  
 I. собой  
 L. себя́

i. e. just like тебя́.

The peculiarity of its use is that it can be applied to any of the three persons; e. g. я люблю себя́ = *I love myself*, ты любишь себя́ = *thou lovest thyself*; онъ or она́ любить себя́ = *he or she loves him- or herself*. It also occurs in a few very common idioms; e. g. такъ себя́ = *fairly, averagely* (lit. = *thus to itself*); само́ собою разуме́ется, = *that is understood* (lit. = *itself understands itself by itself*); она́ хороша́ собой = *she is a good-looking woman* (lit. *she [is] nice with herself*); онъ живётъ себя́ тамъ . . . = *he goes on living there* (here the себя́ implies that he goes on living in his own way, paying little attention to others, but not necessarily that he is a recluse; онъ сломать себя́ голову́ = *he has cracked his head*, the Russian equivalent for *he has broken his neck*).

When joined to an ordinary transitive verb (making it reflexive) себя́ is contracted to -ся or -сь; e. g. разуме́ется = *of course* (lit. = *it understands itself*), это́ не дѣлается = *that is not done*; нахожусь = *I find myself*. But the addition of the reflexive pronoun by no means always makes the word passive; Russian has many reflexive verbs which are middle in meaning, e. g. боя́ться = *to fear*; боюсь = *I fear*; нра́вится = *it pleases*, мнѣ нра́вится = *it pleases me, I like*. Cf. §§ 100, 110.

2. The nominatives онъ, она́, оно́, онѣ, онѣ́ did not belong originally to е́о, &c., and are not really personal pronouns at all, but demonstrative pronouns, corresponding somewhat to the German *jener, jene, jenes*, which in Russian, no longer used regularly as demonstrative pronouns, have been borrowed to supply the place of the lost nominatives of е́о, &c.

3. It is important to notice that the acc. sing. of онъ and of оно́ is always е́о, i. e. = the gen. sing., even though the thing to which it refers be inanimate. Similarly the acc. pl. of онѣ́ and of онѣ́́ is always ихъ.

4. The initial н- in имъ, ихъ, and ими is always pronounced *yi-*.

5. The gen. sing. of она́ is usually pronounced *y. yó*, i. e. like the acc. sing. еѣ́, though it is always written ея́.

6. The genitives of the personal pronoun *е́го, е́я, and ихъ* ordinarily mean *his, her, and their*, since Russian has no possessive pronoun of the third person, e. g. the only way of saying *his father* in Russian is *е́го о́тець* (or *о́тець е́го*).

7. The oblique cases of *онъ, она́, and ону́*, when directly governed by a preposition, are always prefixed by the letter *н*; this is ostensibly done for the sake of euphony, but the real reason is that certain prepositions originally ended in *н*, and this letter was borrowed by other prepositions which did not end in it. Subsequently when the prepositions lost their final *н*, it stuck to the pronoun where it has remained. As the loc. case in Russian is never used without a preposition of some sort, the loc. of this pronoun is always prefixed by *н*, placed in brackets in the paradigm for this reason. When a preposition precedes *его, ея, or ихъ* in their meaning of *his, her, or their*, and therefore does not directly govern the pronoun, the *н* is omitted.

Examples : *съ нимъ = with him, отъ нихъ = from them, о нёмъ = about him*, but *отъ е́го о́тца = from his father, о е́го бра́тѣ = about his brother, &c.*

8. For the inst. sing. *мною, тобою, ей, and собою* the full forms *мно́ю, тобо́ю, ё́ю, and собо́ю* are often used.

9. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun *вы* are always spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

10. The particle *же* (or *-жь*) is often affixed to the personal pronouns, and expresses identity or gives emphasis to the pronoun; e. g. *я твой братъ, я же и твой другъ = I am thy brother, I too am thy friend*; *кто вамъ далъ это? онъ—а это? онъ же = who gave you this? he [did]—and this? he [did] too*. In book catalogues when the name of the author has once been printed, *е́го же* printed in front of the titles of his various works means *by the same author*.

*же* can also mean *but* where a slight emphasis is laid on the pronoun; e. g. *вы же сказа́ли это! = but it was you [who] said this!*

11. The particle *то* affixed to the personal pronouns also expresses identity or gives emphasis.

#### § 47.

#### Possessive Pronouns.

The declension of these resembles that of *онъ, мой, моя, моё*; *мой = my, mine*; *твой, тво́я, твоё*; *твой = thy, thine*; *свой, своя́, своё*;

сво́й = *one's own*; нашъ, на́ша, на́ше; наши́ = *our, ours*; вашъ, ва́ша, ва́ше; ва́ши = *your, yours*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.	
N.	мой	мо́я	моё	мо́и	
G.	моего́	моёй	моего́	мои́хъ	
D.	моему́	моёй	моему́	мои́мъ	
A.	мой or моего́	мою́	моё	мои́ or мои́хъ	
I.	мои́мъ	моёй	мои́мъ	мои́мъ	
L.	моёмъ	моёй	моёмъ	мои́хъ	

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	нашъ	на́ша	на́ше	на́ши	
G.	нашего́	нашей	нашего́	наши́хъ	
D.	нашему́	нашей	нашему́	наши́мъ	
A.	= N. or G.	нашу́	на́ше	= N. or G.	
I.	наши́мъ	нашей	наши́мъ	наши́ми	
L.	нашемъ	нашей	нашемъ	наши́хъ	

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. Твой and свой are declined exactly like мой, and вашъ exactly like нашъ.

2. Свой can only be used when it refers to the subject of the sentence, but it can be used of any of the three persons; e.g. я люблю своего́ отца́ can only mean *I love my father* (though it is also possible to say я люблю моего́ отца́), whereas я люблю его́ отца́ = *I love his father*. Again, онъ любить свою́ сестру́ = *he loves his (own) sister*, whereas онъ любить его́ сестру́ = *he loves his (i.e. some one else's) sister*.

3. The acc. sing. of the masc. and acc. pl. of all three genders of these pronouns follow the rule of the masculine substantives; i. e. when the object referred to is animate, the acc. = the gen., when inanimate it is the same as the nom.

4. For the inst. sing. моёй, твоёй, своёй, нашей, and вашей, the full forms моёю, твоёю, своёю, нашею, and вашею are also used.

5. It is important to notice that the nom. pl. мои́ (also твои́ and свои́) is a disyllable, pronounced *ma-yí*; the nom. sing. masc. мой (as also твой and свой), on the other hand, is a diphthong, the -й being the original nom. sing. of the personal pronoun of the 3rd person, which in that declension has been replaced by онъ, &c.

6. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun *вашъ* are spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

7. The particle *же* (or *-жь*) affixed to the possessive pronouns expresses identity of ownership, e. g. *чей ѓтотъ домъ ? мой—а чьѳ ѓто поле ? моѳ же = whose is this house ? mine—and whose is this field ? mine also.*

8. The particle *то* emphasizes the pronouns; e. g.:

*мой-то ? = do you mean mine ?*

### § 48. Demonstrative Pronouns.

The declension of these is similar for the most part to that of the possessive pronouns, though differing from it in some important particulars.

*тотъ, та, то ; тѳ = that (yonder).*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	тотъ	та	то	тѳ
G.	того	той	того	тѳхъ
D.	тому	той	тому	тѳмъ
A.	= N. or G.	ту	то	= N. or G.
I.	тѳмъ	той	тѳмъ	тѳми
L.	томъ	той	томъ	тѳхъ

*ѓтотъ, ѓта, ѓто ; ѓти = this or that (here).*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	ѓтотъ	ѓта	ѓто	ѓти
G.	ѓтого	ѓтой	ѓтого	ѓтихъ
D.	ѓтому	ѓтой	ѓтому	ѓтимъ
A.	= N. or G.	ѓту	ѓто	= N. or G.
I.	ѓтимъ	ѓтой	ѓтимъ	ѓtimi
L.	ѓтомъ	ѓтой	ѓтомъ	ѓтихъ

*сеѳ, сѳя, сѳе (or сѳ) ; сѳи = this (here).*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	сеѳ	сѳя	сѳе	сѳи
G.	сего	сеѳ	сего	сѳхъ
D.	сему	сеѳ	сему	сѳмъ
A.	= N. or G.	сѳю	сѳе	= N. or G.
I.	сѳмъ	сеѳ	сѳмъ	сѳими
L.	сѳмъ	сеѳ	сѳмъ	сѳхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. For the inst. sing. той, этой, and сей the full forms тóю, éтою, and céю are also used.

2. Of these three pronouns éтотъ is the oftenest, сей the most seldom used. Э́тотъ is frequently used where we should say *that* in English, e. g. in very common phrases such as :

Что́ это́ тако́е ? = *what's that* (lit. = *what this such*) ?

Кто́ это́ тако́й ? = *who's that* (lit. = *who this such*) ?

Э́то́ бы́ло да́вно = *that was long ago*.

Э́то́ о́чень хоро́шо = *that's very nice*.

Э́то́ нашъ до́мъ = *that is our house*.

Э́то can also mean *these* or *those* when it is the subject of a sentence and very frequently has this meaning, e. g. :

э́то мои́ дѣ́ти = *these or those [are] my children*.

The neuter pronoun то is often used as an enclitic affixed to a noun or another pronoun irrespective of gender or number to emphasize or to differentiate, and it sometimes seems to take the place of the definite article.

E. g. въ то́мъ-то и дѣ́ло or то́-то и есть (both =) *that's just the point*; до́мъ-то мой = *the house is mine*.

(The first of these is not to be confused with the similar idiom given below.)

In the colloquial language, especially that of the peasants, this pronoun can be affixed to any noun (but only in the nom.) and made to agree with it, and thus acquire the value of a definite article.

3. Тотъ is used specially frequently in argument, e. g. то, что . . . = *that which . . .*; it is also used as a definite article before a relative clause, e. g. тотъ ма́льчикъ, кото́рому я да́лъ дѣ́ньги = *the boy to whom I gave the money*. In conversation, however, even *that (yonder)* is frequently rendered by э́тотъ with the addition of тамъ = *there*, e. g. э́тотъ до́мъ тамъ—нашъ = *that house over there is ours*.

4. Тотъ is especially common compounded with prepositions, e. g. пото́мъ = *then* (lit. = *upon that*), затѣ́мъ = *then* (lit. = *behind that*), пото́му = *therefore* (lit. = *according to that*), кро́мъ то́го =

*besides* (lit. = *outside that*), за то = *on the other hand* (lit. = *for that*).

5. Тотъ followed by этотъ is often used for *the former and the latter*.

6. It is important to notice the very common idiom то и дѣло (lit. = *and that's the thing*), which means *incessantly*.

7. Сеѣ is seldom used except in a few phrases in which it is extremely common, e. g. сейчасъ = *immediately* (lit. = *this instant*, though the noun часъ has changed its meaning and in modern Russian = *hour*); сію мину́ту = *this minute, this instant*; сегодня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*); до сихъ поръ = *till now* (lit. = *till these times*); и то и сѣ = *both the one and the other*; при сѣмъ = '*enclosed*' (lit. = *in the presence of this*).

8. The pronouns такой, ꙗкокой, and таковѣй = *such* are declined like adjectives, q. v.

9. The pronoun о́ный = *that (yonder)*, which supplied the forms of the personal pronoun онъ, &c., is now obsolete and only common in the phrase во время́ оно́ = *in days of yore* (lit. = *into that time*).

10. Тотъ followed by the enclitic же = *the same* and is very common, e. g. въ то́мъ же до́мѣ = *in the same house*, то́го же а́втора (gen.) = *by the same author*, съ тѣ́мъ же ма́льчикомъ = *with the same boy*; the words о́динъ и = *one and* are often added, e. g. въ о́дномъ и то́мъ же го́родѣ = *in one and the same town*, въ о́дно и то́ же время́ = *at one and the same time*. The phrase то́же, always written as one word, = *also*, e. g. мы то́же = *we also*. Э́тотъ же = *this same* and тако́й же = *of the same kind*, are also very common.

#### § 49. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

кто = *who* (masc. and fem.); что = *what*.

N.	кто	что
G.	кого́	чего́
D.	кому́	чему́
A.	кого́	что
I.	кѣ́мъ	чѣ́мъ
L.	комъ	чѣ́мъ



чей, чья, чьё; чьи = *whose*.

Russian has a special pronoun for *whose* which is declined throughout.

		Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.	
N.	чей	чья	чьё	чьи	
G.	чьего́	чьей	чьего́	чьихъ	
D.	чьему́	чьей	чьему́	чьимъ	
A.	= N. or G.	чью	чьё	= N. or G.	
I.	чьимъ	чьей	чьимъ	чьими	
L.	чьёмъ	чьей	чьёмъ	чьихъ	

ко́торый = *which*, ка́кой and ка́ковой = *of what sort*, are declined like adjectives, q. v.; ко́торый supplies the plural of кто, что.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pronoun чей is of course most frequently used in the nominative, e. g. чей́ это́тъ до́мъ? = *whose house is this?* But the other cases are not uncommon, e. g. чью́ же́нъ онъ лю́битъ? = *whose wife does he love?*

2. Что is used to introduce a subordinate clause in all those cases where in English we use the demonstrative pronoun *that*, i. e. after all verbs of asserting, denying, believing, thinking, perceiving, feeling, &c., e. g. я говорю́, что онъ дура́къ = *I say that he [is] a fool*. It is also used in the expressions for *why* and *because*, e. g. отче́го? = *why?* (= *from what*), отто́го что = *because* (lit. = *from that what*), поче́му? = *why?* (lit. = *according to what*), пото́му что = *because* (lit. = *according to that what*). It is important to notice the difference in meaning of these two expressions: отче́го = *from what cause*, e. g. отче́го се́годня такъ те́мно? = *why is it so dark to-day?* отче́го вы такъ блѣ́дны? = *why are you so pale?* but поче́му = *on what ground*, e. g. поче́му вы говори́те это́? = *why do you say this?* поче́му онъ же́лаетъ ви́дѣть ме́ня? = *why does he wish to see me?* Of course there are many questions in which either of the two words could be used indifferently, and the answer to both is usually introduced by пото́му что, which is far commoner than отто́го что. There is yet another expression for *why*, viz. за́чѣмъ? which means literally *behind what?* and thus comes to mean *trying to get what?* or *with what object?* e. g. за́чѣмъ вы пришлѣ́и? = *why*

(sc. *with what object*) *have you come?* The answer to such a question is introduced by *загѣмъ, чтобы* (or more often merely by *чтобы*) = *in order that* (lit. *behind that what*), which is followed by the past tense or the infinitive; the particle *-бы* affixed to *что* (and sometimes written *чтобѣ*) is really part of the verb *быть* = *to be*, q. v. *Чтобы* means *in order that*, and is also used to introduce wishes, when it is always followed by the past tense, e. g. *чтобы это было такъ!* = *that it were so!* Both *что* as a conjunction and *чтобы* are enclitics and have no accent.

3. *Кто* is often used by itself to express *whoever*, e. g. *кто умѣетъ по-норвѣжски, тотъ и пониматъ по-датски* = *whoever knows Norwegian can also understand* (lit. *that one also understands*) *Danish*, *кто говоритъ это, врѣтъ* = *whoever says this, lies*. Another very common way of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* is to add *бы ни то* and *что*, which are then always followed by the past tense; it is important to notice that the particle *ни* does not imply negation; e. g. *кто бы мнѣ ни говорилъ это, я ему не повѣрю* = *whoever should tell me this, I shall not believe him*; *что бы вы ни дѣлали, я не буду васъ слушать* = *whatever you do, I shall not listen to you*; and the following very common idioms may be mentioned: *кто бы то ни было* = *whoever it be*, *что бы то ни было* = *whatever it be*, and *во что бы то ни стало* = *cost what it may* (lit. = *into whatever it should become*). This use of *бы* must be carefully distinguished from that mentioned in the preceding paragraph. *Whoever* not can only be translated by *кто не . . .*, e. g. *кто не видѣлъ Москвы, не знаетъ Россіи* = *whoever has not seen Moscow, does not know Russia*. Other common ways of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* are phrases such as *every one who, all that, &c.*

4. *Кто . . ., кто . . .* is very commonly used to express *some . . . others . . .*, e. g. *всѣ уѣхали, кто на лошадихъ, кто по желѣзной дорогѣ* = *they have all left, some by carriage* (lit. = *on horses*), *some by railway*.

5. The particle *же* or *-жь* is very frequently affixed to *кто, что, чей*, and *какой*, and gives these pronouns the meaning *who then? &c.*; e. g. *кого же вы видѣли?* = *whom then was it you saw, whom then did you see?* *что же случилось?* = *what then has happened?* *Чтожь* by itself, as an exclamation, is very commonly used in answer to a question or request, and means approximately *certainly, or why not?* Another very common idiom is *ну, такъ что-жь?* =

*well, what about it?* Yet another что-жь дѣлать? = *what's to be done, que voulez vous?*

Отчего же? and почему же? are also very common in argument, meaning *but why then?* Отчего же! is also used as an exclamation, meaning *both far from it, not at all, and certainly, by all means.*

6. Что and что-жь is also very frequently used to introduce a question, and is in fact almost the most usual way of introducing an interrogative sentence; in this use it never has any emphasis on it; e. g. что вы поѣдете въ этомъ году за границу? = *shall you go abroad this year?*

## § 50.

## Definitive Pronouns.

самъ, самá, самó; сáми = *self.*

		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	самъ	самá	самó	сáми
G.	самогó	самóй	самогó	самíхъ
D.	самомý	самóй	самомý	самímъ
A.	= N. or G.	самоѣ	самó	= N. or G.
I.	самímъ	самóй	самímъ	самíми
L.	самómъ	самóй	самómъ	самíхъ

весь, вся, всё; всѣ = *all, the whole.*

		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	весь	вся	всѣ	всѣ
G.	всегó	всей	всегó	всѣхъ
D.	всемý	всей	всемý	всѣмъ
A.	= N. or G.	всю	всѣ	= N. or G.
I.	всѣмъ	всей	всѣмъ	всѣми
L.	всѣмъ	всей	всѣмъ	всѣхъ

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. Всáкий and кáждый = *every, each*, нпóй = *some*, and дрúгой = *other*; are declined like adjectives, q. v. For одíнь = *only, alone* (lit. = *one*) cf. Numerals, § 60.

2. *One another* is expressed in Russian by the phrase другъ дрúга, which is the nom. and acc. sing. of the word другъ, which originally meant *second or other*, but in modern Russian has acquired the meaning of *friend*; e. g. онí оченъ лóбятъ другъ дрúга = *they love*

*one another very much*, мы пошли другъ съ дрúгомъ = *we went one with the other*.

3. Самъ can be used either before or after the noun it qualifies, e. g. я самъ = *I myself* (masc.), я самá = *I myself* (fem.), самъ царь = *the tsar himself*, я видѣлъ самогó царя = *I saw the tsar himself*, опъ мнѣ самогú сказáть это = *he told this to me myself* (sc. *not through anybody else*), мы сáми = *we ourselves*, опъ самъ or самъ онъ = *he himself*, самó собоú = *by or of itself*, я самъ себѣ купи́лъ это = *I bought this for myself myself*, она́ самá себѣ купи́ла это = *she bought this for herself herself*.

4. It is not difficult to distinguish the use of самъ from that of the reflexive pronoun себя́, but самъ is very easily confused with the longer form of the same word сáмый = *the very*, which is declined like an adjective, e. g. тотъ же сáмый человекъ = *the very same man*, but самъ человекъ = *the man himself*; въ сáмомъ центрѣ гóрода = *in the very centre of the town*, but въ само́мъ гóродѣ = *in the town itself*. Сáмый is also used in the formation of the superlative degree in the comparison of adjectives, q. v.

5. The use of весь does not present any difficulties, e. g. гóродъ = *the whole town*, весь день (acc.) = *all day long*, всю ночь (acc.) = *all night long*, она вся въ чѣрномъ = *she [is] all in black*. It is very important to notice a few very common idioms in which the word occurs: совсѣмъ = *quite* (lit. = *with all*), всё равно = *it's all the same* (lit. = *all even*), всего хоро́шаго, всего лúчнаго! = (*I wish you*) *everything good, everything of the best!* (gen. after verb of wishing), всего = *altogether, in all*, e. g. всего́ пять мѣсть багажа́ = *five pieces of luggage in all* (lit. = *of all*), всё = *continually* (this is really an adverbial use of the neuter), e. g. она́ всё пла́кала = *she kept on crying all the time*, опъ всё кричи́тъ = *he keeps on shouting, he is always shouting*, я всё пишу́ = *I am always writing*, онъ всё ходи́тъ въ теа́тръ = *he is always going to the theatre*. It is very important to be sure of pronouncing весь with a soft c and closed e, as there is another word вѣсь having the open e-sound and hard ending, meaning *weight*.

### § 51.

#### Indefinite Pronouns.

никто́ = *no one*, ничто́ = *nothing*.

These are declined exactly like кто and что, but it is to be observed that the nom. and acc. ничто́ is very rarely used, the gen.

being almost always substituted for them, e. g. что съ вами? ничего! = *what is the matter with you? nothing!* это ничего! = *no matter!* (lit. = *this [is] nothing*). When a verb follows either of these pronouns, it must always be negative, since in Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative, but are on the other hand necessary to complete the negation, e. g. никто не пришёл = *no one has come*, я никому не сказалъ = *I have told no one*, онъ мнѣ ничего не далъ = *he has given me nothing*.

The following very common idioms may be noticed: никого не видать = *there is no one to be seen*, ничего не видать = *there is nothing to be seen*, никого от ничего не слыхать = *there is no one or nothing to be heard*.

There is a very idiomatic adverbial use of the word ничего in which it means *tolerably, fairly well*, e. g. какъ вы себя чувствуете? ничего! = *how do you feel [yourself]? fairly well!* This can also be used with a verb, e. g. онъ играетъ ничего = *he plays fairly well*, but of course with the double negative the meaning would be negative, e. g. онъ ничего не играетъ = *he is not playing anything*.

When никто and ничто are used with a preposition, the latter is inserted between the ни- and the pronoun, e. g. ни съ кѣмъ = *with no one*, ни о чёмъ = *about nothing*, ни за что = *not for anything*, ни съ чѣмъ = *without accomplishing one's object* (lit. = *with nothing*); ни въ чёмъ не бывало is an idiom meaning *not in the least*, and какъ будто ни въ чёмъ не бывало = *quite unruffled, as if nothing had happened*.

никакой = *of no kind*

is declined like an adjective, q. v.

нѣкого = *there is no one to . . .*

нѣчего = *there is nothing to . . .*

Нѣ- can be prefixed to any case of кто and что except the nom., and the words thus formed are written as one word, except when used with a preposition, which, just as in the case of никто, is inserted between the не- and the pronoun. It is always followed by the inf. It is important to remember that the accent is always on the нѣ-, while in никто it is always on the last syllable; e. g. нѣчего дѣлать от дѣлать нѣчего! = *there is nothing to be done!* (lit. = *to do*; a very common idiom), говорить нѣчего! = *there is nothing more to be said, there's no denying it*, нѣкому сказать = *there is no one*

to tell, нѣ съ кѣмъ говоритъ = *there is no one to talk to* (lit. = *with*);  
нѣ о чѣмъ писать = *there is nothing to write about*, and the common  
idioms: нѣ за что = *il n'y pas de quoi* (our *don't mention it*), нѣ за  
чѣмъ = *there is no object, there is no point*.

нѣкто = *some one*, нѣчто = *something*.

It is important not to confuse these two words with нѣкого and  
нѣчего. The beginner is all the more likely to confuse them  
because ѣ is pronounced exactly like e and in both the accent is on  
the same syllable. But as a matter of fact the two words are of  
very rare occurrence except in the nom., much the commoner  
expressions for *some one* and *something* being those mentioned  
lower; e. g. я слышала нѣчто о немъ = *I have heard something about  
him*, онъ мнѣ нѣчто сказа́лъ = *he told me something*.

нѣкоторый = *a certain, some*, is declined like an adjective, q. v.

кто-то = *some one*, что-то = *something*, кто-нибудь = *some one or  
other, any one*, что-нибудь = *something or other, anything* (lit. = *who  
not be, who be it not*), кто-либо = *any one*, что-либо = *anything*.

These are all declined exactly like кто and что. The difference  
in meaning between кто-то and кто-нибудь is slight but very impor-  
tant. Кто-то is the more definite of the two and can never mean  
*any one*; кто-нибудь is less definite and means *some one* or *any one*.  
The difference is best illustrated by examples: кто-то идётъ = *some  
one is coming*, кто-то пришёлъ = *some one has come*, кто-то сказа́лъ  
мнѣ = *some one told me*, кто-то тамъ = [*there is*] *some one there*, кто-то  
позвонилъ = *some one has rung*, я далъ кому-то книгу, но не помню  
кому = *I gave the book to some one, but I don't remember to whom*, она  
сказала мнѣ что-то о немъ = *she told me something about him* (sc. *but  
I don't want to tell you what*), я вижу что-то тамъ = *I see something  
there*, онъ написа́лъ что-то на бума́жкѣ = *he wrote something on the  
piece of paper*, рубль съ чѣмъ-то = *a rouble with something* (i. e. *over  
a rouble, I forget how much*), говядина съ чѣмъ-то = *beef with some-  
thing* (i. e. *something with it, I forget what*), but дома-ли кто-нибудь?  
or кто-нибудь дома? = *is any one at home?* спросите кого-нибудь! =  
*ask some one!* я спрош́у у кого-нибудь совѣта = *I shall ask advice  
from some one*, я куплю вамъ что-нибудь = *I shall buy you something  
or other* (sc. *I don't know myself exactly what*), я куплю вамъ что-то  
= *I shall buy you something* (sc. *I know what, but I am not going to*

*tell you*), надо сдѣлать что-нибудь = *something must be done* (sc. *I don't know what*), надѣньте что-нибудь теплѣе = *put something warm on* (sc. *it doesn't matter what*), скѣшайте что-нибудь ещё = *eat something more*, скажите мнѣ что-нибудь о себѣ = *tell me something about yourself*; сыграйте намъ что-нибудь! = *do play us something!*

Кто-либо and что-либо are still more indefinite, e. g. спросите кого-либо, а онъ скажетъ вамъ . . . = *ask any one you like, and he will tell you . . .*, дайте кому-либо = *give [it] to any one you like*.

Кой-кто = *a few*, кое-что = *a little*. These are also declined exactly like кто and что; they imply indefiniteness of number or quantity, e. g. я спрашивалъ кой-кого = *I have been asking one or two people*, онъ сказалъ мнѣ кое-что о себѣ = *he told me a few things about himself*, я узналъ кое-что о . . . = *I have found out a thing or two about . . .*, я кой съ кѣмъ говорилъ объ этомъ = *I have been talking to one or two people about this*.

Кой-какой = *a few* and любой = *any you like* are declined like adjectives, q. v.

## DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVES

§ 52. The adjective in Russian has two forms, the shorter and the longer; the shorter is called the predicative, the longer the attributive.

The predicative form of the adjective is used almost solely when the adjective is the predicate of a sentence; in form it is exactly like a noun, and except in popular poetry it occurs only in the nominative, e. g. домъ хорошъ = *the house [is] nice* (cf. German: *das Haus ist schön*), моя сестра больна = *my sister [is] ill*, море глубоко = *the sea [is] deep*, они живы = *they [are] alive*, я очень радъ = *I [am] very glad*, онъ счастливъ = *he [is] happy*, она здорова = *she [is] well*, я виноватъ = *I [am] to blame*, я виновата = *I [am] to blame* (if a woman is speaking). But whenever an adjective qualifies a noun, the longer or attributive form must be used; this is an amalgamation of the shorter form with the pronominal endings. There is a hard and a soft declension, corresponding to the hard and soft nouns.

## § 53.

## Hard Declension.

Example: бѣлый, бѣлая, бѣлое = *white*.

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣлый	бѣлая	бѣлое
G.	бѣлаго	бѣлой	бѣлаго
D.	бѣлому	бѣлой	бѣлому
A.	= N. or G.	бѣлую	бѣлое
I.	бѣлымъ	бѣлой	бѣлымъ
L.	бѣломъ	бѣлой	бѣломъ

*Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣлые	бѣлыи	
G.	бѣлыхъ		
D.	бѣлымъ		
A.	= N. or G.		
I.	бѣлыми		
L.	бѣлыхъ		

## Hard Declension when the ending is accented.

Example: молодѳй, молодѳя, молодѳе = *young*.

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	молодѳй	молодѳя	молодѳе
G.	молодѳго	молодѳй	молодѳго

after which it is declined exactly like бѣлый, except that the accent is always on the ending, and on the first syllable of the ending when it is disyllabic.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. of the adjective is the same as that which governs the acc. sing. and pl. of masc. and the acc. pl. of fem. nouns, i. e. for an animate object it is always the same as the genitive and for an inanimate object the same as the nominative.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every fem. inst. sing., e. g. бѣлою or бѣлой.



3. The nominative singular and plural of the attributive form of the adjective arose through the affixing of the lost pronominal nominatives (which are given in scientific works as *яъ ја је*, pronounced *i ya ye*, whose place in the pronominal declension has been taken by *онъ она оно*) to nominatives of the predicative form, thus *бѣлый* = *бѣль + и (яъ)*, *бѣлая* = *бѣла + я (ја)*, *бѣлое* = *бѣло + е (је)*. The form of the nom. sing. masc. is really of Old Bulgarian origin and has forced its way not only into Russian orthography but also into the living language, thanks to the influence of the Old Bulgarian ecclesiastical tradition in the Russian language; the real Russian form of the nom. sing. is *-ой*, which is still retained in adjectives which are accented on the ending, e. g. *молодой* = *young*.

The other cases were formed analogously, though the process is clearer in some than in others, e. g. *бѣлаго* = *бѣла + его*, *бѣлую* = *бѣлу + ю* (= *ју уи*, an old acc. of the pronominal declension), *бѣлому* = *бѣлу + ему*; in the other cases more drastic contraction has occurred.

4. Several very common adjectives (including names) are accented on the ending and declined like *молодой*, e. g. *передовой* = *foremost*, *золотой* = *golden*, *больной* = *ill*, *седой* = *gray-haired*, *большой* = *big*, *Толстой* = *Tolstói* (while the adjective *толстый* = *thick, fat*, is declined like *бѣлый*). It may be mentioned that almost all Russian surnames are adjectives and must be declined adjectivally, e. g. *сочинения Толстого* = *the works of Tolstói*, *я знаю Толстого* = *I knew Tolstói*, *я знаю графиню Толстую* = *I know Countess Tolstói*, *Толстые* = *the Tolstóis*, *у Толстыхъ* = *at the house of the Tolstóis*. Also the ordinals: *второй* = *second*, *шестой* = *sixth*, *седьмой* = *seventh*, *восьмой* = *eighth*, and *сороковой* = *fortieth*.

5. Many adjectives ending in both *-ый* and *-ой* are used substantivally, e. g. *столовая* (sc. *комната*) = *dining-room*, *гостиная* = *drawing-room*, *кладовая* = *store-room*, *насекомое* = *insect*, *животное* = *animal*, *портной* = *tailor*, *городовой* = *policeman*, *рядовой* = *private*, *ломовой* = *carter*, *больной* = *the patient, the invalid* (fem. *больная*), *чужой* = *stranger*, *мясное* = *the meat-course, joint*, *борзая* = *a wolf-hound* (lit. = *swift*), *золотой* = *a gold coin (ten roubles)*, and very commonly the names of streets, e. g. *Невский* (sc. *проспектъ*) = *the Nevsky* (in Petrograd), *Морская* (sc. *улица*) = *the Morskaya* (street in Petrograd).

6. The *ы* of the case-endings of those adjectives whose stems both end in *к, г,* and *х,* and are accented, becomes *и,* e. g. *крѣпкій* = *strong*, *крѣпкимъ, крѣпкіе, &c.* (with fem. *крѣпкая* and neut. *крѣпкое*), *маленькій* = *little*, *великій* = *great*, *широкій* = *broad*, *дикій* = *wild*, *строгий* = *severe*, *тихий* = *quiet*, *узкій* = *narrow*, *короткій* = *short*, *сладкій* = *sweet*, and many others; this category includes all adjectives derived from names of towns and countries, e. g. *москóвскій* = *of Moscow, Muscovite*, *петроградскій* = *of Petrograd*, *кíевскій* = *of Kiev*, *рѣ́жскій* = *of Riga*, *русскій* = *Russian*, *нѣ́мецкій* = *German*, *францúзскій* = *French*, *англійскій* = *English*, and innumerable surnames which are often derived from names of places, e. g. *Оболѣнскій* = *Obolenski*, *Ча́йковскій* = *Chaikovski*, *Достоѣвскій* = *Dostoyevski*, &c. It must not be forgotten that all such surnames are declined throughout, e. g. the wife and unmarried daughter or sister of a man called *Оболѣнскій* is *Оболѣнская*, his whole family *Оболѣнские*, &c., and that for a foreigner to say, e. g. *Madame Obolensky*, is just as correct as it would be to talk about the Emperor Catherine.

But when an adjective whose stem ends in *к, г,* or *х* is accented on the ending then it is declined like *молодой*, and the *ы* only changes to *и* in the masc. and neut. inst. sing. and throughout the plural, e. g. *городско́й* = *belonging to the town* (nom. pl. *городскіе*), *дорого́й* = *dear* (inst. sing. *дорогѣмъ*, nom. pl. *дорогіе, &c.*), as also those surnames of this category which are accented on the ending, e. g. *Трубецко́й* = *Trubetskoi* (nom. pl. *Трубецкіе* = *the Trubetskois*), *Шаховско́й* = *Shakhovskoi* (fem. *Шаховская*), &c.

In this category are included those adjectives whose stems end in *ж* and *ш*, and are accented on the ending, e. g. the very common words *чужо́й* = *strange* (sc. *not known*), *чужіе* = *strangers*, *у чужіихъ* = *amongst strangers*, *въ чужомъ домѣ* = *in another person's house*, and *большо́й* = *big*, *большо́й домъ* = *a large house*, *большо́й любитель искусства* = *a great lover of art*, *большіе* often = *the grown-ups*.

7. The pronouns which are declined like adjectives all belong to the hard declension: *каждый* = *every, each*, *ко́торый* = *which*, *нѣ́который* = *a certain, some* are declined exactly like *бѣ́лый*, *всякій* = *of every kind, every, each*, like *крѣпкій*, and *тако́й*, *э́тако́й*, *тако́вой* = *of such a kind*, *тако́й-же* = *of the same kind*, *како́й* and *како́вой* = *of what kind*, *друго́й* = *other*, *никако́й* = *of no kind*, *ино́й* = *some*, *ко́й-како́й* = *a few*, and *любо́й* = *any you like*, like *дорогой* and *молодой*.

These words are so very common that a few examples of their use are added: *каждый день* (acc.) = *every day*, на *каждомъ шагѣ* = *at every step*, *каждую минуту* (acc.) = *every minute*, *каждый знаетъ* = *every one knows*, *какой номеръ?* = *which number?* *какой часъ?* = *what time is it?* (lit. = *which hour?*), *въ какомъ часу?* = *at what o'clock?* *какое число сегодня?* = *what date is it to-day?* *нѣкоторые находятъ, что...* = *some consider* (lit. = *find*) *that...*, *нѣкій* (отъ *нѣкто*) *Ивановъ* = *a certain [man called] Ivanov*, до *нѣкоторой степени* = *to a certain extent*, въ *нѣкоторомъ родѣ* = *in a certain way, in some ways*, *всякій вздоръ* = *all sorts of rubbish*, *всякая книга* = *each book*, *всякія книги* = *all sorts of books*, *всякая всячина* = *odds and ends*, *онъ такой милый!* = *he is such a nice man!* (N.B. Russians never say такъ милый for so nice), *она такая милая!* = *she is such a nice woman!* *они такіе милые!* = *they are such nice people!* въ такую погоду = *in* (lit. *into*) *such weather*, въ такое время = *at such a time*, *такимъ образомъ* = *in this way* (lit. *by such manner*), which often comes to mean *by doing this*, до такой степени = *to such an extent*, такого рода = *of such a sort* (e.g. такого рода пьеса = *a play of this sort*; the nom. often follows the gen., but can also precede it), въ такомъ случаѣ = *in such a case*, which comes to mean *since this is so*, въ такомъ родѣ = *in that manner, of that sort*, такого-же рода, въ такомъ-же родѣ = *of the same kind, in the same manner*, какой онъ интересный! = *how interesting he is!* *какая интересная книга!* = *what an interesting book!* *какой красивый мальчикъ!* = *what a beautiful boy!* *какая хорошая погода!* = *what nice weather!* *какая плохая (скверная) погода!* = *what bad (nasty) weather!* *какимъ образомъ?* = *in what manner?* *какія новости сегодня?* = *what news is there to-day?* *какого рода?* = *of what sort?* (e.g. это какого рода пьеса? = *what sort of a play is this?*), въ какомъ родѣ = *what like?* *какой вздоръ!* = *what rubbish!* *книга, каковую вы написали* = *a book of the sort which you have written*, *другой разъ* = *another time*, *другого рода* = *of another sort*, на другой день = *the next day*, *другимъ образомъ* = *in another way*, *другіе говорятъ* = *others say*, *никакимъ образомъ* = *in no way*, ни въ какомъ случаѣ = *in no case, in no eventuality*, which comes to mean *whatever happens*, ни за какіе коврижки = *not for anything in the world* (lit. *not for any sort of little cakes*), въ которомъ городѣ вы живете? ни въ какомъ = *in which town do you live? not in any*, кой-какія новости = *some items of news*, иной разъ = *sometimes* (Germ. *manch-*

mat), ПНЬЕ ГОВОРЯТЬ = *some say* (originally ПНЬИ meant *one*, e.g. ПНОРЬЦА = *unicorn*, but it also acquired the meaning *other*, e.g. ПНОРЬЦЫ = *people of other race than one's own*), КОЙ-КАКИЯ КНИГИ = *a few books of sorts*, ВЪ ЛЮБОЙ ЧАСЪ = *at any hour* (lit. into), ВЪ ЛЮБОМЪ ГОРОДѢ = *in any town you like to mention*, ВЪ ЛЮБОЙ ДЕНЬ = *any day you like* (lit. into).

There is a very idiomatic use of каковѡй as an interjection, usually expressing admiration at somebody's exploit, and it is always used in the predicative form and precedes the noun, e.g. каковѡвъ рѹсскій балетъ! = *well, what do you think of the Russian ballet, isn't it fine!* каковѡва пѣвица! = *isn't she a splendid singer!* каковѡвъ урожай! = *what a fine harvest!*

8. It is not absolutely true that all adjectives have both predicative and attributive forms. The two words радъ (fem. рада) = *glad* and гораздъ = *capable* have only the predicative form. To render their meaning when used attributively synonyms such as радостный = *joyful*, способный = *capable* must be used.

Conversely большѡй = *big* has no predicative form, and if used predicatively the synonym великѡй takes its place, e.g. Россія велика = *Russia is large*; further, all words in -скѡй, e.g. рѹсскѡй = *Russian*, in -скѡй, e.g. городскѡй = *of the town*, and adjectives denoting materials, e.g. золотѡй = *golden*, каменный = *of stone or brick*, have only the attributive form, e.g. онъ рѹсскѡй = *he is Russian* = онъ рѹсскѡй, *my ring is of gold* = моѡ кольцо золотѡе, *this bridge is of stone* = этотъ мостъ каменный. Otherwise every adjective has both forms and the shorter must be used whenever the adjective is the predicate. To form a shorter from a longer adjective it is only necessary to cut off the endings -ѡй, -ѡя, and -е, then for the masc. to substitute -ѡ and for the fem.-and neut. nothing; for the pl. cut off -е, -ѡя; e.g. милѡй, мѡлая, мѡлое = *nice, dear*, short form = мѡль, мѡла, мѡло, pl. мѡлы.

Examples of use: милѡя дѣвочка = *a nice little girl*, дѣвочка мѡла = *the little girl [is] nice*, while it is also possible to say дѣвочка мѡлая = *the little girl is a nice* (sc. little girl), дѣвочка такѡя мѡлая = *the little girl is such a nice* (sc. little girl); онъ милѡй = *he is a nice [man]*, онъ такѡй милѡй = *he is such a nice [man]*, онъ мѡль = *he is nice*, онъ такъ мѡль = *he is so nice*. The only difficulty that occurs in forming the short form is that in some cases in the nom. masc. sing. where, after cutting off the -ѡй, a group of consonants

difficult to pronounce would be left, a vowel is inserted; this is usually *e*, which when accented becomes *ě*, e. g. больной = *ill*—болѣнь, умный = *clever*—умѣнь, сильный = *strong*—сѣленъ or сѣлѣнь, видный = *visible*—видѣнь, спокойный = *calm*—спокоень; in the case of достойный = *worthy*, it is *и*—достоень; before -къ it is *о*, короткий = *short*—коротокъ; крѣпкий = *strong*—крѣпокъ; лёгкий = *light*—лёгокъ (except after *ж* and *ш*, when it is *e*, e. g. тяжкий = *heavy*,—тяжекъ). *о* also occurs in a few other words: злой = *bad-tempered, wicked*—золь; полный = *full*—полонъ.

In many cases, however, groups of consonants, which might seem difficult to the foreigner, but are as nothing to Russians, are left without any vowel being inserted, e. g. мёртвый = *dead*—мёртъвь; чѣрствый = *hard* (especially *stale*, of bread)—чѣрствъ.

9. It has been pointed out that in the language as it is spoken and written the predicative form of the adjective only occurs in the nominative; in the folk-poetry, however, which is epic in character, the other cases are often used, usually as fixed epithets for certain things, and recur with great frequency.

10. The first halves of compound adjectives which are hard end in *-о*, e. g. бѣлокаменный = *of white stone*, свѣтло-зелѣный = *light green*, тѣмно-сѣрый = *dark gray*, волжско-камскій банкъ = *the bank of the Volga and the Kama*, русско-нѣмецкій словарь = *a Russian-German dictionary*.

Corresponding to the soft declension of nouns, there is also one of adjectives, though the number included in it is very much smaller than that belonging to the hard declension:

## § 54.

## Soft Declension.

Example: сѣній, сѣняя, сѣнее = *dark blue*.

	Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	сѣній	сѣняя	сѣнее
G.	сѣняго	сѣней	сѣняго
D.	сѣнему	сѣней	сѣнему
A.	= N. or G.	сѣнюю	сѣнее
I.	сѣнимъ	сѣней	сѣнимъ
L.	сѣнемъ	сѣней	сѣнемъ

	Masc.	Plural.	
		Fem.	Neut.
N.	сініе	сінія	
G.		сініхъ	
D.		сінімъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		сініми	
L.		сініхъ	

It will be observed that all the soft vowels in the endings of the soft declension correspond to the hard vowels in those of the hard declension, i. e. (и) i to ы, я to а, ю to у, е to о.

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. masc. and fem. is the same as for the hard adjectives.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every inst. sing. fem., e. g. сінею and сіней.

3. The predicative form of the soft adjectives is practically never used.<sup>1</sup>

4. There are no soft adjectives having the accent on the ending.

5. There are a few soft adjectives which are used substantively, e. g. лóвчій = *hunter*, стряпчій = *attorney*, гóнчая (sc. собáка) = *sporting-dog* (cf. obs. 7), лѣшій = *wood-demon*, передняя (sc. кóмната) = *ante-room*.

6. The commonest adjectives declined like сіній are only a few in number, and are therefore given here: дрéвній = *ancient*, íскренній = *sincere*, внúтренній = *interior*, внѣшній = *exterior*, крайній = *extreme*, здѣшній = *belonging to this place, from here*, тамошній = *belonging to that place, from there*, вчерáшній = *of yesterday*, сегóдняшній = *of to-day*, зáвтрашній = *of to-morrow*, весéнный (or вѣшній) = *vernal*, лѣтній = *summer*, осéнный = *autumnal*, зímній = *winter*, послѣдній = *last*, срéдній = *middle*, тепéрешній = *of to-day* (lit. *of now*), тогдáшній = *former* (lit. *of then*), прѣжній = *former*, зáдній = *hinder*, передній = *front*, úтренній = *morning*, вечéрній = *evening*, вѣрхній = *upper*, нїжній = *lower* (Нїжній Нóвгородъ = *Lower Newtown*), рáнный = *early*, пóздній = *late*.

<sup>1</sup> Except the very common forms: хорóшь, хорóшá, хорóшó, pl. хорóшї, горячъ, -чá, -чó, -чї, свѣжъ, -жá, -жó, -жї, похóжь, похóжа, похóже, похóжи, cf. p. 79.

7. Those soft adjectives which end in -и́й, -жи́й, -чи́й, and -щи́й are declined somewhat differently from си́й, and as some of them are extremely common one is given in full :

хоро́шій, хоро́шая, хоро́шее = *nice, good, jolly.*

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хоро́шій	хоро́шая	хоро́шее
G.	хоро́шаго	хоро́шей	хоро́шаго
D.	хоро́шему	хоро́шей	хоро́шему
A.	= N. or G.	хоро́щую	хоро́шее
I.	хоро́шимъ	хоро́шей	хоро́шимъ
L.	хоро́шемъ	хоро́шей	хоро́шемъ

*Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хоро́шие	хоро́шия	
G.		хоро́шихъ	
D.		хоро́шимъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		хоро́шими	
L.		хоро́шихъ	

This is apparently a mixture of the hard and soft adjectives, but it is really soft, only the ш, ж, ч, and щ turn subsequent я, ы, о, ю into а, и (і), е, у. The following very common words are thus declined : горя́чий = *hot* (lit. = *burning*, e. g. in the phrase горя́чей воды (gen.) = *some hot water*), све́жий = *fresh*, похо́жий = *like*, ме́ншій = *lesser, smaller*, бо́льшій = *greater, bigger*, лу́чшій = *better*, all superlatives in -и́й and all participles in -чи́й and -щи́й.

8. The first halves of compound adjectives which are soft end in -е, e. g. сре́дне-ази́атскій = *Central Asian*, дре́вне-гре́цескій = *ancient Greek*.

N.B. The adjective derived from Ни́жний Но́вгородъ (cf. obs. 6) is нижегоро́дскій, e. g. нижегоро́дская губе́рнія = *the Government (i. e. Province) of N. N.*

9. Special attention must be called to the plurals :

мно́гие = *many*, and

немно́гие = *few*, which are declined like хоро́шие ; the respective singulars are adverbs, мно́го = *much* and немно́го = *little* ; нѣско́лько = *some* is similarly used except in the nom. plur. for which нѣко́торые is invariably substituted (cf. p. 75), e. g.

многіе находятъ, что . . . = *many people consider* (lit. *find*) *that* . . . (it would be impossible to use the adverb here), только у (очень) немногихъ свои экипажи = *only a (very) few have their own carriages*, въ нѣсколькихъ случаяхъ = *in several cases*. The singular of многіе is also used, e. g. во многомъ эта книга мнѣ нравится = *there is much in this book that pleases me* (lit. *this book in much*).

### § 55. Declension of Possessive Adjectives.

There is a large number of these in Russian, and as the declension is different from that of the ordinary adjective, an example is given in full :

Ив́ановъ = *belonging to Ivan* (= *John*).

#### *Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ив́ановъ	Ив́анова	Ив́аново
G.	Ив́анова	Ив́ановой	Ив́анова
D.	Ив́анову	Ив́ановой	Ив́анову
A.	= N. or G.	Ив́анову	Ив́аново
I.	Ив́ановымъ	Ив́ановой	Ив́ановымъ
L.	Ив́ановомъ	Ив́ановой	Ив́ановомъ

#### *Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ив́ановы		
G.	Ив́ановыхъ		
D.	Ив́ановымъ		
A.	= N. or G.		
I.	Ив́ановыми		
L.	Ив́ановыхъ		

Ив́ановъ may mean either *belonging to Ivan*, e. g. Ив́ановъ домъ, or it may be the surname *Ivanov*, which in this case is an ellipse standing for Ив́ановъ сынъ = *Ivan's son*, or *Johnson*; Ив́анова may mean *belonging to Ivan* (fem.), e. g. Ив́анова сестра = *Ivan's sister*, or by itself, prefixed by Госпожа (Mrs. or Miss) it means *Miss* or *Mrs. Ivanov*—Госпожа Ив́анова = *Mrs. Johnson*; Ив́аново may mean *belonging to Ivan* (neut.) or it may be the name of a village, when the word село is understood, originally called after Ivan; Ив́ановы may mean anything belonging to Ivan in the plural, or it may mean by itself *the Ivanovs*. Surnames and names of places formed in this way are endless, e. g. Павловъ = *Paul's*, '(Mr.) *Paul-*



son', Пáвлова = '(Mrs. or Miss) *Paulson*', Пётрoвъ = *Peter's, Peterson*, Попо́въ = *p<sup>r</sup>est's* (from по́пъ = *a priest*, a very common surname), and include many fantastic names of sometimes curious origin, e. g. Абрико́совъ (*apricot's*), Филосо́фовъ (*philosopher's*), Грибо́ждовъ (*mushroom-eater's*). It is from these words that the well-known Russian patronymics are formed by adding to them -ичъ (which is a diminutive with the special meaning *son of*) for the masculine and -на for the feminine, and it must be remembered that it is by their Christian names together with their patronymics that all Russians address one another, unless they are strangers or very intimate friends or relations. For example, if a man's surname is Попо́въ, his father's name Пётръ (*Peter*), and his own Christian name Па́вель (*Paul*), his friends will all call him Па́вель Петро́вичъ; let us say that his wife's name is А́нна (*Anne*) and her father's Christian name Ива́нъ, her full name will be А́нна Ива́новна Попова, and all her friends will call her А́нна Ива́новна. There is a number of possessive adjectives from soft stems corresponding to the hard represented by Ива́новъ, e. g. Андре́й = *Andrew*, makes Андре́евъ; Васи́лий = *Basil*—Васи́льевъ; Серге́й = *Sergius*—Серге́евъ. In this category are included names of not purely Russian origin such as Турге́невъ = *Turgénev*.

Besides there is a large number of names and words which form their possessive adjectives in -инъ, -ынъ, instead of in -овъ (the case-endings are exactly the same), e. g. Тома́ (*Thomas*) makes Томи́нъ, fem. Томина́ with patronymic Томи́чъ (*Thomas's son*); Илья́ (*Elias*)—Ильи́нъ (patronymics Ильи́чъ, fem. Ильи́нична); Никита́ (*Victor*)—Никити́нъ (the name of a well-known poet); цари́ца (*tsaritsa, empress*)—Цари́цынъ (a large town on the Volga, sc. го́родъ), Цари́цыно (sc. село́, a place near Moscow), while царь makes царе́въ. This category includes such words as му́жнинъ = *husband's* (from мужь = *husband*), же́нинъ = *wife's* (женá), бра́тнинъ = *brother's* (братъ), and сестри́нъ = *sister's* (сестра́), and those derived from diminutives, e. g. Серёжинъ from Серёжа = Серге́й = *Sergius*, Сашинъ from Саша = Александръ or Александра = *Alexander and Alexandra*. Господь = *the Lord* makes Господе́нь, Господня́, Господне́.

All these possessive adjectives have only the predicative form.

Finally there is a large category of possessive adjectives formed especially from names of animals, but including some others;

these have only the attributive form. As the declension is rather different from the others, an example is given :

рыбій = *fish's* (from рыба = *fish*).

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	рыбій	рыбья	рыбье
G.	рыбьяго	рыбьей	рыбьяго
D.	рыбьему	рыбьей	рыбьему
A.	= N. or G.	рыбью	рыбье
I.	рыбимъ	рыбьей	рыбимъ
L.	рыбемъ	рыбьей	рыбемъ
<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.		рыбьи	
G.		рыбьихъ	
D.		рыбимъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		рыбими	
L.		рыбьихъ	

Common words belonging to this category are волчій = *wolf's* (волкъ), лисій = *fox's* (лиса), собачій = *dog's* (собака), кошечій = *cat's* (кошка), медвѣжій = *bear's* (медвѣдь), птицій = *bird's* (птица), Божій = *God's* (Богъ), человѣчій = *man's, human* (человѣкъ), and the ordinal третій = *third*, e. g. третьяго класса = *of the third class*, въ третьемъ классѣ = *in the third class*, and the idiom третьяго дня = *theday before yesterday* (lit. = *of the third day*).

### § 56. Note on the Terminations of Adjectives.

Adjectives ending in -оватый or -еватый correspond in meaning to English adjectives in *-ish*, e. g. желтоватый = *yellowish* (жёлтый = *yellow*).

Those ending in -астый often imply largeness of the attribute, бородастый = *with a big beard* (борода = *beard*, бородатый = *bearded*) Those in -истый imply possession of a certain attribute: душистый = *fragrant, possessing sweet smell* (духъ = *spirit*, духи (pl.) = *scent*).

The terminations -ѣхонькій, -ѡхонькій, -ѣшенькій imply completeness; very often the adjective in its original form precedes the other; these forms are usually used predicatively:

СЫТЬ-СЫТѢХОНЕКЪ = *absolutely satiated (with food)*,

ОДИНЪ-ОДИНѢХОНЕКЪ = *quite alone*.

The terminations -енькій and -онькій are diminutive:

МАЛЕНЬКІЙ = *small* (from МАЛЫЙ, which is seldom used).

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

### § 57. The Predicative Comparative.

The comparative is formed by cutting off the -ый (or -ой) of the attributive form of the adjective and adding -ѣе (or -ѣій) to the stem.

The word thus formed has no singular or plural and is indeclinable; also it can only be used predicatively.

In the case of words of more than three syllables the comparative can be formed by using the positive prefixed by the adverb, БОЛѢЕ = *more*, as in English, e. g. *more intelligible*.

Comparison can be expressed in three ways: by the words

- |                                     |                 |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| (1) ЧѢМЪ. (inst. sing. of что), and | } = <i>than</i> |
| (2) НЕЖЕЛИ                          |                 |

followed by the nominative, and (3) by the genitive of comparison.

Examples: ДЛИННЫЙ = *long*, ср. ДЛИННѢЕ,  
 эта палка длиннѣе чѣмъ та = *this stick [is] longer than that*,  
 красивый = *beautiful*, ср. красивѣе,  
 мой цвѣтъ красивѣе вашихъ (gen.) = *my flowers [are] more beautiful than yours*,

прямой = *straight*, ср. прямѣе,  
 эта дорога прямѣе той (gen.) = *this road [is] straighter than that*,  
 or purely predicatively:

эта палка длиннѣе = *this stick [is the] longer*.

If the comparative is followed by егѡ = *his*, ея = *hers*, or ихъ = *theirs*, a conjunction is necessary, e. g.

мой домъ красивѣе нежели егѡ = *my house [is] more beautiful than his*, since красивѣе егѡ would mean *more beautiful than he*.

An example of an adjective of more than three syllables :

образованный = *cultured*; predic. comp. бо́льше образованъ (after which a conjunction is necessary) or образованнѣе,

мы бо́льше образованы чѣмъ они́ = *we [are] more cultured than they.*

Бо́льше is also invariably used with радъ = *glad*, which has no comparative, and with свѣжій = *fresh* and чѣрствый = *hard, stale* (of bread), and похожій = *like*, e. g.,

это бо́льше похоже на + acc. = *this is more like . . .*

To express *less* the adverb мѣнѣе with similar construction is used, e. g.,

они́ мѣнѣе образованы чѣмъ мы = *they are less cultured than we.*

A very large number of adjectives, however, form their comparatives by adding -е instead of -ѣе. Some of these are adjectives whose stems originally ended in a consonant, such as к, liable to be softened into ч before the palatal ѣ and absorbing it in the process, others are the result of analogical influence or quite irregular. As they are all extremely common words a full list is given :

высо́кій = <i>high, tall</i>	ср. вѣше
ни́зкій = <i>low</i>	„ ниже
глубо́кій = <i>deep</i>	„ глѣбже
мѣлкій = <i>shallow (also petty, small</i> <i>change, fine print or writing)</i>	„ мѣльче
широ́кій = <i>broad</i>	„ шире
у́зкій = <i>narrow</i>	„ у́же <sup>1</sup>
далё́кій = <i>distant</i>	„ да́льше
близ́кій = <i>near</i>	„ бли́же
толст́ый = <i>thick, fat</i> { especially }	„ толще
то́нкій = <i>thin</i> { of solids }	„ то́ньше
густо́й = <i>thick</i> { especially of }	„ гу́ще
жи́дкій = <i>thin</i> { liquids and gases }	„ жи́же
рѣ́дкій = <i>rare, sparse</i>	„ рѣ́же
ранни́й = <i>early</i>	„ ра́ньше
долги́й = <i>long (of time)</i>	„ до́льше
коро́ткій = <i>short</i>	„ коро́че
крѣ́пкій = <i>strong</i>	„ крѣ́пче
просто́й = <i>simple</i>	„ прѣ́ще

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with the conjunction уже́ = *already*.

стро́гий = <i>severe</i>	ср. стрóже
тихий = <i>calm, slow</i>	„ тише
лёгкий = <i>light</i>	„ лёгче
дорогой = <i>dear</i>	„ доро́же
дешёвый = <i>cheap</i>	„ дешёвле
богáтый = <i>rich</i>	„ богáче
молодóй = <i>young</i>	„ молодóже
ста́рый = <i>old</i>	„ ста́рше
чи́стый = <i>clean</i>	„ чи́ще
твёрдый = <i>firm, hard</i>	„ твёрже
сладкий = <i>sweet</i>	„ сла́ще
го́рький = <i>bitter</i>	„ го́рче
жа́ркий = <i>hot</i>	„ жа́рче
большóй = <i>big</i>	„ больше
мáлый (мáленький) = <i>little</i>	„ мéньше
хоро́ший = <i>nice, good</i>	„ лу́че
худóй (плохóй, дурнóй) = <i>bad</i>	„ ху́же

A few adjectives have two forms of the comparative :

тяжёлый = *heavy*, ср. тяжёле and тяжелёе

поздний = *late*, ср. позже and позднёе.

Худóй has two meanings, (1) *thin* (of human beings and animals) and (2) *bad*; the comparative of the first meaning is худёе and of the second ху́же. *Fat* (of human beings and animals) is usually rendered by полный (ср. полнёе) = *full*, though толстый (but only in the positive) is also used less politely of human beings.

As regards the accent the following rule may be mentioned: all so-called irregular comparatives (e. g. бóльше) are accented on the penultimate. Of the others, adjectives of two syllables are accented on the ʒ of -ёе; also зло́й = *wicked*—злёе. Adjectives of more than two syllables keep the accent in the comparative where it was in the positive, e. g. краси́вый = *beautiful*—краси́вёе; to this rule there are a few exceptions :

здоровый = *healthy* ср. здоровёе

холодный = *cold* „ холоднёе

горячий = *hot* „ горячёе

(горячий is used of substances, e. g. water, food, also of the emotions; жаркий is used especially of the weather; тёплый = *warm* (ср. теплёе) is used for everything).

## § 58. The Attributive Comparative.

When the comparative is used, not for purposes of strict comparison but as an attributive adjective expressing a stronger degree of any quality than is expressed by the positive, the form in -ѣ, &c., cannot be employed. Instead it must be either expressed by using *болѣ* with the positive or by another special form which some adjectives possess; this form ends in -ѣйшій, -айшій, -шій, or -шой and is declined like *хорóшій* (or like *молодóй*).

As only a few adjectives are commonly used in this form a full list is given :

*высóкій* = *high, tall*, ср. *высшій*, e. g.

*высшіе чѣны* = *the upper ranks* (of officials)

*въ высшей стѣпени* = *in the highest* (lit. *very high*) *degree*

*низкій* = *low*, ср. *низшій*, e. g.

*низшія цѣны* = *lower prices*

*нижнее мѣсто* = *a lower place*

*дальній* = *distant*, ср. *дальнѣйшій*, e. g.

*дальнѣйшее развитіе* = *the subsequent development* (there is no attributive comparative from *далёкій*)

*старый* = *old*, ср. *старшій*, e. g.

*старшій братъ* = *elder brother*

*молодóй* = *young*, ср. *младшій* (from another stem *млад-*), e. g.

*младшая дочь* = *younger daughter*

[*хорóшій* = *nice, good*], ср. *лучшій*, e. g.

*лучшіе магазѣны* = *the superior shops*

*худóй* = *bad*, ср. *хúдшій*, e. g.

*хúдшіе сорта* = *inferior sorts*

*большóй* = *big*, ср. *бóльшій*, e. g.

*бóльшею частью* = *for the greater part*

*бóльшіе города* = *the larger towns*

*мáлый* (*мáленькій*) = *little*, ср. *мѣньшій* = *lesser* and *мѣньшóй* = *younger*, e. g.

*самое мѣньшее* = *the very least*

*мѣньшóй сынъ* = *younger* (or *youngest*) *son*.

The form in -ѣйшій and -айшій possessed by several adjectives, e. g. *слабый* = *weak*, *слабѣйшій*, *крѣпкій* = *strong*, *крѣпчайшій*, is in meaning rather a superlative (like our *very weak, very strong*)

than a comparative. In almost all cases except those mentioned the attributive comparative can be and is usually expressed by *бóльше* with the positive, e. g.

это бóльше красивая шляпа = *this [is] the prettier hat.*

*Rather* + the positive or comparative is expressed by *по-* and the comparative, e. g.

мнѣ нужна палка по-длиннѣе = *I want (to me is necessary) a rather long(er) stick*

я хочу что-нибудь по-лучше, по-красивѣе, по-дешевле = *I want something rather better (superior), prettier, cheaper (sc. than what you've shown me).*

### § 59.

### The Superlative.

The superlative can be expressed in several ways; the commonest way is to use the pronoun *самый* with the positive (and in some cases the comparative), e. g.

самый красивый = *most beautiful*

самый некрасивый = *ugliest*

самый лучший = *best* -

самый плохой  
самый скверный } = *worst*

самый большой = *biggest*

самый маленький = *smallest*.

самый старший = *eldest* -

самый младший = *youngest* -

самый высший = *highest* -

самый низший = *lowest* -

самый крепкий = *strongest*

самый слабый = *weakest, &c.*

These can be used either predicatively or attributively, e. g.

самый лучший магазинъ = *the best shop*

это будетъ самое лучшее = *that will be the best (sc. way).*

Another way of forming the superlative is by means of the prefix *на-*, but only a few adjectives (always comparatives) are treated in this way and even they are seldom used, the form being considered archaic and pedantic. The commonest are :

наилучший = *best*

наибольший = *biggest*

наименьший = *smallest*

Another way of expressing *very* is by means of the prefix *пре-*, which is followed by the positive; this form is quite common, e. g.

прехорошенькій = *very pretty*

преподобный = *very reverend*

прескверный = *very bad*

*пре-* also occurs in the word превосходный = *excellent*.

The termination *-ѣйшій*, *-ѣйшій* is added to a few adjectives with the meaning of a superlative; the commonest are:

высокій = *high*, superl. высочѣйшій

великій = *great*, superl. величѣйшій

малый = *little*, superl. малѣйшій

e. g. безъ малѣйшаго сомнѣнія = *without the smallest doubt*

глубокій = *deep*, superl. глубочѣйшій

чистый = *clean, pure*, superl. чистѣйшій

любезный = *amiable*, superl. любезнѣйшій

дорогой = *dear*, superl. дражайшій (from a stem *драр-*).

Yet another way of expressing the superlative predicatively is by the predicative comparative followed by *всѣхъ*. e. g.

это мѣсто лучше всѣхъ = *this place [is] the best of all*.

## THE NUMERALS

### § 60. The Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

1	одинъ, одна, одно	первый
2	два (M. and N.) двѣ (F.)	второй
3	три	третій
4	четыре	четвёртый
5	пять	пятый
6	шесть	шестой
7	семь	седьмой
8	восемь	восьмой
9	девять	девятый
10	десять	десятый
11	одиннадцать	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	двѣнадцатый
13	тринадцать	тринадцатый



14	четы́рнадцать	четы́рнадцатый
15	пятна́дцать	пятна́дцатый
16	шестна́дцать	шестна́дцатый
17	семна́дцать	семна́дцатый
18	восемна́дцать	восемна́дцатый
19	девятна́дцать	девятна́дцатый
20	два́дцать	два́дцатый
21	два́дцать о́динъ о́днá, &c.	два́дцать пѣрвы́й
22	два́дцать два́, двѣ	два́дцать вторы́й
23	два́дцать трѣ	два́дцать трѣтій
30	три́дцать	три́дцатый
40	со́рокъ	со́роковóй
50	пятьдеся́тъ	пятидеся́тый
60	шестьдеся́тъ	шестидеся́тый
70	се́мьдеся́тъ	семидеся́тый
80	во́семьдеся́тъ	восемидеся́тый
90	девяно́сто	девяно́стый
100	сто	со́тый
200	двѣсти	двухсо́тый
300	три́ста	трѣхсо́тый
400	четы́реста	четы́рѣхсо́тый
500	пятьсо́тъ	пятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	ты́сячны́й
2,000	двѣ ты́сячи	двухты́сячны́й
5,000	пять ты́сячъ	пятиты́сячны́й
10,000	деся́тъ ты́сячъ	десятиты́сячны́й
100,000	сто ты́сячъ	стоты́сячны́й
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	милліо́нны́й

§ 61. Declension and Use of the Numerals.

О́динъ is declined as follows :

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	о́динъ	о́днá	о́дно
G.	о́дногó	о́дно́й	о́дногó
D.	о́дному́	о́дно́й	о́дному́
A.	= N. or G.	о́дну́	о́дно
I.	о́днимъ	о́дно́й	о́днимъ
L.	о́дно́мъ	о́дно́й	о́дно́мъ

	<i>Plural.</i>		Fem.
	Masc.	Neut.	
N.	одни́		одни́
G.	одни́хъ		одни́хъ
D.	одни́мъ		одни́мъ
A.	= N. or G.		= N. or G.
I.	одни́ми		одни́ми
L.	одни́хъ		одни́хъ

The plural of *одинъ* is used in several ways, e. g.

одни́ . . . . другие . . . . = *some . . . . others . . . .*

одни́ да́мы = *ladies only*

мы одни́ { = (1) *only we*  
= (2) *we [are] alone*

одни́ми рука́ми = *with the hands only*

but *одной* руко́й = *with one hand*

одни́ми слова́ми = *by words alone*

but *одни́мъ* сло́вомъ = *in one word*

*одинъ* Богъ зна́еть = *God alone knows*

*одно* и *то́-же* = *one and the same thing*

*однообразный* = *monotonous.*

*Одинъ*, *одна*, *одно* is used in all numbers compounded with 1 according to the gender of the substantive which follows, which is always in the nom. sing., e. g.

два́дцать *одинъ* го́дь = *twenty-one years*

со́рокъ *одинъ* ру́бль = *forty-one roubles*

ты́сяча и *одна* но́чь = *the thousand and one nights.*

	два, двѣ = <i>two.</i>		Fem.	оба, обѣ = <i>both.</i>	
	Masc.	Neut.		Masc.	Neut.
N.	два		двѣ	оба	
G.	двухъ			обѣ	
D.	двумъ		обѣмъ		
A.	= N. or G.		= N. or G.		
I.	двумя́		обѣми		
L.	двухъ		обѣхъ		

три = *three*, четыре = *four*.

N.	три	четыре
G.	трѣхъ	четырёхъ
D.	трѣмъ	четыремъ
A.	= N. or G.	= N. or G.
I.	трѣи	четырьмя
L.	трѣхъ	четырёхъ

Substantives of any gender which follow два, три, and четыре, as well as all numerals compounded with these three, are invariably in the gen. sing., not in the nom. pl. The reason for this is that два originally took the dual and the nom. dual masc. ended in -а, i. e. was in appearance identical with the gen. sing. When the dual became obsolete the ending -а still continued to be used after два but came to be looked on as the gen. sing. Subsequently through analogical influence the gen. sing. of feminine nouns was used after двѣ, and also the gen. sing. of nouns of all genders came to be used after три and четыре as well as after два. The old dual is still apparent in the word двѣсти = 200; e. g.

два брата = *two brothers*

три стола = *three tables*

двѣ сестры = *two sisters* (nom. pl. = сѣстры)

четыре села = *four villages* (nom. pl. = сѣла)

двадцать два года = *twenty-two years*

сто три рубля = *one hundred and three roubles, &c.*

If an adjective comes between the numeral and the noun, it can be in either the nom. pl. or the gen. pl., not in the singular, as might be expected, e. g.

двѣ красивыя (or красивыхъ) дѣвочки = *two pretty little girls*

три большіе (or большіихъ) дома = *three large houses.*

The effect of putting the numeral after the noun is to make the former somewhat indefinite :

дни два = *about two days, two or three days*

года четыре = *about four years.*

Of course, if used in any other case but the nominative, both numeral and substantive, and when there is an adjective, that also, agree, the regular cases of the plural being used, e. g.

N. два маленькіе мальчика = *two little boys*

G. двухъ маленькихъ мальчиковъ = *of two little boys*

D. двумъ маленькимъ мальчикамъ = *to „ „ „ &c.*

- N. три сестры́ = *three sisters*  
 G. трёхъ сестёръ = *of* „  
 D. трёхъ сёстрамъ = *to* „  
     от сестра́мъ, &c.

As regards оба, обо́ the masc. and neut. take the gen. sing., but the fem. takes the nom. pl., hence :

оба брата

оба села́ (nom. pl. would be сёла)

but обо́ сёстры (gen. sing. would be сестры́).

Пять = *five*, and all numerals ending in -ь up to and including тридцать :

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	пять		
G.	пяти́		
D.	пяти́		
A.	пять		
I.	пятью́		
L.	пяти́		

N. В. во́семь has G. D. L. восьми́ and I. восьми́ю

Пятьдеся́тъ = *fifty*, шестьдеся́тъ = *sixty*, се́мьдеся́тъ = *seventy*,  
 во́семьдеся́тъ = *eighty* :

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	пятьдеся́тъ		
G.	пяти́десяти		
D.	пяти́десяти		
A.	пятьдеся́тъ		
I.	пятью́десятью		
L.	пяти́десяти		

The numbers from пять onwards are really feminine nouns, equivalent for example to the French *une cinquaine*.

The numbers from 11-19 are composed of the single numerals and ten joined together by на = *on to*, e. g.

трина́дцать = три на деся́тъ = *three on to ten*.

Два́дцать and три́дцать are *two-tens* and *three-tens*.

In пятьдеся́тъ, шестьдеся́тъ, се́мьдеся́тъ and во́семьдеся́тъ the -деся́тъ is an old gen. pl. and пятьдеся́тъ might be translated in French *une cinquaine de dizaines*.

Сорокъ = *forty* (from the Greek τεσσαράκοντα) is declined like сто́ль, i. e.

G. сорока́  
D. сороку́, &c.,

and девяно́сто = *ninety* and сто = *one hundred* are declined like a hard neuter noun except when followed by a noun, when they have only one ending for all the cases, viz. -а, e. g.

ста рублѣми = *with a hundred roubles.*  
въ сорока́ слѹчаяхъ = *in forty cases.*

Also when compounded with other numerals, e. g.

въ ста шестѣ́ домахъ = *in one hundred and six houses.*

Двѣсти = 200, триста = 300, четы́реста = 400, пятьсо́тъ = 500, &c.

N.	двѣсти	триста	четы́реста	пятьсо́тъ
G.	двухъ со́тъ	трѣхъ со́тъ	четырёхъ со́тъ	пяти́ со́тъ
D.	двумъ ста́мъ	трѣмъ ста́мъ	четырёхъ ста́мъ	пяти́ ста́мъ
A.	= N. or G.			
I.	двумя́ ста́ми	трѣмя́ ста́ми	четырьмя́ ста́ми	пятью́ ста́ми
L.	двухъ стахъ	трѣхъ стахъ	четырёхъ стахъ	пяти́ стахъ

Ты́сяча is declined like a feminine noun in -ча

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N.	ты́сяча	e. g. двѣ ты́сячи	пять ты́сячъ
G.	ты́сячи	двухъ ты́сячъ	пяти́ ты́сячъ
D.	ты́сячъ	двумъ ты́сячамъ	пяти́ ты́сячамъ
A.	ты́сячу	= N. or G.	
I.	ты́сячей (also ты́сячью)	двумя́ ты́сячами	пятью́ ты́сячами
L.	ты́сячъ	двухъ ты́сячахъ	пяти́ ты́сячахъ

миллио́нъ is declined like сто́ль, but with the accent fixed on the third syllable throughout.

The substantives which follow all numerals ending in -ъ from 5 onwards, except compounds of 1, 2, 3, and 4, such as 21, 32, 44, &c., provided the numerals are in the nom. or acc., are always in the gen. pl. The reason for this is that, as has already been stated, пять, &c., are really feminine substantives, and so the noun following is naturally put in the gen. pl. This can be seen in the word пятьдеся́тъ = 50, which is really a nom. sing. (пять) followed by a (now obsolete) gen. pl. (деся́тъ) and means *a five of tens*. If followed by any other cases than the nom. or acc. both numeral

and substantive agree, as in the case of два, три, &c. Besides the numerals which end in -ь, сорокъ = 40, сто = 100, двѣсти = 200, трѣста = 300, &c., ты́сяча = 1,000, and миллио́нъ come under the above rule, e. g.

пять рублѣй = *five roubles*

дѣсять днѣй = *ten days*

but N.V. съ пятью дѣтьми = *with five children.*

### § 62. Cardinal Numbers in Composition.

Одинъ makes одно-, e. g. однодворецъ = *freeholder* (peasant).

Два makes дву- and двух-, e. g. двуглавы́й = *double-headed*, двусмысленный = *ambiguous*, двулѣтний = *two-year-old*, but двухэта́жный = *two-storied* (house), двухме́стный = *having two seats.*

Три makes тре- in треуго́льный = *three-cornered*, otherwise трѣх-; e. g. трѣхлѣтний = *three-year-old*, трѣхрублѣвый = *of three roubles.*

Четы́ре makes четверо- in четвероуго́льный = *four-cornered*, square, otherwise четырёх-; e. g. четырёхэта́жный = *of four floors.*

All others end in -и, e. g. семилѣтняя война́ = *the seven years' war.*

Notice the forms : двою́родный братъ = *first cousin* (masc.)

двою́родная сестра́ = „ „ (fem.)

трою́родный, &c. = *second cousin.*

For numerals in composition in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

### § 63. Ordinal Numbers.

The ordinal numbers are declined like attributive adjectives, второ́й, шесто́й, седьмо́й, восьмо́й, and сороково́й like молодóй, трети́й like ры́бий, and the rest like бѣ́лый. The ordinals have no short or predicative form, hence

я пе́рвый = *I am the first.*

The following idiomatic uses of the ordinals may be observed :

во-пе́рвыхъ = *firstly, in the first place*

во-второ́ыхъ = *secondly*

во-трети́ыхъ = *thirdly*

самъ-трети́й = *I and two others*

самъ-четве́ртый = *I and three others.*

For the use of the ordinals in the expression of time, cf. § 68.

### § 64. Distributive Numerals.

These are expressed by prefixing the preposition *по* to the cardinal numbers; *два, три, четыре*, and *сорокъ* remain in the nom. and the following substantive in the gen. sing. or plur., but all the other numbers are put in the dat. with the substantive in the dat. after *одинъ* and in the gen. plur. after all the others, e. g.

онъ подарилъ намъ по одной книгѣ = *he gave us one book each*

у насъ по двѣ, у васъ по три, а у нихъ по четыре собаки = *we have two, you have three, and they have four dogs each*

у обоихъ по пяти лошадей = *they have both five horses each.*

For the use of the distributives in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

### § 65. Multiplicative Numerals.

These are expressed as follows:

разъ	= <i>once</i> (lit. = <i>a blow</i> )
два рѣза	= <i>twice</i> (lit. = <i>two blows</i> )
три рѣза	= <i>thrice</i>
четыре рѣза	= <i>four times</i>
пять разъ	= <i>five times.</i>

*шесть разъ*, &c.; *разъ* is the old gen. plur. still used in a few phrases of this kind where it had become crystallized; the gen. plur. in *-овъ* originally belonged to only a few nouns, but became general gradually.

In counting (for games, music, &c.) the formula is: *разъ, два, три, четыре* = *one, two, three, four.*

The three words *однажды* = *once*, *дважды* = *twice*, and *трижды* = *thrice*, were borrowed from Old Bulgarian, but are almost obsolete; *однажды* is still sometimes used for *one fine day*, or *once upon a time*, but *разъ* or *одинъ разъ* is more usual.

Notice the following idioms in which *разъ* occurs:

сколькo разъ (gen. pl.) = *how many times, how often*

многo разъ (gen. pl.) = *many times*

нѣсколькo разъ (gen. pl.) = *several times*

сразу (gen. sing.) = *all at once, suddenly*

and especially the difference between:

*нерѣзъ* = *more than once*

e. g. я нерѣзъ говорилъ . . . = *I have said more than once . . .*

and ни разу не . . . = *not once*

e. g. онъ ни разу не-былъ у насъ = *he has not once been at our house.*

The expression *twice as* is rendered by въ-двѣе with the comparative, e. g.

это вино въ-двѣе лучше того = *this wine is twice as good as that.*

ваше перо въ-трѣе дороже моего = *your pen is three times as dear as mine.*

For larger numbers it is more usual to turn it, e. g.

этотъ театръ въ тысячу разъ красивѣе чѣмъ тотъ = *this theatre is a thousand times more beautiful than that.*

Expressions such as *ten-fold*, used predicatively, are rendered by въ-десятеро, &c.

The adjectival multiplicatives :

двойной = *double, two-fold*,

тройной = *treble, three-fold*,

are quite common and are declined like молодой.

*Simple* = простой.

## § 66.

### Collective Numerals.

These are used for the numbers from 2-8 and 10 :

2	двѣе	6	шестеро
3	трѣе	7	семеро
4	четверо	8	восьмеро
5	пятеро	10	десятеро

двѣе and трѣе are declined as follows :

N.	двѣе
G.	двоихъ
D.	двоимъ.
A.	= N. or G.
I.	двоими
L.	двоихъ

the others :

N.	четверо
G.	четверыхъ
D.	четверымъ
A.	= N. or G.
I.	четверыми
L.	четверыхъ



These numerals are especially common in phrases such as the following:

насъ трое = *there are three of us*, which also means *we three* (it would be impossible to say мы три), у меня четверо дѣтей = *I have four children*, ихъ было шестеро = *there were (lit. was) six of them*, and with nouns which are only used in the plural, e. g. сани = *sledge*, шестеро саней = *six sledges*, часы = *watch, clock*, трое часо́въ = *three watches*. Notice сотня = 100 (often sc. *soldiers*).

N. В. въ-двоёмъ = *tête-à-tête*

въ троёмъ = *à trois*

пара (лошадей) = *a pair of horses*

тройка = *three horses abreast*

четвёрка = *four* „ „

Троица = *the Trinity*

дожина = *a dozen*, but must only be used of things, never of people

десятокъ = *ten*, e. g. десятки тысячъ = *tens of thousands*

близнецы = *twins*.

Notice the curious idiom я самъ-другъ = *I and another*.

двойка = *deuce* (at cards)

семёрка = *seven*

тройка = *three*

восьмёрка = *eight*

четвёрка = *four*

девятка = *nine*

пятёрка = *five*

десятка = *ten*.

шестёрка = *six*

For the use of the collectives as multiplicatives cf. § 65.

## § 67.

### Fractions.

Половина = *a half*, and is declined like a hard fem. noun, with the accent fixed on the third syllable.

$2\frac{1}{2}$  = два (or двѣ) съ половиной

$3\frac{1}{2}$  = три съ половиной, &c.

For  $1\frac{1}{2}$  there is a special word:

полтора (made up of пол- and второ́й = *half-second*) for the masculine, and полторы́ for the feminine, e. g.

N. полтора́ фунта (gen. sing.) =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb.

полторы́ сажени „ „ =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathom.

For all the other cases the form полу́тора is used for both genders, the noun being declined in the plural, e. g. полу́тора фунта́ми.

150 = полтора́ста

N. полтора́ста

G. D. I. L. полу́тора́ста

*Half*- in composition is treated as follows :N. полфу́нта =  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb.

G. полуфу́нта

D. полуфу́нту

A. = N.

I. полуфу́нтомъ

L. полуфу́нтъ

The plural is полуфу́нты, &c., like an ordinary hard masculine noun.

полрю́мки = *half a wine-glass* would be declined similarly, but with the feminine substantival endings.

For по́лдень and по́лночь cf. § 68.

$\frac{1}{3}$  = треть, a feminine noun declined like ло́шадь but with the accent fixed on the first syllable;

$\frac{2}{3}$  = двѣ трѣти ;

$\frac{1}{4}$  = чѣтверть, feminine, declined like треть ;

$\frac{3}{4}$  = три чѣтверти.

Other fractions are expressed as follows :

$\frac{1}{5}$  = одна́ пятая (sc. часть = *part*) ;

$\frac{2}{5}$  = двѣ пятыхъ ;

$\frac{3}{7}$  = три седьмыхъ.

§ 68.

### Expression of Time.

Часъ = *hour* (N.V. часы́ = *watch* or *clock*)

*what time is it?* = ко́торый часъ ?

*at what hour . . . ?* = въ ко́торомъ часу́ . . . ? (cf. § 39, obs. 7)

1 o'clock = часъ (sc. пѣрвый = *first*)

at „ = въ часъ

1.15 = часъ съ чѣтвертью (=  $1\frac{1}{4}$ )

ог чѣтверть второ́го (=  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the 2nd)

1.5 = пять мину́тъ второ́го (= 5 min. of the 2nd)

1.30 = полови́на второ́го

ог второ́го полови́на

at 1.30 = въ полови́ну второ́го

1.45	= безъ четвѣрти два (= <i>without</i> $\frac{1}{4}$ 2)
at 1.45	= „ „ „ „ отъ въ часъ сорокъ пять
2 o'clock	= два часа́
at „	= въ два часа́
at about „	= часа́ въ два
2.10	= деся́ть мину́тъ трѣтьяго
2.30	= полови́на трѣтьяго
3 o'clock	= три часа́
3.50	= безъ десяти́ (мину́тъ) четы́ре
4 o'clock	= четы́ре часа́
5 „	= пять часо́въ
10.30	= полови́на оди́ннадцатаго
12 o'clock	= двѣ́надцать часо́въ
12.15	= четвѣ́рть пе́рваго
12.30	= полови́на пе́рваго
12.45	= безъ четвѣ́рти часъ
12.55	= безъ пяти́ (мину́тъ) часъ.

<i>half-an-hour</i>	= полчаса́
2 hours	= два часа́
2½ hours	= два часа́ съ полови́ной
1½ hour	= полтора́ часа́.

Notice especially the word *су́тки* (nom. pl. fem.) = *the 24 hours*,  
*a day and night*, e. g.

трое́ су́токъ (gen. pl.)	= 72 hours
цѣ́лыя су́тки	= a whole 24 hours
четы́ре су́токъ	= four days and nights
пять су́токъ	= five „ „

<i>minute</i>	= мину́та
'one minute'	= одну́ мину́ту, мину́точку
'this minute'	= сию́ мину́ту
<i>second</i>	= секун́да
<i>this instant</i>	= сию́ секун́ду отъ сей-часъ
<i>in one minute</i>	= въ одну́ мину́ту
<i>in five minutes</i>	= че́резъ пять мину́тъ
<i>in two hours</i>	= че́резъ два часа́

N.B. *чѣрезъ* can also give the meaning *every other*:

*чѣрезъ часъ* = (1) *in an hour's time*  
 (2) *every other hour.*

Notice that:

*about two hours* } = *около двухъ часо́въ*  
*about two o'clock* }  
*every minute (incessantly)* = *по-ми́нута*  
*пóлдень* = *midday*  
 Gen. *полу́дня*  
 Loc. *полу́дни*

The phrase *по-полу́дни* = *after noon* is very common, as Russian has no single word for *afternoon*, e. g.

*at 4 p.m.* = *въ 4 ч. по-полу́дни*  
*in the afternoon* = (1) *по-полу́дни*  
 (2) *днё́мъ* (inst. of *днёнь*)  
 \* *пóлночь* = *midnight*  
 Gen. *полу́ночи.*

N.B. *half-a-day* = *полд́ня*  
*half-a-night* = *полно́чи*  
*daily* (adj.) = *ежедне́вный*  
 (adv.) = *ежедне́вно.*

The days of the week are:

*Воскресе́ние* = *Sunday* (lit. = *resurrection*)  
*понеде́льникъ* = *Monday* (= *after the holiday*)  
*вторникъ* = *Tuesday* (cf. *второ́й*)  
*среда́* = *Wednesday* (= *centre*)  
*четве́ргъ* = *Thursday* (cf. *четве́ртый*)  
*пя́тница* = *Friday* (cf. *пя́тый*)  
*суббо́та* = *Saturday* (= *Sabbath*).

*on Sunday* = *въ Воскресе́ние*  
*on Monday* = *въ понеде́льникъ*

N.B. *on Tuesday* = *во второ́никъ*  
*on Wednesday* = *въ сре́ду*  
*on Thursday* = *въ четве́ргъ*  
*on Friday* = *въ пя́тницу*  
*on Saturday* = *въ суббо́ту*  
*on Sundays* = *по Воскресе́нιάмъ, &c.*

<i>week</i>	= недѣля
<i>fortnight</i>	= двѣ недѣли
<i>this week</i>	= эту недѣлю
<i>every week</i>	= каждую недѣлю
<i>for a week</i>	= на недѣлю
<i>weekly</i>	= еженедѣльный.

Notice the idiom :

ту недѣлю	=	<i>next week</i> or <i>last week</i> (lit. <i>that week</i> )
на той недѣлѣ	=	„ „ (sc. <i>in</i> or <i>during</i> . . .).

The months are :

январь = <i>January</i>	} — /	іюль = <i>July</i>	} —
февраль = <i>February</i>		августъ = <i>August</i>	
мартъ = <i>March</i>	} —	сентябрь = <i>September</i>	} —
апрѣль = <i>April</i>		октябрь = <i>October</i>	
май = <i>May</i>	} —	ноябрь = <i>November</i>	} —
іюнь = <i>June</i>		декабрь = <i>December</i>	

they are all masculine.

*in January* = въ январѣ

*in May* = въ маѣ.

In the words for the first two and the last four months the accent is always on the ending, in the others it remains throughout where it is in the nominative.

<i>Month</i>	= мѣсяць
<i>monthly</i>	= ежемѣсячный
<i>the date</i>	= число
<i>Jan. 1st</i>	= первое января (sc. число)
<i>on Feb. 2nd</i>	= второго февраля (sc. числа)
<i>on March 3rd</i>	= третьяго марта
<i>of the fifth of April</i> (e. g. letter)	= отъ пятого апрѣля
<i>on May 21st</i>	= двадцать-перваго мая
<i>on June 30th</i>	= тридцатаго іюня
<i>on July 31st</i>	= тридцать-перваго іюля
<i>what date is it to-day?</i>	= какое (отъ которое) сегодня число?
<i>year</i>	= годъ
<i>half-year</i>	= полгода
<i>two years</i>	= два года
<i>three years</i>	= три года
<i>four years</i>	= четыре года

but <i>five years</i>	= пять лѣтъ (lit. = <i>summers</i> )
<i>six years</i>	= шесть лѣтъ
till <i>twenty-one years</i>	= двадцать-одинъ годъ
<i>twenty-two years</i>	= двадцать-два гóда
<i>twenty-five years</i>	= двадцать-пять лѣтъ
	&c.
<i>how old are you?</i>	= скóлько вамъ лѣтъ?
<i>twenty-three</i>	= двадцать-три гóда
<i>this year</i>	= въ éтомъ годý
<i>last year</i>	= въ прошломъ годý
<i>last year's</i>	= прошлогóднiй
<i>next year</i>	= въ бóдущемъ годý
<i>in the year 1899</i>	= въ тýсяча восемь сотъ девяносто девятóмъ годý (i. e. only the last numeral is an ordinal)
<i>in the year 1914</i>	= въ (тýсяча) девять сотъ четыр- надцатóмъ годý
<i>of the year 1900</i>	= тýсяча девять сотаго гóда
<i>the twenties</i>	= двадцáтые гóды
<i>of the thirties</i>	= тридцáтыхъ годóвъ
<i>in the forties</i>	= въ сороковýхъ годáхъ

(but only of historical periods, not of personal age)

century = (1) вѣкъ  
(2) столѣтiе.

- ✓ *Ago* is expressed in two ways: (1) by *за* with the acc., e. g.  
    за два гóда = *two years ago*
- ✓ or (2) by *тому́ назáдь* (= *to it back*), e. g.

пять лѣтъ *тому́ назáдь* = *five years ago*

*in a year's time* = *черезъ годъ*

*every other year* = (1) *черезъ годъ*

(2) *каждые два гóда*

*every year* = *каждый годъ*

*yearly* = *ежегóдный*

Врѣмя = *Time*

со врѣменемъ = *in time, gradually*

врѣмя отъ врѣмени = *from time to time*

во врѣмя (+ gen.) = *during*

во-врѣмя = *in time* (sc. *punctually*)

пора	= <i>it is time</i>
пора́ми	= <i>at times</i>
пора́й	= „
съ тѣхъ поръ	= <i>from that time on</i>
до тѣхъ поръ	= <i>till then</i>
до сихъ поръ	= <i>till now</i>
съ какихъ поръ ?	= <i>since when ?</i>
but въ-по́ру	= <i>it fits (of clothes, &amp;c.)</i>
не въ-по́ру	= <i>it does not fit.</i>

§ 69. Expression of money-values.

Полти́нникъ	= $\frac{1}{2}$ -rouble (= 50 <i>kopeks</i> )
ру́бль	= a rouble (= 1s. 11d.)
полтора́ рублі́	= $1\frac{1}{2}$ rouble
два рублі́	= 2 roubles
два съ полти́ной	= $2\frac{1}{2}$ roubles
пять рубле́й	= 5 roubles
пять съ полти́ной	= $5\frac{1}{2}$ roubles
копѣ́йка	= a <i>kopek</i> (= $\frac{1}{4}$ d.) <sup>1</sup>
двѣ копѣ́йки	= 2 <i>kopeks</i>
пять копѣ́екъ	= 5 <i>kopeks</i>

60 *kopeks* = шестьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ

or шесть гри́вень

70 „ = се́мьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ

or се́мь гри́вень

80 „ = во́семьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ

or во́семь гри́вень.

The following are the colloquial names of the current coins and notes:

пята́къ	= 5 <i>kopeks</i> (copper)
пятачо́къ	= „ (nickel)
гри́венникъ	= 10 „ „
пятиалти́нный	= 15 „ (nickel ; алти́нъ = 3 <i>kopeks</i> )
двугри́венникъ	= 20 „ „
полти́на	= 50 „ (silver)
цѣлко́вый } (or рубль)	= 1 rouble „

<sup>1</sup> Also spelt копѣ́йка, gen. pl. копе́екъ.

трёхрублёвая бума́жка	= 3-rouble note
пятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 5-rouble note
ог синенькая ( <i>little blue</i> )	
десятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 10 „ „
ог красненькая ( <i>little red</i> )	
двадцатипятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 25 „ „
бума́жка	
стору́блёвая бума́жка	} = 100 „ „
ог ра́дужная ( <i>rainbow</i> )	
однóкопѣчная ма́рка	= a 1-kopek stamp
двѣх————— „	= a 2-kopek „
трѣх————— „	= a 3-kopek „
четырёх———— „	= a 4-kopek „
семѣи————— „	= a 7-kopek „
десяти————— „	= a 10-kopek „

The preposition *по* followed by a numeral = *at . . .*; the numerals are in the dat., or acc., cf. § 61:

двѣ ма́рки по одной копѣйкѣ	= two 1-kopek stamps
пять ма́рок по двѣ копѣйки	= five 2-kopek „
десять ма́рок по семѣи копѣекъ	= ten 7-kopek „
(ог десять семѣикопѣчныхъ ма́рокъ, &c.).	

The question *at what price?* is expressed by the idiom *по-чѣмъ?* e. g.

по-чѣмъ эти галстуки? = *at what price* (sc. *how much*) (*are*) *these neckties?*

по-два рубля = *two roubles each*

по-пяти рублей = *five roubles each.*

For the use of the preposition *въ* with similar meaning cf. § 65.

## THE ADVERB

§ 70. The adverb is generally the same as the nominative singular neuter of the predicative adjective, e. g.

ми́лый	ми́лая	ми́лое	= <i>nice</i> ; attributive form
миль	ми́ла	ми́ло	= „, predicative form
		ми́ло	= <i>nicely</i>
хоро́ший	хоро́шая	хоро́шее	= <i>good, nice</i>



хоро́шь хоро́ша́ хоро́шо = *good, nice*  
 хоро́шо = *well; all right.*

Similarly: пло́хо = *badly*  
 ду́рно = „  
 скве́рно = „  
 нехоро́шо = „ &c.

Soft adjectives form the adverb with -e instead of -o, e. g.

кра́йний = *extreme*                      кра́йне = *extremely*  
 и́скренний = *sincere*                    и́скренне = *sincerely*

but many of them take -o like the hard adjectives, e. g.

ра́нный = *early*                      ра́но = *early (adv.)*  
 по́здний = *late*                      по́здно = *late (adv.)*  
 да́вный = *former*                    да́вно = *long ago*

и́скренний also makes и́скренно.

Owing to the fact that the present tense of the verb *to be* is almost quite obsolete in Russian, the adverb is very frequently used as an impersonal verb forming a sentence by itself, e. g.

ра́но = *it is early (often = too early)*

по́здно = *it is late (often = too late)*

жа́рко = *it is hot*

теплó = *it is warm*

блízко = *it is near*

высоко́ = *it is high*

хоро́шо, что вы пришл́и = *it is well (or nice) that you have come*

возмо́жно, что онъ придётъ = *it is possible, that he will come*

невозмо́жно, чтобы онъ пришёлъ = *it is impossible, that he should come.*

Several adverbs can be accented in two ways, each equally correct, e. g.

те́мно or те́мно = *it is dark*

холо́дно or хо́лодно = *it is cold*

далеко́ or далёко = *it is far*

глубо́ко or глубо́ко = *it is deep (also = deeply figuratively).*

Adjectives in -ский form the adverb by changing -ский into -ски, e. g.

и́ронический = *ironical*

и́ронически = *ironically*

similarly : поэтически = *poetically*  
 дружески = *in a friendly way, warmly*  
 хронически = *chronically, &c.*

The preposition по- prefixed to such adverbs gives the meaning *in the manner of*:

по-приятельски = *in a friendly way*  
 по-москóвски = *in Moscow fashion*

and if the adverb is one formed from the name of a nationality it can also mean *in . . .*, e. g.

по-ру́ски = *in Russian*  
 по-а́нглийски = *in English*  
 по-не́мецки = *in German*  
 по-фра́нцузски = *in French*

e. g. я у́мѣю по-ру́ски or я говорю́ по-ру́ски = *I can (sc. talk) Russian, or I talk Russian*

я не понимаю́ по-не́мецки = *I don't understand German.*

Notice the idiom :

э́то по-како́вски ? = *in what language is that ?*

Otherwise adverbial expressions with по- are formed by using the dative singular of the adjective or pronoun, e. g.

по-но́вому = *in modern fashion*  
 по-ста́рому = *in old fashion*  
 по-сво́ему = *in one's own way*  
 по-мо́ему = *in my own way or in my opinion*  
 по-ва́шему = *in your way or in your opinion*  
 по-во́енному = *in military fashion.*

Cf. also § 73.

## § 71.

### Adverbs of Place.

здѣсь } = *here*  
 тутъ <sup>1</sup> }  
 тамъ = *there*  
 вездѣ } = *everywhere*  
 (по)всю́ду <sup>1</sup> }  
 гдѣ = *where*  
 ни́гдѣ = *nowhere*

---

<sup>1</sup> Rather colloquial than literary.

e. g. нигдѣ нѣтъ мѣста = *there is no place (or room) anywhere*

нигдѣ никого нѣтъ = *there is no one anywhere*

нѣгдѣ = *there is nowhere to . . .*

e. g. нѣгдѣ сѣсть = *there is no place to sit down*

гдѣ-то = *somewhere, in a certain place* (sc. *I don't remember where, I don't know where, or I don't wish to say where*)

e. g. онъ гдѣ-то въ Россіи = *he is somewhere in Russia*

гдѣ-нибудь = *somewhere, anywhere*

e. g. онъ проведѣтъ зиму гдѣ-нибудь за-границей = *he will spend the winter somewhere abroad*

гдѣ-бы то ні было = *wherever you like*

тамъ и сямъ = *here and there.*

The adverbs *hither*, &c., are far more frequently used in Russian than in English; in English we say *I am going there*, but in Russian always *I am going thither*; in English *where have you put my book?* but in Russian *whither*, &c.; in English *where did you get that hat?* but in Russian *whence*, &c.

сюдѣ = *hither*

e. g. пойдѣ сюдѣ = *come here*

тудѣ = *thither*

e. g. я идѣ тудѣ = *I am going there*

кудѣ = *whither*

e. g. кудѣ вы положили моѣ книжку? = *where have you put my book?*

никудѣ = *nowhither*

e. g. я никудѣ не идѣ = *I am not going anywhere*

нѣкудѣ = *there is no place whither*

e. g. нѣкудѣ итти = *there is nowhere to go to*

кудѣ-то = *somewhither*

e. g. онъ кудѣ-то ушѣлъ = *he has gone off somewhere*

кудѣ-нибудь = *somewhither*

e. g. пойдѣмъ кудѣ-нибудь = *let's go somewhere (anywhere)*

кудѣ-бы то ні было = *whithersoever*

отсюдѣ = *hence*

e. g. отсюдѣ до Москвы далекѣ = *from here to Moscow it is far*

оттѣда = *thence*

e. g. оттѣда до насъ пять вѣрствъ = *it is five versts from there to us*

откуда = whence

e. g. вы откуда? = where do you come from?

откуда-то = somewhere

откуда-нибудь = somewhere

e. g. достаньте откуда-нибудь = get from somewhere (no matter where)

откуда-бы то ни было = whencesoever.

Notice the following very idiomatic uses of где and куда, e. g.

где мне это сделать! = I shall never be able to do that!

где вам? = how can you think of it!

этот город куда больше того = this town is ever so much bigger than that

это вино хоть куда = this wine is simply splendid

где . . . , где . . . = in one place . . . , in another . . .

Notice: наверху = up above, sc. upstairs

внизу = down below, sc. downstairs

вверх = up(wards)

вниз = down(wards)

снаружи = outside, outwardly

внутри = inside, inwardly.

## § 72.

## Adverbs of Time.

теперь = now

тогда = then

всегда = always

когда = when

никогда = never

e. g. никогда не ем мяса = I never eat meat

никогда = there is no time to . . .

e. g. мне теперь некогда! = I've no time for that now!

никогда = formerly, sometime

иногда = at times, sometimes

когда-то = formerly, a long time ago (sc. I don't remember exactly when)

e. g. он когда-то был женат = he was married once (sc. his wife is now dead or has disappeared)

когда-нибудь = some time

e. g. взгляните к нам когда-нибудь! = look us up some time or other

когда-бы то ни было	= whenever you like
сначала	= at first
наконѣцъ	= at last
уже	= already
нѣтъ еще } ещѣ не }	= not yet
уже нѣтъ, уже не	= no longer

e. g. егѡ уже нѣтъ здѣсь = he is already gone, he is no longer here

наконѣцъ	= at last
ужѡ, потѡмъ	= later on
скѡро	= soon, quickly
снова, опятъ	= again
по-скорѣе	= as quickly as possible, hurry up!
дѡлго	= a long time
онъ дѡлго не идѣтъ	= he is a long time in coming
давнѡ давнѣмъ-давнѡ }	= long ago, long since
сей-часъ тѡтъ-часъ } сію минѣту }	= immediately
трѣтъяго дня	= the day before yesterday
вчера	= yesterday
сегоднѣ	= to-day
завтра	= to-morrow
пѡслѣ-завтра	= the day after to-morrow.

## § 73.

## Adverbs of Manner.

такъ	= thus
какъ	= how, as, like
никакъ	= (1) in no wise, by no means

e. g. никакъ нѣтъ = not at all

никакъ нельзѣ = it is quite out of the question,

as an interrogative conjunction:

= (2) perhaps, as likely as not

никакъ онъ придѣтъ = perhaps he will come.

The following also is used more as an interrogative conjunction:

некакъ = I expect, as likely as not

некакъ ѣдутъ = I think they're coming

некакъ приходиль кто-то ? = *has any one been ?*

какъ-то = *somehow, sort of, somehow or other*

e. g. мнѣ какъ-то не хочется = *somehow or other (I can't explain why) I don't want to*

это странно какъ-то = *it's queer somehow*

какъ-то can also mean *for instance*, and is used as an alternative for the expression какъ на примѣръ = *as for example* ;

какъ-нибудь = *somehow or other, by hook or by crook*

e. g. устройте это какъ-нибудь = *arrange this (matter) by some means or other*

прибѣжайте къ намъ какъ-нибудь лѣтомъ = *come and see us in the summer if you possibly can*

это надо сдѣлать какъ-нибудь = *(we) must do this somehow or other*

какъ-бы то ни было = *however that may be*

иначе (or иначе) = *otherwise, differently*

это надо устроить иначе = *this must be arranged differently*

учись хорошенько, иначе тебя накажутъ = *learn your lesson well, otherwise they'll punish you*

не такъ = *differently*, but very often sc. *wrong* (adv.) ; although there is a word for *incorrectly*, viz. *неправильно*, the most common way of saying *wrong* is *не такъ*, e. g.

вы не такъ сдѣлали = *you have done it wrong*

онъ не такъ поѣхалъ = *he has taken the wrong road*

вы не такъ сказали = *you have said it wrong*

я не такъ понялъ его = *I misunderstood him*

though of course the same expression is often used to mean *not thus* literally.

Notice the very common adverbs :

вдругъ = *suddenly*

постепенно } = *gradually*  
мало-по-малу }

напрасно = *in vain* (often sc. *it is a pity that*)

нарочно = *on purpose*

нечаянно = *unintentionally*

случайно = *accidentally*

особенно = *especially*

вообще = *in general*

именно = *namely*

дѣйствительно = *actually, in very fact, indeed*

конечно = *of course*

навѣрно = *surely, certainly*

слѣдовательно = *consequently*

непремѣнно = *without fail*

безпрестанно = *incessantly*

включительно = <i>inclusively</i>	обыкновенно = <i>usually</i>	} = <i>unusually, uncommonly</i>
исключительно = <i>exclusively</i>	необыкновенно	
безусловно = <i>absolutely</i>	чрезвычайно	

and the idioms:

такъ и сякъ = *this way and that*

ни такъ ни сякъ = *neither this way nor that*

такъ себѣ = *so-so, fairly, middling*

ничего = „ „ „

такъ = *gratis, for nothing, for fun*

я это только такъ сказать = *I didn't mean it*

такъ точно = *just so* (often used by servants = *yes*)

точно такъ = *just like that*

точно = (1) *it is just as if*

онъ точно въ неѣ влюблёнъ = *one would think he was in love with her*

= (2) *really, truly, exactly*

у меня собака точно такія = *I've got a dog just like that*

ровно = *exactly*

ровно въ два часа = *exactly at two o'clock.*

Cf. also § 70.

Note on the use of *то* after adverbs of place, time, and manner.

It should be mentioned that *то* is often used enclitically after interrogative adverbs, not to express indefiniteness, but merely as an expletive, as much as to say, *I wonder*, e. g.

гдѣ-то они тепѣрь! = *I wonder where they are now!*

когда-то мы увидимся! = *I wonder when we shall meet again!*

какъ-то онъ устрѣится! = *I wonder how he'll settle his affairs!*

After definitive adverbs its use implies *surprise*, e. g.

тепѣрь-то я понимаю! = *now I understand!*

такъ-то вы поняли меня! = *is it thus that you understood me!* (i. e. *thought what I meant*).

#### § 74. Adverbs of Degree and Quantity.

много = *much*

немного

dimin. немножко

мало

} = *little*

e. g. дайте мнѣ немного вина (gen.) = *give me a little wine*

ещѣ немножко? = *a little more?*

это мало! = *that's little* (sc. *too little*)!

это много! = *that's much* (sc. *too much*)!

въ этой книгѣ мало хорошаго = *in this book there's but little good*

у меня немного денегъ = *I have a little money* (with emphasis on денегъ)

у меня немного денегъ }  
у меня денегъ немного } = *I have but little money*  
у меня мало денегъ }  
(with emphasis on немного)

(for the declension of the plural много, &c., cf. § 54, obs. 9)

сколько = *as much, how much*

сколько это стоитъ? = *how much does this cost?*

я помогаю ему; сколько могу = *I help him as much as I can*

только = *so much*

онъ былъ столько разъ у меня, что наконецъ онъ мнѣ надоѣлъ =  
*he has been so many times to see me, that at last I've got sick of him*

сколько головъ, столько умовъ = *so many heads, so many minds*

только = *only*

не только = *not only*.

Notice the idioms :

да и только }  
только и всего } = *and that's all*

не хочѹ, да и только = *I don't want to, and that's all about it*

нисколько = *not in the least* (always with the negative repeated)

я нисколько не хочѹ = *I don't want to in the least*

сколько-нибудь = *at all*

если онъ сколько-нибудь порядочный человекъ = *if he is at all a decent fellow*

несколько = *some, a few, somewhat*

несколько разъ = *several times*

„ рублѣй = *a few roubles*

у него несколько дѣтей = *he has several children*

эта шляпа несколько дороже = *this hat is rather dearer*

гораздо = *ever so much*

это изданіе гораздо дешевле = *this edition is ever so much cheaper*

довольно }  
достаточно } = *enough, fairly*

довольно денегъ = *enough money*



довольно холодно = *it is fairly cold.*

(N.B. *not enough* is usually expressed by *мáло*, e.g. *мáло денегъ* = *not enough money*)

бóльше = *more*

у него бóльше книгъ, чѣмъ у мені́ = *he has more books than I*

бóльше всего = *most of all*

по-бóльше = *a good lot, rather more*

дайте мнѣ по-бóльше (+ gen.) = *give me a good lot of. . .*

мѣньше (with gen.) = *less*

мѣньше всего = *least of all*

по-мѣньше (with gen.) = *as little as possible*

скорѣе = *rather* (sc. *sooner*)

я скорѣе дамъ вамъ, чѣмъ ему́ = *I would rather give (lit. shall give) it to you than to him*

слишкомъ }  
черезчуръ } = *too, excessively*

это слишкомъ много = *that is too much*

это слишкомъ мáло = *that is too little*

(N.B. *never* with *немного́*)

слишкомъ = *more than, above* (lit. = *with excess*)

ему́ слишкомъ сорокъ лѣтъ = *he is over forty*

очень = *very, very much*

весьма́ = *very, quite*

она́ очень мила́ = *she is very nice*

я её очень люблю́ = *I like her very much*

я очень хочу́ = *I want to very much*

у него́ очень { много́ } денегъ = *he has { a great deal of } money*  
                                  { мáло }

(N.B. *never* with *немного́*)

во́все не = *not in the least*

я во́все не хочу́ = *I don't in the least want to*

почти́ (что) = *almost*

почти́ темно́ = *it is nearly dark*

я почти́ что упáль = *I nearly fell down*

далекó не }  
совсѣмъ не } = *far from, not nearly, not at all*

онъ далеко́ не богáтый человекъ = *he is far from being a rich man*

я совсѣмъ не понимаю́ = *I don't understand at all*

совсѣмъ = *quite*

мнѣ совсѣмъ удѣбно = *I'm quite comfortable*

не совсѣмъ = *not quite*

вполнѣ, сполна, сплошь = *entirely*

едва, еле, еле-еле, чуть, чуть-чуть = *scarcely, with difficulty*

онъ едва умѣетъ писать = *he scarcely knows how to write*

она еле-еле ходить = *she walks with the greatest difficulty*

едва не, чуть не, чуть-чуть не = *almost*

меня едва не убили = *they almost killed me*

она чуть-чуть не упала = *she very nearly fell down*

(чуть-чуть alone means *the tiniest bit*)

по крайней мѣрѣ = *at least*.

#### Note on the Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs.

The comparative of the adverb is exactly the same as the predicative comparative of the adjective, e. g.

лучше = *better* (adj. and adv.)

хуже = *worse* „ „

Specifically adverbial forms are:

болѣе = *more* } cf. §§ 57, 84.  
 мѣнѣе = *less* }

Notice:

болѣе или мѣнѣе = *more or less*

ни болѣе ни мѣнѣе = *neither more nor less*

and the superlative forms:

наиболѣе = *(the) most* (adv.)

наимѣнѣе = *(the) least* (adv.)

всего менѣе = *anything rather than*.

Comparatives preceded by по- are commonly used adverbially, e. g.

по-выше = *higher up* (sc. *a little higher*)

по-ниже = *lower down*

по-дальше = *further along*

по-ближе = *rather closer*

and cf. p. 87.

## PARTICLES AND CONJUNCTIONS

§ 75.

и = and ;

often used to emphasize the preceding word, or with the meaning *just, moreover*, e. g.

я такъ и думалъ! = *I thought as much!*

этого и недоставало = *it was just this that was wanting (= this is the last straw)*

въ томъ-то и дѣло = *that's just the point*

я и говорилъ ему . . . = *moreover I had told him . . .*, followed by не = *not in the least*

я и не хотѣлъ = *I didn't in the least want to, or what's more I didn't want to.*

In some cases, when things are mentioned in couples, да = *and*, e. g. мужъ да жена = *husband and wife.*

It is important to notice that expressions such as *you and I* are always introduced by мы = *we*, e. g.

мы съ вами = *you and I*

мы съ нимъ = *he and I*

мы съ сестрою = *my sister and I.*

Any antithesis can be introduced by а, e. g.

онъ хочетъ, а я не хочу = *he wants to, but I don't (or and I don't).*

It can usually be rendered by the English *but* or *while*, but very often it begins a sentence and corresponds to our *now* or *and*; it takes the place of и (=and) whenever any antithesis is to be indicated.

да } = *but*  
но }

this indicates stronger antithesis than а; still stronger are

однако } = *nevertheless*  
однакоже }

всѣтаки = *however, after all*

-таки can be added as an enclitic to words in the sentence, e. g.

онъ такъ поставилъ на своёмъ = *he (sc. in spite of everything) would have his own way*

ИЛИ = *or*

ВѢДЬ = *for, for you know that*

usually used as an expostulation at the beginning of a sentence, e. g.

ВѢДЬ ВЫ ЗНАЛИ, ЧТО Я НЕ ХОЧУ = *now look here, you knew that I didn't want to*

И — И — = *both — and —*

НИ — НИ — = *neither — nor —*

КАКЪ — ТАКЪ И — = *both — and —*

ИЛИ — ИЛИ — = *either — or —*

ИТАКЪ = *and so*

(usually used in drawing an inference)

ТАКЖЕ } = *also*  
ТОЖЕ }

ДАЖЕ = *even*

ЕЩЕ = *still*

ВОТЬ = *this is . . . , here is . . . , there is . . .*

(like French *voici, voilà*).

### § 76. Questions and Answers (cf. § 49).

These are introduced either by some interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by the use of the interrogative particle -ли, e. g.

КТО ВЫ? = *who are you?*

ВЫ-ЛИ ЭТО? = *is this you?*

ДОМА-ЛИ БАРИНЪ? = *is the gentleman at home?*

In ordinary conversation the -ли is often omitted, the question being indicated by raising the voice at the end of the sentence. Что is often used at the beginning of a question instead of -ли, e. g.

ЧТО МЫ ПОБѢДЕМЪ? = *shall we go?*

This same question could be put in the following ways:

а что, мы побѣдемъ?

побѣдемъ, что-ли?

If a negative answer is expected рѣзвѣ is very often used, e. g.

рѣзвѣ вы знаете его? = *you don't know him, do you?*

If an affirmative answer is expected, use рѣзвѣ не, e. g.

рѣзвѣ вы меня не узнали? = *didn't you recognize me?*

рѣзвѣ вы не хотѣте? = *do you mean to say you don't want to?*

*Incredulity and amazement* are expressed by *неужели*, e. g.

*неужели это правда!* = *can this possibly be true!*

*Doubt* by *вряд-ли*

*вряд-ли это такъ* = *I doubt whether this is so.*

*-ли — или —* = *whether — or —*

*я не знаю, умерь-ли или нѣтъ* = *I don't know whether he is dead or not.*

The affirmative answer is

*да* = *yes*, and the negative *нѣтъ* = *no*,

but as often as not a question can be answered by repeating a word contained in the question, e. g.

*знаете-ли вы его?* — *знаю* — = *do you know him?* — *yes, I do.*

*дѡма-ли бѡрыня?* — *дѡма* = *is the lady at home?* — *yes.*

Other common expressions are:

*конѡчно* = *of course*

*ещѡ-бы!* = *I should say so!*

### § 77. Negations.

In negative sentences the negative particle *не* always comes immediately before the verb if the whole sentence is negated, but before any particular word if that word only is negated, e. g.

*я не люблю его* = *I don't like him*

*я люблю не его, а еѡ* = *I like her, not him.*

The object, when directly governed by the negative, is always in the genitive, e. g.

*онъ не любитъ своѡй женѡ* = *he doesn't love his wife*

(but cf. § 81).

If a sentence contains any negative pronoun, adverb, or the conjunction *ни — ни —*, the negative particle *не* must be added; two negatives in Russian do not make an affirmative, e. g.

*никого не вижу* = *I can see no one*

*ничего не хочу* = *I don't want anything*

*я никакъ не ожидаль* — = *I didn't in the least expect —*

*There is not* = *нѣтъ*

which always requires the genitive, e. g.

*нѣтъ надежды* = *there is no hope*

*дѡма никого нѣтъ* = *there is nobody at home*

*Is there not?* = *нѣтъ-ли?*

## § 78. Subordinative Conjunctions.

что́бы = *in order that*что́бы не = *lest*е́сли = *if*хотя́ = *although*когда́ = *when*пока́ = *while*

&amp;c.

(for the use of these cf. §§ 102-5)

(какъ) бѹдто	} = <i>as it were, as though</i> ;
бѹдто-бы	
я́ко-бы	

these are very commonly used in reporting facts, incidents, or speeches of doubtful authenticity or credibility, e. g.

онъ какъ бѹдто не хóчетъ = *I fancy he doesn't want to*онъ говорíтъ бѹдто не хóчетъ = *he makes out he doesn't want to*она́ бѹдто-бы нездо́рова = *she is supposed to be unwell.*

Other particles used colloquially are

авось = *may be*небо́сь = *I expect*

мо́ль	} = <i>says he, said he</i> (in quoting another's words)
де́скать	

which are all very commonly used by the people, but not much in society or literature.

The particle *-сь* is often affixed to the last word of any sentence, especially by servants and shopkeepers and subordinate officials when addressing employers, customers, or superiors, to indicate subservience; it is supposed to be an abbreviation of the words *суда́рь* = *sir* and *суда́рыня* = *madam*.

## THE PREPOSITIONS AND THE USE OF THE CASES WITH AND WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

## § 79. Alphabetical list of prepositions :

безъ (безо)	= <i>without</i>	Gen.
близъ (близь)	= <i>near</i>	Gen.
вдо́ль	= <i>down</i>	Gen.
вмѣ́сто	= <i>instead of</i>	Gen.
вну́три	= <i>inside</i>	Gen.

внѣ	= <i>outside</i>	Gen.
вѣзлѣ	= <i>alongside</i>	Gen.
вокругъ	= <i>around</i>	Gen.
вопреки	= <i>against</i>	Dat.
въ (во)	= <i>in, into</i>	Acc. Loc.
для	= <i>for</i>	Gen.
до	= <i>up to</i>	Gen.
за	= <i>for, behind</i>	Acc. Inst.
изъ	= <i>out of</i>	Gen.
изъ-за	= <i>from out, from behind, because of</i>	Gen.
изъ-подъ	= <i>from under</i>	Gen.
крѣмъ	= <i>besides, except</i>	Gen.
кругомъ	= <i>around</i>	Gen.
къ (ко)	= <i>to</i>	Dat.
между	= <i>between</i>	Gen. Inst.
мимо	= <i>past</i>	Gen.
на	= <i>on, on to</i>	Acc. Loc.
надъ (надо)	= <i>above</i>	Inst.
о (объ, обо)	= <i>about, against</i>	Acc. Loc.
около	= <i>around, about, near</i>	Gen.
отъ (ото)	= <i>away from</i>	Gen.
передъ (передо, предъ, предо)	= <i>in front of</i>	Acc. Inst.
по	= <i>according to, along, till</i>	Acc. Dat. Loc.
подлѣ	= <i>alongside of</i>	Gen.
позадѣ (позадъ)	= <i>behind</i>	Gen.
посредѣ	= <i>in the midst of</i>	Gen.
послѣ	= <i>after</i>	Gen.
подъ (подо)	= <i>under</i>	Acc. Inst.
при	= <i>in the presence of, at, near</i>	Loc.
про	= <i>about</i>	Acc.
прѣтивъ	= <i>against</i>	Gen.
ради	= <i>for the sake of</i>	Gen.
сверхъ	= <i>over</i>	Gen.
сквозъ	= <i>through</i>	Acc.
средѣ	= <i>in the midst of</i>	Gen.
съ (со)	= <i>with, from</i>	Acc. Gen. Inst.
у	= <i>at the house of, near, in the possession of</i>	Gen.
черезъ, чрезъ	= <i>through, across, over</i>	Acc.

### § 80. The Nominative.

The nominative is used, as in other languages, for the subject and the predicate of the sentence, e. g.

я твой отецъ = I [*am*] *thy father*

though under certain conditions the predicate is in the instrumental, cf. § 84.

The nominative is used for the vocative, except in the three instances mentioned in § 39, e. g.

отецъ мой! = *oh, my father!*

за + nom.

The nominative is always used after the preposition за = *for* in phrases such as :

что это за книга? = *what book is that? what sort of a book is that?* (lit. = *what this for book*). Cf. German: *was ist das für ein Buch?*

though when the nom. is the same as the acc. it is not apparent that it is the nom., e. g.

что это за домъ? = *what house is that?*

### § 81. The Genitive.

The genitive is used to denote :

#### (1) Possession, e. g.

домъ отца = *the house of the father*

though in this sense it is often replaced by the possessive adj., q. v.

#### (2) Qualities, e. g.

мальчикъ хорошаго характера = *a boy of good character*  
 человекъ пожилыхъ лѣтъ = *a man of advanced years.*

#### (3) Partition, e. g.

я хочу воды = *I want (some) water*  
 хлѣба, пожалуйста! = *(some) bread, please!*  
 кусокъ мяса = *a piece of meat*

often with the meaning of *a lot* after impersonal verbs :

накопилось писемъ = *(a lot) of letters has accumulated.*

#### (4) Quantity, e. g.

стаканъ чаю = *a glass of tea* (tea in Russia is usually drunk out of glasses)



Фунтъ сахара = *a pound of sugar*  
 масса людей = *a mass (crowd) of people*

after adverbs of quantity, e. g.

много дѣтей = *many children*  
 мало друзей = *few friends*  
 немного (dim. немножко) мяса = *a little meat*  
 нѣсколько лѣтъ = *some years*

for the gen. in -у cf. § 39; for the other adverbs of quantity, and also for their adjectival forms and use, cf. § 74.

(5) After the numerals 5-20, 25-30, 35-40, &c., cf. § 63.

(6) Time in certain expressions :

сегодня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*)  
 перваго марта = *on the first of March* (= *of the first*).

(7) Comparison :

онъ слабѣ меня = *he [is] weaker than I.*

(8) The genitive is always used after certain verbs :

бояться	}	= <i>to fear</i>
опасаться		
избѣгать		= <i>to avoid</i>
желать		= <i>to wish</i> (when an indefinite quantity is implied)
хотѣть		= <i>to desire</i> ( " " " )
искать		= <i>to seek</i>
просить		= <i>to beg</i>
ждать	}	= <i>to await, expect</i>
дожидаться		
стоять		= <i>to cost</i> (except in quotations of prices)
лишать		= <i>to deprive</i>
касаться		= <i>to touch, concern</i>
держаться		= <i>to keep to.</i>

Examples :

я боюсь моря = *I am afraid of the sea*  
 хотѣте-ли вы вина = *would you like some wine?* but я хочу  
 эту книгу (= acc.) = *I want this book*  
 желаю вамъ счастливаго пути! = *I wish you a good journey!*  
 (желаю вамъ) всего хорошаго (лучшаго)! (*I wish you*) *every-*  
*thing good (best)! (A very common phrase on saying*  
*good-bye or ending a letter.)*

- я ищу́ кварти́ры = *I am looking for a flat*  
 жду ва́шего при́зда = *I am awaiting your arrival*  
 сто́ило егó жи́зни = *it cost his life* (but in prices the nom.  
 is used)  
 э́то каса́ется васъ = *this concerns you*  
 что каса́ется меня́ = *as far as I am concerned*

notice the idiom :

ми́лости про́спимъ! = *please come and see us* (lit. = *we crave mercy*, a very common form of general invitation).

(9) After certain adjectives in the shorter or attributive form :

по́логъ = *full*

ваго́нь по́лонъ люде́й = *the railway-carriage is full of people*

досто́инъ = *worthy*

она́ досто́йна егó = *she is worthy of him.*

(10) In negative sentences the direct object is always in the genitive, e. g.

я не ви́жу ва́шего до́ма = *I do not (= cannot) see your house*

онъ не слы́шитъ моего́ го́лоса = *he does not hear my voice*

я не зна́ю ва́шей сестры́ = *I don't know your sister.*

One meets with apparent exceptions to this rule, when the object is not directly governed by the negative, but they are only apparent, e. g.

я не могу́ чита́ть э́ту кни́гу = *I cannot read this book*

but

я не чита́лъ э́той кни́ги = *I have not read this book.*

The genitive is also used after

нѣтъ = *there is not* (*il n'y a pas*)

не бу́детъ = *there will not be*

не́-было = *there was not*

у меня́ нѣтъ де́негъ = *I have no money* (lit. = *to me there is no money*)

сего́дня не бу́детъ представле́нiя = *to-day there will be no performance*

не бу́детъ дождя́ = *there will be no rain*

не́-было ниче́го = *there was nothing*

не́-было моро́за = *there was no frost.*

(11) The genitive is used instead of the accusative in the singular and plural of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ь, -ѣ, and

in the plural of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я when they denote things that are or were animate, e. g.

я ви́жу солд́ата = *I see a soldier*  
 онъ зна́еть отца́ = *he knows the father*  
 я люблю́ соба́къ = *I am fond of dogs*

The old accusative which was the same as the nominative is used in a few phrases which became crystallized before the introduction of this use of the genitive. Cf. § 83.

(12) Notice the idioms:

до́ма = *at home*  
 ма́ло то́го что . . . = *far from . . .*

The genitive is used after the following prepositions:

безъ = *without*  
 безъ меня́ = *without me, in my absence*  
 безо всего́ = *without anything*

notice безъ то́го, что́бы не сказа́ть вамъ = *without telling you*

до = *up to, till, before*  
 до то́го = *to that* (sc. *extent*, = *to such an extent*)  
 до то́го вре́мени = *up to that time*  
 до сихъ поръ = *till now* (cf. § 68)  
 до конца́ = *up to the end* (конѣць = *end*)  
 до рождества́ Христо́ва = *before the birth of Christ*  
 до ва́съ = *before your time, before your arrival*

notice the idioms:

мнѣ но́ до э́того = *I have no time* (or *no inclination*) *for this*  
 (sc. *now*)  
 имъ но́ до насъ = *they have nothing to do with us* (sc. *they don't*  
*bother themselves about us*)  
 до́сыта = *to one's full*

изъ (изо before certain groups of consonants) = *from out of, of*  
 я получи́лъ письмо́ изъ Москвы́ = *I have received a letter from*  
*Moscow*

онъ приѣ́халъ изъ А́нглии = *he has arrived from England*  
 изъ воды́ = *from out of the water*  
 изъ зóлота = *of gold*  
 изъ стекла́ = *of glass*  
 изо дня́ въ де́нь = *from day to day*

it is always used in the phrase *one of*, e. g.

ВЪ ОДНОМЪ ИЗЪ БОЛЬШИХЪ ДОМОВЪ = *in one of the big houses . . .*

the gen. alone cannot be used in such cases ; notice the idiom :

ИЗЪ-ДОМУ = *from (out of) home.*

The two following compound prepositions also take the genitive :

ИЗЪ-ЗА = *from behind, from beyond, from out of, on account of*

ИЗЪ-ЗА ГРАНИЦЫ = *from beyond the frontier, sc. from abroad*

ИЗЪ-ЗА ЭТОГО = *from out of this, sc. on account of, as a result of this*

ИЗЪ-ЗА МОЕЙ БОЛѢЗНИ = *on account of, as a result of my illness*

ИЗЪ-ПОДЪ = *from under*

ИЗЪ-ПОДЪ СТОЛА = *from under the table.*

у = *near, at the house of, in the possession of, from.*

As the verb *to have* (ИМѢТЬ) is very seldom used in Russian, recourse has to be had to a paraphrase to express possession, temporary or permanent. This paraphrase consists of the preposition *у* followed by a noun or pronoun in the genitive and a part of the verb *to be* (БЫТЬ) ; the part most commonly used is *есть* = *is, il y a*, though of course *будеть* = *will be, il y aura*, and *было* = *was, il y avait, il y a eu* are also very frequent. It remains to be said that the word *есть* is as often as not omitted, so that as a result the commonest way of saying in Russian :

<i>I have</i>	is	у менѣ
<i>thou hast</i>	„	у тебя
<i>he or she has</i>	„	у него, у ней
<i>we have</i>	„	у насъ
<i>you have</i>	„	у васъ
<i>they have</i>	„	у нихъ

The full forms, with *есть* added each time after the pronoun, are especially common in relating stories or whenever it is necessary to be particularly explicit, and in questions.

**Examples :**

у менѣ есть отецъ и мать, и два брата = *I have a father and a mother and two brothers*

у нихъ много денегъ = *they have a lot of money*

у насъ нѣтъ дѣтей = *we have no children* (нѣтъ is a contraction of не + есть)

есть у васъ эта книга? = *have you this book?*

у меня насморкъ = *I have a cold in the head*

у него простуда = *he has a cold in the chest*

notice the idioms:

у васъ хоро́шій видъ = *you look well* (lit. *you have a good aspect*)

у него плохой видъ = *he looks ill.*

If the word in the nominative comes before the preposition у and the word governed by it, it regains its original meaning of *near*, e. g.

собака у меня = *the dog is near me.*

The distinction is very subtle and must be closely observed, as it is one way of expressing the difference between the definite and the indefinite articles, e. g.

у меня от } собака = *I have a dog*  
у меня есть }

while

собака у меня = *the dog is near me* (not necessarily *my dog*),  
i. e. *I have the dog, the dog is in my possession, or at my house.*

Again,

у него автомобиль = *he has a motor-car*

but

автомобиль у него = *the motor-car is at present in his possession, he has the motor-car (probably not his own).*

у of course often means *at the house of*, e. g.

они у насъ = *they [are] at our house*

у насъ сегодня балъ = *[there is] a dance at our house to-day*

я обѣдаю сегодня у друзѣй = *I am dining at the house of some friends to-day.*

With the personal pronoun it also acquires the meaning of a possessive adjective, e. g.

у меня зубъ болитъ = *my tooth aches, I have toothache*

домъ у насъ горитъ = *our house is burning*

головá у ней болитъ = *her head aches, she has a headache.*

кошелёкъ у меня пропáлъ = *I have lost my purse.*

In exclamatory remarks it acquires, coupled with the personal pronoun, something of the nature of the ethic dative, e. g.

ОНА у мЕНЯ хоро́шая ло́шадь! = *that's a fine horse!* (sc. of mine)

ТЫ у мЕНЯ краса́вица! = *thou art a beauty!* (not ironically, sc. *you are mine, you are beautiful, and I'm proud of you*)

ОНА у вась у́мница! = *she's a clever-boots!* (sc. *your little girl*).

Curiously enough after certain verbs *у* can also mean *from*, e. g.

ОНЪ о́тнять у мЕНЯ де́ньги = *he took away the money from me*

Я взя́ть у него́ кни́гу = *I took the (or a) book from him.*

съ (so before certain groups of consonants) = *from, since, from off*

съ голо́вы до но́гъ = *from head to foot* (lit. *feet*)

съ утра́ до ве́чера = *from morning till evening*

съ янва́ря = *since January*

съ пя́того ма́я = *from the 5th of May*

ОНЪ упа́ть съ крѣ́пи = *he fell from the roof*

СКО́лько съ вась взя́ли? = *how much did they take off you?*  
(e. g. *in shops*, = the colloquial: *how much did they robk you?*)

съ мЕНЯ́ взя́ли оче́нь до́рого = *they made me pay dear* (lit. *they took very dearly from me*)

со дня́ на́ день = *from day to day*

со ску́ки = *from tedium*

съ отча́янія = *from despair*

съ ва́шего позво́ленія = *with your permission.*

Notice phrases such as :

сра́зу (also съ-ра́зу) = *at once*

я сра́зу узна́лъ егó = *I immediately recognized him*

сво́ва = *again*

сы́знова = *all over again*

снача́ла = *at first*

which are compound adverbs formed by the preposition *съ* with the genitive of nouns and adjectives.

отъ (ото before certain groups of consonants) = *from, away from*

ОНЪ УБѢХАЛЪ ОТЪ НАСЪ = *he has gone away from us* (sc. *left us*)  
 Я ПОЛУЧИЛЪ ПИСЬМÓ ОТЪ БРАТА = *I have received a letter from*  
 (sc. *my*) *brother*

ОТЪ РАДОСТИ = *from joy*

ОТЪ СКУКИ = *from tedium*

ОТО ВСЕГО ЭТОГО = *from (as a result of) all this*

ОНЪ УМЕРЪ ОТЪ ЭТОГО = *he died from (of) this*

. . . . ОТЪ ДВАДЦАТАГО МАЯ = . . . . *of the 20th of May*

notice the idiom :

ОТЪ РОДУ = *from birth.*

Phrases are common in which both *отъ* and *до* are used :

ОТЪ ПЕТРОГРАДА ДО МОСКВЫ = *from Petrograd to Moscow*

ОТЪ НАЧАЛА ДО КОНЦА = *from beginning to end*

ОТЪ ВРЕМЕНИ ДО ВРЕМЕНИ = *from time to time.*

There are a number of prepositions which take the genitive which were originally adverbs (some are still used as such), or cases of nouns with or without other prepositions, and having become crystallized are regularly used as prepositions :

БЛИЗЪ = *near*

БЛИЗЪ МОСКВЫ = *near Moscow*

ОКОЛО = *around, about, near*

ОКОЛО ЛОНДОНА = (1) *not far from London*, (2) *around London*

ОКОЛО ДВАДЦАТИ ЛѢТЬ = *about 20 years*

\*КРУГОМЪ }  
 \*ВОКРУГЪ } = *round, around*

КРУГОМЪ ГОРОДА = *round the town*

ПОДЛѢ }  
 \*ВОЗЛѢ } = *alongside of*

ВОЗЛѢ МЕНЯ = *alongside of me*

ПОДЛѢ РѢКИ = *alongside the river*

ВДОЛЬ = *the length of, down*

ВДОЛЬ УЛИЦЫ = *down the street*

ВНѢ = *outside*

ВНѢ КОМНАТЫ = *outside the room*

\*ВНУТРИ = *inside*

ВНУТРИ КОМНАТЫ = *inside the room*

- вмѣсто = *instead of*  
 вмѣсто того = *instead of that*
- сверхъ = *over*  
 сверхъ того = *in addition to that*  
 сверхъ шубы = *over (his) fur coat*  
 (сверхестественный = *supernatural*)
- среді (\*посреді) = *in the middle of*  
 среді улицы = *in the middle of the street*  
 (Средиземное море = *the Mediterranean*)
- \*позаді = *behind*  
 позаді меня = *behind me*
- \*послѣ = *after*  
 послѣ обѣда = *after dinner*
- \*мимо = *past*  
 мимо дома = *past the house* (cf. мимоходомъ = *in passing*)
- для = *for*  
 для чего? = *what for?*  
 онъ сдѣлалъ это для меня = *he did this for me*
- крѡмѣ = *besides*  
 крѡмѣ этого = *besides this*  
 крѡмѣ того = *besides that*
- ради = *for the sake of*  
 ради Бога! = *for God's sake*
- прѡтивъ = *against, opposite*  
 прѡтивъ непріятеля = *against the enemy*  
 прѡтивъ холеры = *against cholera*  
 прѡтивъ насъ = (1) *against us*, (2) *opposite us*
- мѣжду = *between* (but more commonly with the inst.).

Those marked with an asterisk can be used as adverbs as well.

§ 82. The Dative is used after a number of verbs without any preposition :

дать }  
 давать } = *to give*

я далъ ей деньги = *I gave her the money*

онъ далъ мнѣ слово = *he gave me [his] word*

вѣрить = *to believe*

я вамъ вѣрю = *I believe you* (but N.B. вѣровать въ Бога  
 = *to believe in God*)



удивля́ться = *to be astonished (at)*

я удивля́юсь э́тому = *I am astonished at this*

ра́доваться = *to rejoice (at)*

мы ра́дуемся ва́шему при́езду = *we rejoice at your arrival*

кла́няться = *to greet (lit. = to bow to)*

кла́няюсь всѣмъ = *greetings to all*

учи́ться = *to learn*

я учи́сь ру́сскому язы́ку = *I am learning Russian*

смѣ́яться = *to laugh (at)*

чему́ вы смѣ́етесь? = *what are you laughing at?*

(N.B. *to laugh at some one* = с. надѣ + inst.)

мѣ́шать = *to hinder*

я вамъ не мѣ́шаю? = *I am not in your way?*

моли́ться = *to pray to*

молю́сь Бо́гу = *I am praying to God*

зави́довать = *to envy*

зави́дую вамъ = *I envy you*

жа́ловаться = *to complain*

онъ жа́луется мнѣ́ на васъ = *he complains to me of you*

грози́ть = *to threaten*

грози́ть намъ бѣ́да = *misfortune is threatening us*

мсти́ть = *to take vengeance on*

учи́ть (+ acc. and dat.) = *to teach*

чему́ онъ васъ учи́ть? = *what is he teaching you?*

говори́ть, сказа́ть = *to tell*

скажи́те мнѣ́ = *tell me*

подража́ть = *to imitate*

напомина́ть, напо́мнить = *to remind*

напо́мните мнѣ́ объ э́томъ = *remind me about this*

э́то мнѣ́ напомина́етъ егó = *this reminds me of him*

пи́сать = *to write* (but also with къ, cf. p. 131)

я пишу́ ему́ пи́сьмо = *I am writing him a letter*

пода́рить = *to give, to present*; купи́ть = *to buy, and others.*

Also after impersonal verbs:

э́то мнѣ́ нра́вится = *this pleases me, sc. I like this*

мнѣ́ хо́чется = *I want to*

мнѣ́ пи́ть хо́чется = *I am thirsty (= I want to drink. There*

*is no adjective thirsty in Russian)*

ка́жется = *it seems*

мнѣ́ ка́жется = *it seems to me, sc. I think*

мнѣ́ не спѣ́тся = *I cannot sleep*

мнѣ́ нездо́ровича = *I am unwell.*

Notice the curious expression :

о́нъ прихо́дится мнѣ́ (e.g.) дѣ́деи (inst.) = *he is my (e.g.) uncle*  
which is used to describe relationships usually of the remoter kind (N.B. прихо́дится usually = *one has to + inf.*).

The dative is also used in the following common expressions :

мо́жно мнѣ́ ? = *may I ?*  
вамъ́ нево́зможно = *you may not*  
вамъ́ нельзѣ́ = *you must not*  
пора́ намъ́ ! = *it is time for us (sc. to go)*  
я́ радъ́ ва́шему приѣ́зду = *I am glad at your arrival.*

After adverbs expressing pleasure, displeasure, heat, cold, &c., e.g.

у́годно-ли́ вамъ́ ? = *would you like . . . ?*  
какъ́ вамъ́ у́годно = *just as you like*  
мнѣ́́ хо́лодно = *I am cold*  
мнѣ́́ тепло́ = *I am warm*  
мнѣ́́ жа́рко = *I am hot*  
мнѣ́́ неприя́тно + inf. = *it is unpleasant to me to . . .*  
мнѣ́́ жаль = *I am sorry.*

Also in expressing age :

ско́лько вамъ́ ле́тъ ? = *how old are you ? (lit. = how many to you of years ?)*  
мнѣ́́ два́дцать ле́тъ = *I am twenty*

and in a few expressions such as :

э́та кни́га вамъ́ = *this book is for you*  
э́то мнѣ́́ = *this is for me*  
це́на э́тимъ́ мѣ́стамъ́ = *the price of these places*  
о́нъ намъ́ сосѣ́дь = *he is our neighbour*  
о́нъ мнѣ́́ врагъ́ = *he is an enemy of mine*  
э́то не пришло́ мнѣ́́ въ́ го́лову = *it did not enter my head.*

The dative is also used with the infinitive to express *is to, has got to, e. g.*

кому́́ написа́ть э́то пи́сьмо ? = *who is to write this letter ?*  
э́тому́ не бы́ть = *this is not to be.*

Notice the idioms:

такъ себѣ = *fairly*

e. g.

какъ это вамъ нравится? такъ себѣ! = *how do you like that? so-so!*

и томú подобное = *and so on* (abbr. и т. п. = &c.) (lit. *and to that similar*: sometimes also in plur.)

домой = *homewards, [to] home.*

The dative is used after the following prepositions:

къ (ко before certain groups of consonants) = <i>to</i>	
я пришёлъ къ вамъ	= <i>I have come to you</i>
приходите къ намъ	= <i>come to us, sc. come and see us</i>
приходите ко мнѣ	= <i>come and see me</i>
у меня къ вамъ просьба	= <i>I have a favour to ask you</i>
къ вечеру	= <i>towards evening</i>
къ осени	= <i>towards autumn, by the autumn</i>
къ началу октября	= <i>by the beginning of October</i>
къ концу ноября	= <i>by the end of November</i>
къ первому августа	= <i>by the first of August</i>
къ пяти часамъ	= <i>by five o'clock.</i>

Notice the idioms:

къ сожалѣнію	= <i>unfortunately, to my regret</i>
къ несчастію	= <i>unfortunately</i>
къ моему удивленію	= <i>to my surprise</i>
это вамъ къ лицу <i>to you to the face)</i>	= <i>that suits you (of clothes), (lit. =</i>
къ моимъ ногамъ	= <i>(he fell) at my feet</i>
лицомъ къ лицу	= <i>face to face</i>
къ какой стати?	= <i>to what purpose?</i>
кстати	= <i>by the by, that reminds me.</i>

вопреки = *against, in spite of*

вопреки приличіямъ = *in defiance of decorum*

по = *along, over, according to*

по улицѣ = *along the street*

по-морю = *over the sea, by sea*

по-моему or  
по моему мнѣнію } = *in my opinion*

почему́ ?	= <i>why ? (= on what grounds ?)</i>
потому́ что ( <i>abb. п. т. ч.</i> )	} = <i>because</i>
по пре́жнему	
по но́вому сти́лю	} = <i>according to new, old style</i>
по ста́рому сти́лю	

(in dating letters, the Russian (Julian) calendar being thirteen days behind ours (Gregorian); the abbreviations are: c. c., н. с.).

Notice the very common idioms:

по-тихо́нку	= <i>quietly, on the sly</i>
по-немно́жку	} = <i>gradually, little by little</i>
ма́ло-по-ма́лу	
по желе́зной доро́гѣ	= <i>by rail</i>
по слу́чаю + gen.	= <i>on the occasion of . . .</i>
по нево́лѣ	= <i>perforce</i>
по моёй ча́сти	= <i>in my line, in my department (lit. part)</i>
я уда́рилъ его́ по голо́вѣ	= <i>I hit him on the head</i>
я уда́рилъ его́ по плеча́мъ	= <i>I hit him on the shoulders</i>
по возбу́женнымъ цѣна́мъ	= <i>at raised prices (sc. higher than usual),</i>

also distributively:

по нача́мъ	= <i>at night (sc. frequently)</i>
по утра́мъ	= <i>in the morning (sc. every morning)</i>
по Воскресе́нιάмъ	= <i>on Sundays, every Sunday</i>
онъ да́ль всѣмъ намъ по я́блоку	= <i>he gave us all an apple each</i>
по пяти́ рубле́й (dat. + gen. pl.)	= <i>at five roubles.</i>

### § 83. The Accusative is used

(1) To denote the object of a transitive verb, e. g.

я люблю́ свою́ ро́дину = *I love my country.*

It has already been remarked that the acc. sing. and plur. of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ь, and -ѣ, and the acc. plur. of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я is the same in form as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate, and the same as the nominative in the case of inanimate nouns.

The same rule applies to all adjectives and to all the pronouns except the personal pronouns and *кто* = *who*; in these the acc. is always the same as the gen., even the acc. of the neuter pronoun

онó = *it* being the same, not as the nom. but as the gen., viz. егó.

It must be observed, however, that this was not always so; the old acc. was invariably the same as the nom., and this is still to be seen in a few expressions which became crystallized before the gen. came to be used for the acc. in the case of animate things; such phrases, amongst others, are :

вѣйти зáмужь = *to marry*

(N.B. of the woman only; the phrase literally means *to go out behind a man or a husband*)

его произвели въ полкóвники = *they have promoted him to be a colonel* (lit. *into the colonels*)

звать въ гóсти = *to invite* (lit. = *to call into guests*, sc. as *guests*)

поступить въ солдáты = *to enlist*.

(2) To express duration of time and distance :

эту зíму = *this winter*

цѣлое лѣто = *the whole summer*

прошлую óсень = *last autumn*

бúдущую весну́ = *next spring*

одíнь годъ = *(for) one year*

крúтлый годъ = *the whole year round*

цѣлую недѣлю = *(for) a whole week*

мы прошли двѣ версты́ (acc. + gen. sing., cf. § 61) = *we have walked two versts.*

(3) After the word жаль = *pity*, e.g.

мнѣ жаль ва́шу сестру́ = *I am sorry for your sister*

ему́ жаль её = *he is sorry for her*

мнѣ егó жаль = *I am sorry for him.*

The accusative is used after the following prepositions :

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *into*

я ѣду въ Россíю = *I am travelling to Russia*

я ѣду въ Лондонъ = *I am travelling to London*

въ Крымъ = *to the Crimea*

онъ вошёлъ въ комнату́ = *he came into the room.*

Notice the following idiomatic uses :

въ понедѣльникъ	= on Monday
во вторникъ	= on Tuesday
въ день моего рождѣнія	= on my birthday
въ два часа	= at two o'clock
разъ въ день	= once a day
два раза въ недѣлю	= twice a week
во что-бы то ни стало	= cost what it may
въ два рубля	= costing two roubles
въ рубль	= at one rouble
въ два этажа	= two stories (high)
въ тысячу разъ лучше	= a thousand times better
въ старину	= in the old days
во-время	= in time
во время + gen.	= during (the time of)
въ пору	= it is the right size
мнѣ не въ пору	= it doesn't fit me
вамъ въ пору	= it fits you
въ гору	= up-hill.
(Cf. вверхъ	= upwards
внизъ	= downwards.)

Notice the common expressions :

втечѣніе + gen. (also written въ течѣніе) = in the course of  
 вслѣдствіе этого (also въ с . . .) = as a result of this  
 въ продолженіе цѣлаго года = for a whole year.

за = behind, beyond, for, by

я ѣду за границу	= I am going abroad (lit. beyond the frontier)
онъ поѣхалъ за-городъ	= he has gone out of town
онъ взялъ меня за руку	= he took me by the hand
сидемъ за столъ	= let us sit down to table
ей за-пятьдесятъ лѣтъ	= she is more than 50.

Always after the following verbs :

(по) благодарить	= to thank
купить	} = to buy
покупать	

продавать } продать }	= to sell
молиться	= to pray

and expressions such as *praying for, fighting for*, e. g.

я благодарю васъ за ваше письмо	= I thank you for your letter
я купилъ это за рубль	= I bought this for a rouble
онъ мнѣ продалъ лошадь за пять сотъ рублей	= he sold me a horse for 500 roubles
молитесь за меня	= pray for me
жизнь за царя	= (one's) life for the tsar
за Англичанъ	= for (sc. in favour of) the English.

Notice the idioms :

за кого вы меня принимаете ?	= whom do you take me for ?
выйти } выходить }	за . . . = to marry
она вышла за немца	= she married a German
за кого она вышла ?	= whom did she marry ?

For the phrase *выйти замужъ* cf. p. 133.

Also in certain expressions of time and distance :

она умерла за два часа до вашего приезда	= she died two hours before your arrival
мы живёмъ за пять вёрст отъ станицы	= we live five versts from the station
за царствование Александра второго	= in the reign of Alexander II
за лето	= in the course of the summer (sc. when it is over).

Notice the idioms :

за хвостъ, за голову	= by the tail, by the head
за-руку, за-ногу	= by the hand, by the leg or foot
заодно	= in concert with
за то	= on the other hand.

на = on to

положите книгу на столъ	= put the book on the table
онъ лёгъ на-бокъ	= he lay down on his side
на колѣни	= on to (one's) knees
на землю	= on to the ground.

Notice the following idiomatic uses :

на-ночь	= for the night
онъ приѣхалъ на цѣлый мѣсяць	= he has come for a whole month
дня на-два	= for about two days
на другой день	= (on) the next day
на слѣдующій разъ (or) на другой р.)	= for next time
на-гору	= up-hill
на-берегъ моря	= to the seaside
ѣхать на Кавказъ	= to travel to the Caucasus
на-два рубля дороже	= dearer by two roubles
на пятьдесятъ копѣекъ дешевле	= cheaper by 50 kopeks
на лицо	= present (sc. to be present), in cash
на силу	= with great effort
на-ново	= afresh
на-скоро	= quickly (sc. without taking much time or trouble)
положиться } надѣяться }	на когó = to have confidence in any one
кушайте на здорóвье!	= eat it to your health (a common phrase when showing hospitality)
на сѣверъ	= to the North
на югъ	= to the South
на востокъ	= to the East
на западъ	= to the West
это похоже на васъ	= that is like you (of a portrait)
это ни на что не похоже	= that is not like anything (sc. unutterably bad, abominable)
на память	= from memory
на-показъ	= for show
на-вѣрхъ	= upstairs (sc. motion up)
налѣво	= to the left
направо	= to the right
наконѣцъ	= at last
наизустъ	= by heart (e.g. recitations, &c.)

о (before vowels объ) = about, against

объ эту пору	= about this time
я ушибся о столъ	= I have hurt myself against the table
я оперся о колонну	= I leant against a column
рука объ руку	= arm in arm



по = *till*

отъ пѣрваго (sc. числа) по тридцать-пѣрвое (sc. число) января =  
*from Jan. 1st-31st*

по колѣни въ водѣ = *up to the knees in the water.*

Notice the idioms :

по тѣ сторону = *(over on) that side (of the river)*

по правую рѣку = *on the right-hand side*

по лѣвую рѣку = *on the left-hand side.*

For the use of по + acc. in expression of money values, cf. § 69.

подъ = *under*

положите эту подушку себѣ подѣ-голову = *put this pillow under  
your head*

подѣ-руку (взять кого) = *to take some one by the arm*

подѣ-гору = *down-hill.*

про = *concerning*

про кого вы говорите? = *about whom are you talking?*

Notice the idiom :

про себя = *to oneself*

e. g. они смѣялись про себя = *they were laughing to themselves*  
(про себя) = *(aside).*

сквозь = *through*

видно сквозь дымъ = *visible through the smoke*

сквозь лѣсъ = *through the forest, of anything that is visible  
through the trees of the forest*

while чѣрезъ лѣсъ = *through the forest, e. g. walking through the  
forest.*

съ (so before certain groups of consonants) = *about, like*

онъ съ меня (sc. ростомъ) = *he is (as big) as me (sc. in growth)*

съ недѣлю = *about a week.*

чѣрезъ (or чрезъ) = *through, across, via, over*

чѣрезъ забѣру = *over the fence*

чѣрезъ воду = *through the water*

чѣрезъ воздухъ = *through the air*

чѣрезъ лѣсъ = *through the forest*

черезъ рѣкѣ́ = *across the river, or through the river* (sc. *motion across*)

черезъ Неву́ = *across the Neva*

черезъ Москвѣ́ = *across, through, or via Moscow*

черезъ ко́го? = *through whom?* (sc. *by whose agency?*).

In expressions of time :

черезъ полъ-часá = *in half an hour's time*

черезъ недѣлю́ = *in a week.*

It also can mean *every other* :

черезъ часъ = *in an hour's time, or every other hour*

черезъ день = *every other day.*

### The Instrumental.

§ 84. The instrumental case denotes primarily, as its name implies, the instrument or agent by which anything is done, e.g.

писа́ть карандашо́мъ = *to write with a pencil*

э́то письмо́ написа́но мно́ю = *this letter [was] written by me*

рука́ми = *with [one's] hands*

но́гой = *with [one's] foot, or leg.*

It denotes manner :

парохо́домъ = *by steamer*

я ѣ́ду въ Россію́ парохо́домъ = *I am travelling to Russia by steamer*

сухи́мъ путёмъ = *overland (lit. by dry way)*

я поѣ́ду сухи́мъ путёмъ = *I shall go overland*

мо́ремъ = *by sea*

толпо́й = *in a crowd*

стрѣло́й = *like an arrow*

лѣсо́мъ = *by (sc. through) the forest*

доро́жкой = *by the path*

по́лемъ = *by the field*

нало́женнымъ плате́жемъ = *pay on delivery.*

Notice the idioms :

ѣ́хать ша́гомъ = *to drive (or ride) at walking-pace, 'au pas'*

идти́ пѣ́шкомъ = *to go on foot.*

and especially :

ѣхать верхомъ = *to ride* (sc. *on horseback*); верхъ = *top*, and the phrase literally means *to travel as the top* (sc. *the upper part*).

The phrase кататься верхомъ, lit. = *to roll along as the top* is also used; these two phrases are the only means of saying *to ride* in Russian. Notice also:

рядомъ	= <i>side by side</i>
гуськомъ	= <i>in single file</i>
такимъ путёмъ	= <i>in this way</i>
какимъ образомъ?	= <i>in what manner, how?</i>
какимъ способомъ?	= <i>by what means?</i>
такимъ образомъ	= <i>in this</i> (lit. <i>such</i> ) <i>manner, like that</i> , and often means <i>if you do this . . .</i>
посредствомъ + gen.	= <i>by means of</i>
какимъ отъ которыхъ поѣздомъ?	= <i>by which or what train?</i>
мѣстами	= <i>in places</i>
большею частью	= <i>for the most part</i>
разомъ	= <i>all at once, all together</i>
оптомъ, гуртомъ	= <i>(sell by) wholesale</i>
цѣликомъ	= <i>wholly, completely, all</i>
лицомъ къ лицу	= <i>face to face</i>
однимъ словомъ	= <i>in one word</i>
другими словами	= <i>in other words</i>
его словами	= <i>in his words</i>
самó-собой	= <i>of its own accord, automatically</i>
самó собою разумѣется	= <i>cela se comprend</i>
она хороша собой	= <i>she is good-looking</i> (here the <i>собой</i> merely amplifies the sentence; if anything it emphasizes the compliment, but is really untranslatable in English)
волей-неволей	= <i>willy-nilly.</i>

In certain expressions of the time of day and the seasons:

весной	= <i>in the spring</i>
лѣтомъ	= <i>in the summer</i>
осенью	= <i>in the autumn</i>
зимой	= <i>in the winter</i>

(when preceded by the demonstrative pronoun always use the acc., cf. § 83)

утромъ	= <i>in the morning</i>
вечеромъ	= <i>in the evening</i>

днёмъ = *by day*, and also very frequently = *in the afternoon*  
ночью = *by night*.

N.B. (1) *this morning* is сегодня утромъ (lit. = *to-day in the morning*)

(2) *this evening* is сегодня вечеромъ (lit. = *to-day in the evening*), similarly завтра утромъ = *to-morrow morning*, &c.

It is used in expressions such as :

тѣмъ богаты, тѣмъ и рады = *what we are rich in, to that you are welcome* (lit. = *with that we are glad*, sc. *that we will gladly give*).

It denotes origin :

родомъ Англичанинъ = *by birth an Englishman*.

It is used in some expressions of measurement :

рѣка шириной въ полъ-версты = *a river about half a verst wide (in width)*

гора въ тысячу футовъ вышиной = *a hill 1000 feet in height*

also глубиной = *in depth*, длиной = *in length*.

In comparison of measures, e.g.

я годомъ старше егó = *I am older than he by a year*

though these phrases are more commonly expressed by на + acc. (cf. § 83) or въ + разъ (cf. §§ 65, 83)

тѣмъ лучше = *all the better*

тѣмъ не мѣнѣе = *nevertheless*

тѣмъ болѣе = *all the more*.

The instrumental is always used after certain verbs :

любоваться = *to admire* (but only literally *to gaze at*)

пользоваться } = *to take advantage of, to profit by*  
воспользоваться }

пользуюсь этимъ случаемъ + inf. = *I am taking advantage of this occasion to . . .*

гордиться = *to be proud of*

я горжусь вами = *I am proud of you*

дорожить = *to value highly*

жёртвовать } = *to sacrifice*  
пожёртвовать }

онъ пожёртвовалъ всёмъ своимъ состояніемъ = *he sacrificed the whole of his fortune*

владѣть = *to rule, command*

Англія владѣетъ Индіей = *England rules India*

онъ хорошо владѣетъ русскимъ языкомъ = *he has a good command of the Russian language*

командовать = *to be in command over (troops, &c.)*

руководить = *to lead*

управлѣть = *to manage*

онъ управляетъ моимъ имѣніемъ = *he manages my property*

завѣдывать = *to look after*

она завѣдуетъ домомъ = *she looks after the house*

прáвить = *to drive*

онъ хорошо прáвить лошадыми = *he drives a carriage (lit. horses) very well.*

дышáть = *to breathe*

пахнуть = *to smell (intrans.)*

чѣмъ это пахнетъ? = *what does this smell of?*

A very common and at first sight puzzling use of the instrumental is that called *predicative*. The predicate is put in the instrumental instead of in the nominative whenever any temporary or hypothetical condition is to be indicated, e. g.

когда́ я былъ мальчикомъ = *when I was a boy*

онъ будетъ великимъ человекомъ = *he is going to be a great man*

лежаніе у него не было ни необходимостью ни случайностью = *lying down was in his case neither a necessity nor an accident*

послать . . . заказнымъ = *to send . . . registered.*

The predicative instrumental is used after the following verbs :

дѣлаться } = *to become*  
становиться }

называться = *to be called*

звать = *to call*

меня зовутъ Иваномъ = *they call me Ivan, i. e. my name is Ivan*

служить = *to serve as*

это служило мнѣ предлогомъ = *this served me as an excuse*

считаться = *to be considered*

это считается хорошимъ жалованіемъ = *that is considered good pay*

это считается невѣжливымъ = *that is considered rude*

слыть = *to have the reputation*

родиться = *to be born*

казаться = *to seem*

дѣло казалось серьезнымъ = *the matter seemed serious*

притворяться = *to pretend to be.*

The instrumental is used after the following prepositions:

за = *behind, for (to get something)*

за границей = *abroad (lit. = beyond the frontier)*

за столомъ = *at table*

за обѣдомъ = *at dinner*

за-городомъ = *out of town*

я пришёлъ за деньгами = *I have come for the money*

надо послать за докторомъ = *(we) must send for the doctor*

зачѣмъ? = *why?* (sc. *with what object?*)

за тѣмъ чтобы + inf. = *in order to . . .*

затѣмъ = *after that, then.*

It is always used of a woman being married (cf. за + acc., § 83):

она замужемъ = *she is married*

за кѣмъ она замужемъ? = *to whom is she married?*

между = *between* (also but less often with gen.)

между Петроградомъ и Москвой = *between Petrograd and Moscow*

между нами = *between us* (both of concrete objects and of emotions), *amongst us*

между прочимъ = *amongst other things.*

Notice the idioms:

между тѣмъ = *meanwhile, cependant.*

надъ (надо before certain groups of consonants) = *above*

надъ головой = *above (my) head*

надо мной = *above me (only literally)*

пéредь (передо before certain groups of consonants) = *before, in front of*

пéредь дóмомъ = *in front of the house*

пéредо мнóй = *in front of me*

пéредь éтимъ = *before this (temporal)*

пéредь обéдомъ = *before dinner*

пéредь тѣмъ какъ + inf. = *before + verb (e. g. going).*

подь (подо before certain groups of consonants) = *under, near*

подь землѣй = *underground*

подо мнóй = *under me*

подь éтимъ услóвiемъ = *on this condition*

\*подь какýmъ предлóгомъ? = *under what pretext?*

подь Москвóй = *near Moscow*

подь Лóндономъ = *near London.*

съ (со before certain groups of consonants) = *with*

со мнóй = *with me*

съ больш́имъ удовóльствiемъ = *with great pleasure*

съ наслаждéниемъ = *with relish*

съ трудóмъ = *with difficulty*

со врéменемъ = *in course of time*

съ кѣмъ вы говор́или? = *with whom were you talking?*

съ какóй цѣлью? = *with what object?*

съ Бóгомъ! = *good-bye! (lit. with God)*

Бóгъ съ н́ими! = *never mind them! (lit. God be with them).*

§ 85. The Locative is only used with prepositions, hence it is sometimes called the prepositional case.

The locative is used with the following prepositions:—

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *in*

въ Москвѣ = *in Moscow*

во мнѣ = *in me*

во Фрáнции = *in France*

въ Крымѣ = *in the Crimea (cf. § 39, Obs. 7)*

въ концѣ = *at the end*

въ началѣ = *at the beginning*

во снѣ = *in one's sleep or dreams.*

## Notice the idioms :

- ВЪ КОНЦѢ-КОНЦОВЪ = *at long last, finally*  
 ВЪ САМОМЪ ДѢЛѢ = *in very fact.*

## In certain expressions of time :

- ВЪ СЛѢДУЮЩЕМЪ ГОДУ = *the following year*  
 ВЪ ТАКОМЪ-ТО ГОДУ = *such and such a year*  
 ВЪ ПЕРВОМЪ ЧАСУ = *between 12 and 1*  
 ВО ВТОРОМЪ ЧАСУ = *between 1 and 2.*

## For other similar expressions, cf. § 68.

- ВТАЙНѢ = *secretly*  
 ВПОСЛѢДСТВІИ = *subsequently*  
 ВОПОНѢ = *completely, thoroughly.*

на = *on*

- НА СТОЛѢ = *on the table*  
 НА БЕРЕГУ МОРЯ = *on the sea-shore, at the seaside*  
 НА БОКУ = *on (one's) side*  
 НА СОЛНЦѢ = *in the sun*  
 НА ДВОРѢ = *in the yard*

(this is the commonest way of saying out of doors)

- НА ЛЬДУ = *on the ice* (fr. ЛѢДЪ)  
 НА МОСТУ = *on the bridge*  
 НА СЛУЖБѢ = *in service* (sc. *Government service*)  
 НА НЕБѢ = *in heaven, in the sky*  
 НА СВѢЖЕМЪ ВОЗДУХѢ = *in the fresh air*  
 НА СВѢТѢ = *in the world*  
 НА СВОБОДѢ = *at liberty.*

## Notice the idioms :

- НА СВОЕМЪ ВѢКУ = *in one's time, in one's life*  
 НАЯВУ = *in reality* (as opposed to *in one's sleep*)  
 НА ЛОШАДАХЪ = *by carriage, driving* (lit. = *on horses*)  
 НА-ЕДИНѢ = *alone, in solitude.*

It is used of men marrying, after the verb жениться = *to marry* :

- ОНЪ ЖЕНИЛСЯ НА РУССКОЙ = *he married a Russian*  
 НА КОМУ ОНЪ ЖЕНАТЬ? = *to whom is he married?*



Notice the compound adverb:

накану́нѣ = *on the eve.*

о (обѣ before vowels and often before consonants also; обо before certain groups of consonants) = *concerning*

обо мнѣ = *about me*

о оу обѣ чѣмъ вы говорѣли? = *what were you talking about?*

обо всёмъ = *about everything.*

In certain expressions of number:

о двухъ концѣхъ = *with two ends.*

по = *after*

по приѣздѣ = *on or after arrival*

по нашемъ возвращеніи = *on our return.*

Notice the idioms:

скупать по роди́нѣ = *to be home-sick (for one's country)*

по чѣмъ? = *at what price?*

по чѣмъ аршинъ? = *how much a yard? cf. § 69.*

при = *in the presence of, in the time of, near*

при мнѣ = *in my presence, in my time, by me, near me, on me*

при дворѣ = *at court*

при Екатерѣнѣ Вели́кой = *in the time of Catherine the Great*

при битвѣ подѣ Лѣйпцигомъ = *at the battle of (lit. near, under) Leipzig.*

Notice the idioms:

при чѣмъ = *in addition to which, besides which*

при томъ = *besides that*

при всёмъ томъ = *in addition to all that, in spite of all that*

при всёмъ моёмъ стараніи = *in spite of all my efforts.*

## THE VERB

§ 86. The Russian verb consists of the following parts:

Present	}	Active
Past		
Future		
Conditional		
—		
Imperative		
—		
Infinitive		
—		
Present Gerund		
Past Gerund	}	Passive
—		
Present Participle		
Past Participle		
Present Participle	}	Passive
Past Participle		

The present is the only tense which has personal endings. The past is a tense only in name; in reality it is a participle whose endings vary not according to person, but according to number and gender. The future in form is exactly the same as the present. The conditional in form is exactly the same as the past. There is no subjunctive. There is no passive of any part of the verb except the participles, and if anything is expressed in the passive, it must be done by means of participles or of the reflexive verb (cf. § 110).

## Use of the Personal Pronouns with the Verb.

The personal pronouns:

Я	= I
ТЫ	= thou
ОНЪ, ОНА, ОНО	= he, she, it
МЫ	= we
ВЫ	= you
ОНИ (M. N.), ОНѢ (F.)	= they

are used in Russian with the verbs very much as in English; in certain cases they are, however, omitted altogether, e. g. when the verb is used, as it frequently is, in an answer in reply to a question instead of да (= *yes*) or нѣтъ (= *no*), e. g.:

Question: бѣли-ли вы у нихъ вчера? = *did you go to see them yesterday?* (lit. *were you at their house?*)

Answer: бѣлъ = *I did* (lit. *I was*)

Question: будете-ли вы у него сегодня? = *will you go to see him to-day?*

Answer: буду = *I shall*

Question: можете-ли вы сдѣлать это для меня? = *can you do this for me?*

Answer: могу = *I can*.

The pronoun онó is comparatively rarely used; its place is often taken by это, e. g.

это было очень давно = *it was a very long time ago*

or it is omitted altogether, e. g.

теплó сегодня = *it is warm to-day*.

When it is used it often acquires the meaning "of the thing we were referring to or what you were talking about, e. g.

онó, конечно, неприятно = *(a thing like) that (sc. which we were discussing) is, of course, unpleasant*.

## § 87.

## The Present.

### REGULAR VERBS.

In Old Bulgarian the verbs are divided into five classes, and for etymological purposes Russian verbs can be similarly treated. For practical purposes, however, it is best to divide the verbs into only two classes, not according to the infinitive, but according to the endings of the present. The few irregular verbs which there are, which in Old Bulgarian form the fifth class, are in Russian not sufficiently numerous to form a class by themselves, but as they are very important they are given in full in a separate paragraph. For the regular verbs there are two sets of personal endings, which are added to the verb-stem sometimes directly,

sometimes with a vowel (-а-, -я-, -ѣ-, -у-, -ю-) or a consonant (-и-) inserted between stem and ending.

The first difficulty to be faced is the fact that though every present may be put in one class or the other, the infinitives are much more difficult to classify, because verbs having various infinitive endings have identical present endings, and others having identical infinitive endings have different present endings. In the lists of verbs given they are arranged alphabetically according to the last letter of the present stem as seen in the 3rd pers. plur., those ending in consonants + *y* first, those ending in vowels + *ю* later.

Another difficulty is that the palatal qualities of the vowels in the personal endings have in many cases affected the last consonant of the stem, so that the present stem differs from the infinitive stem. The present endings of the two main classes of Russian verbs are the following :

	I.	II.
Sing.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ -у (or -ю)} \\ 2 \text{ -ешь}^1 \\ 3 \text{ -еть} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-ю (or -у)} \\ \text{-ишь} \\ \text{-ишь} \end{array} \right.$
Plur.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ -емъ} \\ 2 \text{ -ете} \\ 3 \text{ -уть (or -ють)} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-имъ} \\ \text{-ите} \\ \text{-ять (or -атъ)}^2 \end{array} \right.$

Class I comprises all the verbs contained in the first three classes in Old Bulgarian; in that language the endings of class I were 2nd sing. -ЕШИ, 3rd sing. -ЕТЬК (-*efi*, -*et*, cf. § 36), &c., of class II -НЕСИ, -НЕТЬК (-*nefi*, -*net*), of class III -ЈЕСИ, -ЈЕТЬК (-*jesi*, -*jet*); in Russian these appear respectively as -*jes*, -*jet*, -*njes*, -*njet*, and -*jes*, -*jet*, i.e. the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. all begin with -*je* (pron. -*ye*). Of the verbs which originally belonged to class I, those whose stems end in *r* or *k* change these letters to *ж* and *ч* before the palatal vowels of the endings -*ef*, -*jes*, &c., but retain the *r* and *k* before the *y* of the 1st sing. and 3rd plur. The

<sup>1</sup> When the accent falls on the personal ending the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. of class I are pronounced: -*ешь* (cf. § 14), -*еть*, -*емъ*, -*ете*.

<sup>2</sup> When unaccented these endings (3rd plur. of class II) are generally pronounced -*ють* (or -*уть*).

stems of the verbs which insert -н- between the stem and the personal ending undergo no change. Of the verbs which originally belonged to class III, those whose stems end in vowels take the endings -ю, -ешь, -еть, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ, those whose stems end in consonants changed them (except in the case of those in -л and of a few in -р) before the palatal vowels of the personal endings -ју, -ješ, &c., in such a way as to absorb the *y*-sound contained in them, viz. final к, т of a stem becomes ч, or ш, final г, д, з become ж, and final с and х become ш, the personal endings appearing as -чу, -чешь, -жу, -жешь, -шу, -шешь, and -щю, -щешь.

In class II the first person singular is often disguised as -у (i.e. apparently the same as in class I); the reason is that the -ю of the 1st sing. changes final к and т of the stem into ч or ш, final г, д, and з into ж, and final с and х into ш. It also becomes у when the stem itself ends in ч, ж, or ш. Similarly the -я of the 3rd plur. becomes а when the stem ends in ч, ж, or ш. In class II those stems which end in н, б, в, and м insert л before the -ю of the 1st sing.

Another difficulty which the beginner has to face is that of the prepositions in composition with the verbs. Verbs compounded with a preposition (i. e. preceded by it) are infinitely more numerous than those without, and this fact makes the beginner think at first sight that the language possesses an infinitely larger number of verbs than it really does. When reading Russian the beginner should always try and see the root or stem of each verb and cut off the preposition or prepositions which precede it. For this purpose it is important to learn the prepositions given in §§ 79-85, and also to compare them with those given in dealing with prepositions in composition with verbs. As the prepositions always have an especial effect on the meaning of each verb, only simple verbs have been given in the following lists, the alteration in meaning effected by the various prepositions being discussed later. Many of the verbs given in these lists are extremely uncommon, others not used in their simple form; the student should not attempt to learn the lists, but only use them for reference. The list of the verbs under class I contains all the difficult primary verbs which belong to this class; otherwise the lists given are very far from being exhaustive; they are merely intended to be representative. The verbs are arranged alpha-

betically according to the last letter of the present stem, those ending in a consonant + y first, those ending in a consonant + ю next, and lastly those ending in a vowel + ю. Only the 1st and 2nd persons sing. and the infinitive are given. In class I, whenever the 1st sing. ends in -y the 3rd pl. ends in -утъ, when the 1st sing. ends in -ю the 3rd pl. ends in -ютъ. In both classes, on whichever syllable the accent is in the 2nd sing., that syllable retains it throughout. Those verbs preceded by a hyphen are only used in composition, and examples of them compounded with prepositions are given below. All those verbs marked with F are perfective and their presents always have future meaning, cf. § 101:

## § 88.

## CLASS I.

Examples of presents :

(Inf. мочь)

могú = *I can*

можешь

можетъ

можемъ

можете

могутъ

(Inf. идти<sup>1</sup>)

идú = *I am going (sc. on foot)*

идёшь

идётъ

идёмъ

идёте

идутъ

(Inf. тянуть)

тянú = *I am pulling*

тянешь

тянетъ

тянемъ

тянете

тянутъ

(Inf. брать)

берú = *I take, I am taking*

берёшь

берётъ

берёмъ

берёте

берутъ

(Inf. писать)

пишú = *I write, I am writing*

пишешь

пишетъ

пишемъ

пишете

пишутъ

(Inf. слать)

шлю<sup>2</sup> = *I am sending*

шлешь

шлётъ

шлёмъ

шлёте

шлютъ

<sup>1</sup> Also spelt идти.

<sup>2</sup> In the case of this verb the palatal quality of the personal endings has affected the c of the stem through the л.

(Inf. дѣлать)	(Inf. пить)
дѣлаю = <i>I do, I am doing</i>	пью = <i>I drink, I am drinking</i>
дѣлаешь	пьёшь
дѣлаетъ	пьётъ
дѣлаемъ	пьёмъ
дѣлаете	пьёте
дѣлаютъ	пьютъ

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs and others:

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
-б +			
гребѹ	гребёшь	гребѣти	<i>row</i>
скребѹ	скребёшь	скребѣти	<i>scrape</i>
-шибѹ <sup>1</sup>	-шибёшь F	-шибѣти	<i>(hit)</i>
-в +			
ревѹ	ревёшь	ревѣть	<i>roar</i>
живѹ	живёшь	жить	<i>live</i>
зовѹ	зовёшь	звать	<i>call</i>
рвѹ	рвёшь	рвать	<i>tear</i>
плывѹ	плывёшь	плыть	<i>float</i>
слывѹ	слывёшь	слыть	<i>be renowned as</i>
-г + [ж = г + (j)e]			
берегѹ	бережёшь	беречь	<i>keep</i>
стерегѹ	стережёшь	стеречь	<i>guard</i>
жгѹ	жжёшь <sup>2</sup>	жечь	<i>burn (trans.)</i>
стригѹ	стрижёшь	стричь	<i>shear</i>
лгѹ	лжжёшь	лгать	<i>perjurate</i>
могѹ	можёшь	мочь	<i>be able</i>
бѣгѹ (cf. § 89)	—	бѣжать	<i>run</i>
лѣгѹ	лѣжжёшь F	лечь	<i>lie down</i>
-пригѹ <sup>3</sup>	-пряжжёшь F	-прячь	<i>(harness)</i>
д +			
кладѹ	кладёшь	класть	<i>put</i>
падѹ	падёшь F	пасть	<i>fall</i>

<sup>1</sup> e.g. ушибѣти = *to bruise*.

<sup>3</sup> e.g. запрячь = *to harness*.

<sup>2</sup> От жжёшь.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
крадѹ	крадѣшь	красть	<i>steal</i>
ведѹ	ведѣшь	вестіи	<i>lead</i>
бредѹ	бредѣшь	брестіи	<i>wander</i>
ждѹ	ждѣшь	ждать	<i>(a)wait</i>
идѹ	идѣшь	идти	<i>go (sc. on foot)</i>
бѹду	бѹдешь	быть	<i>be</i>
блюдѹ	блюдѣшь	блюстіи	<i>watch</i>
ѣдѹ (cf. § 89)	ѣдешь	ѣхать	<i>ride, drive</i>
прядѹ	прядѣшь	прясть	<i>spin</i>
сѣдѹ	сѣдешь F	сѣсть	<i>sit down</i>
ж +			
(= г, д, з + -ju)		(= г, д, з + -je)	
-кажѹ <sup>1</sup>	-кажешь F	-казать	<i>(show)</i>
мажѹ	мажешь	мазать	<i>smear</i>
брызжѹ <sup>2</sup>	брызжешь	брызгать	<i>splash</i>
лижѹ	лижешь	лизать	<i>lick</i>
гложѹ	гложешь	глотать	<i>gnaw</i>
ржѹ	ржешь	ржать	<i>neigh</i>
рѣжѹ	рѣжешь	рѣзать	<i>cut</i>
вяжѹ	вяжешь	вязать	<i>bind, knit</i>
з +			
везѹ	везешь	везти	<i>convey</i>
ползѹ	ползешь	ползти	<i>crawl</i>
грызѹ	грызешь	грызть	<i>gnaw</i>
лѣзѹ	лѣзешь	лѣзть	<i>clamber</i>
к +			
(ч = к + (j)e)			
влекѹ	влечешь	влечь	<i>draw</i>
пекѹ	печешь	печь	<i>bake</i>
текѹ	течешь	течь	<i>flow</i>
толкѹ	толчешь	толочь	<i>knock</i>
волоку <sup>3</sup>	волочешь	волочь	<i>drag</i>
тку	тчешь <sup>4</sup>	ткать	<i>weave</i>
сѣкѹ	сѣчешь	сѣчь	<i>cut, flog</i>

<sup>1</sup> e.g. сказати = *to say*, показати = *to show*, but the reflexive казаться = *to seem* is used in the simple form.

<sup>2</sup> Also брызгаю, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Also волочѹ, волочишь, волочить (class II).

<sup>4</sup> От ткѣшь.



<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
м +			
жму	жмёшь	жать	<i>squeeze</i>
-ниму <sup>1</sup>	-ни́мешь	F } F } F }	-нять } ( <i>take</i> )
-нму <sup>2</sup>	-ни́мешь		
-ьму <sup>3</sup>	-ьмёшь		
н +			
стану	станёшь	стать	<i>become, begin</i> (intrans.)
гну	гнёшь	гнуть	<i>bend</i>
жну	жнёшь	жать	<i>reap</i>
мну	мнёшь	мять	<i>crush</i>
стону	стонёшь	стонать <sup>4</sup>	<i>groan</i>
-нну <sup>5</sup>	-ннёшь	-нять	( <i>stretch</i> )
-чну <sup>6</sup>	-чнёшь	-чать	( <i>begin</i> )
дѣну	дѣнёшь	дѣть	<i>put</i>
клянѹ	клянёшь	клясть	<i>curse</i>
тяну	тянёшь	тянуть	<i>pull</i>

## Verbs connoting a gradual process :

мёрзну	мёрзнешь	мёрзнуть	<i>be frozen</i>
мокну	мокнуешь	мокнуть	<i>be soaked</i>
гасну	гаснешь	гаснуть	<i>die down</i>
кисну	киснешь	киснуть	<i>grow sour</i>
тихну	тихнешь	тихнуть	<i>grow quiet</i>
сохну	сохнешь	сохнуть	<i>grow dry</i>
тонѹ	тонеешь	тонѹть	<i>drown</i> (intrans.)
стыну	стынешь	стынуть	<i>grow cold</i>

## Verbs connoting a single action :

двину	двинешь	F	двинуть	<i>move</i> (trans.)
кину	кинешь	F	кинуть	<i>throw</i>
крикну	крикнешь	F	крикнуть	<i>cry out</i>
тронѹ	тронеешь	F	тронѹть	<i>touch</i>
шепнѹ	шепнёшь	F	шепнѹть	<i>whisper</i>

<sup>1</sup> e.g. обнимѹ, обни́мешь, объять = *to embrace*.снимѹ, снй́мешь, снять = *to take off, to photograph*.<sup>2</sup> e.g. примѹ, прй́мешь, прй́ять = *to accept*.<sup>3</sup> e.g. возьмѹ, возьмёшь, взять = *to take*.<sup>4</sup> Also has present стонаю, стона́ешь.<sup>5</sup> e.g. распя́ть = *to crucify*.<sup>6</sup> e.g. нача́ть = *to begin* (trans.).

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
р +			
вру	врѣшь	врать	<i>prevaricate</i>
беру́	берѣшь	брать	<i>take</i>
деру́	дерѣшь	драть	<i>tear</i>
жру́	жрѣшь	жрать	<i>devour</i>
-мру <sup>1</sup>	-мрѣшь F	-мерѣть	( <i>die</i> )
-пру <sup>2</sup>	-прѣшь F	-перѣть	( <i>press</i> )
тру	трѣшь	терѣть	<i>rub</i>
-стру <sup>3</sup>	-стрѣшь F	-стерѣть	( <i>stretch</i> )
с +			
пасу́	пасѣшь	пасті́	<i>pasture</i>
несу́	несѣшь	нести́	<i>carry</i>
трясу́	трясѣшь	трясті́	<i>shake (trans.)</i>
т +			
плету́	плетѣшь	плести́	<i>plait</i>
мету́	метѣшь	мести́	<i>sweep</i>
гнету́	гнетѣшь	гнести́	<i>press, oppress</i>
расту́ <sup>4</sup>	растѣшь	расті́	<i>grow (intrans.)</i>
-чту <sup>5</sup>	-чтѣшь F	-честъ	( <i>read</i> )
цвѣту́	цвѣтѣшь	цвѣсті́	<i>blossom</i>
-рѣту́ <sup>6</sup>	-рѣтѣшь F	-рѣсті́	( <i>obtain</i> )
ч + (= к, т + -ju) (= к, т + -je-)			
плачу́	плачѣшь	плакати́	<i>weep</i>
мечу́	мѣчѣшь	метати́	<i>fling</i>
хочу́ (cf. § 89)	хѣчѣшь	хотѣть	<i>wish</i>
хохочу́	хохѣчѣшь	хохотати́	<i>laugh loud</i>
шепчу́	шепѣчѣшь	шептати́	<i>whisper</i>
топчу́	топѣчѣшь	топтати́	<i>trud (trans.)</i>
прячу́	прѣчѣшь	прѣтати́	<i>hide (trans.)</i>
ш + (= с, х + -ju) (= с, х + -je-)			
машу́ <sup>7</sup>	машѣшь	махати́	<i>wave</i>
пашу́	пашѣшь	пахати́	<i>plough</i>
чесу́ <sup>8</sup>	чѣшѣшь	чесати́	<i>comb</i>

<sup>1</sup> e. g. умерѣть = *to die*.<sup>3</sup> e. g. простерѣть = *to extend*.<sup>5</sup> e. g. прочѣсть = *to read through*.<sup>7</sup> Also has махаю, махаешь.<sup>8</sup> Cf. the impersonal reflexive чѣшется = *it itches*.<sup>2</sup> e. g. заперѣть = *to close*.<sup>4</sup> Also spelt расту́, растѣшь, &c.<sup>6</sup> e. g. приобрѣсті́ = *to obtain*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
пишú	пи́шешь	писа́ть	<i>write</i>
пляшú	пля́шешь	писа́ть	<i>dance</i>
щ + (= ск + -жу and т + -жу)	(= ск + -же- and т + -же-)		
трепещú	трепéщешь	трепетáть	<i>tremble</i>
ищú	и́щешь	иска́ть	<i>look for</i>
ропщú	ро́пщешь	ропта́ть	<i>murmur</i>
л +			
колеблú	колеблéшь	колеба́ть	<i>rock</i>
мелú (cf. § 89)	мелéшь	молóть	<i>grind (corn)</i>
стелú	стелéшь	стлáть	<i>spread</i>
внемлú <sup>1</sup>	внемлéшь	внима́ть	<i>heed</i>
дремлú	дремлéшь	дрема́ть	<i>slumber</i>
колú	колéшь	колóть	<i>pierce</i>
полú	полéшь	полóть	<i>rake</i>
сыплú	сыплéшь	сыпáть	<i>scatter</i>
шлú (cf. p. 150)	шлéшь	слáть	<i>send</i>
р +			
борюсь (cf. § 100)	бóрешься	борóться	<i>struggle</i>
порú	пóрешь	порóть	<i>unstitch</i>
а +			
даю	даёшь	дава́ть	<i>give</i>
лаю	лаёшь	ла́ять	<i>bark</i>
дѣлаю	дѣлаёшь	дѣлáть	<i>do, make</i>
знаю	знаёшь	зна́ть	<i>know</i>
-знаю <sup>2</sup>	-знаёшь	-знава́ть	<i>(recognize)</i>
играю	играёшь	игра́ть	<i>play</i>
таю	таёшь	та́ять	<i>thaw melt</i>
читаю	читаёшь	чита́ть	<i>read</i>
-стаю <sup>3</sup>	-стаёшь	-става́ть	<i>(become)</i>
-лучаю <sup>4</sup>	-лучаёшь	-лучáть	<i>(receive)</i>

and very many others.

<sup>1</sup> Also has present внимаю, &c.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. узнава́ть = *to recognize*.

<sup>3</sup> e.g. устава́ть = *to grow tired*, and numerous other compounds.

<sup>4</sup> e.g. получа́ть = *to receive*.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
i +			
гнѳю	гнѳѳшь	гнѳть	<i>rot</i>
вопѳю	вопѳѳшь	вопѳять <sup>1</sup>	<i>wail</i>
o +			
вою	воѳешь	выть	<i>howl</i>
мою	моѳешь	мыть	<i>wash (trans.)</i>
ною	ноѳешь	ныть	<i>ache</i>
пою	поѳешь	пѳть	<i>sing</i>
рѳю	рѳѳшь	рыть	<i>dig</i>
крою	кроѳешь	крыть	<i>cover</i>
y +			
торгѳю	торгѳѳшь	торговѳть	<i>trade</i>
жѳю	жѳѳшь	жеватѳь	<i>chew</i>
кую	куѳешь	ковѳть	<i>forg</i>
снѳю	снѳѳшь	сновѳть	<i>weave</i>
сѳю	сѳѳшь	совѳть	<i>poke</i>
совѳтѳю	совѳтѳѳшь	совѳтовѳть	<i>advise</i>
танцѳю	танцѳѳшь	танцовѳть	<i>dance</i>
чѳю	чѳѳшь	чѳять	<i>scent</i>
ночѳю	ночѳѳшь	ночевѳть	<i>pass the night</i>
пѳтѳю	пѳтѳѳшь	пѳтчевѳть	<i>treat</i>

and many others, including those formed from non-Russian words (of which the infinitive usually ends in -прѳвать), e.g.

апплодѳрю	апплодѳрѳешь	апплодѳровать	<i>applaud</i>
формѳрю	формѳрѳешь	формѳровѳть	<i>form</i>

ь +			
бѳю	бѳѳшь	бпѳть	<i>hit</i>
вѳю	вѳѳшь	впѳть	<i>wind</i>
лѳю	лѳѳшь	лпѳть	<i>pour</i>
пѳю	пѳѳшь	ппѳть	<i>drink</i>
шѳю	шѳѳшь	шпѳть	<i>sew</i>

ѳ +			
вѳю	вѳѳшь	вѳять	<i>waft</i>
-дѳюсь <sup>2</sup> (cf. § 100)	-дѳѳшься	-дѳяться	<i>(hope)</i>

<sup>1</sup> Has alternative form вопѳю, вопѳшь, вопѳть (class II).

<sup>2</sup> надѳюсь, надѳѳешься, надѳяться = *to hope*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
бѣлѣю	бѣлѣешь	бѣлѣть	<i>show white</i>
имѣю	имѣешь	имѣть	<i>have, possess</i>
смѣю	смѣешь	смѣть	<i>dare</i>
смѣюсь (cf. § 100)	смѣёшься	смѣяться	<i>laugh</i>
умѣю	умѣешь	умѣть	<i>know how to</i>
спѣю <sup>1</sup>	спѣешь	спѣть	<i>ripen</i>
старѣю	старѣешь	старѣть	<i>grow old</i>
брѣю <sup>2</sup>	брѣешь	брить	<i>shave</i>
грѣю	грѣешь	грѣть	<i>warm</i>
зрѣю <sup>3</sup>	зрѣешь	зрѣть	<i>ripen</i>
сѣю	сѣешь	сѣять	<i>sow</i>
-тѣю <sup>4</sup>	-тѣешь F	-тѣять	<i>(plan)</i>
ю †			
блюю	блюёшь	блевать	<i>vomit</i>
клюю	клюёшь	клевать	<i>peck</i>
плюю	плюёшь	плевать	<i>spit</i>
воюю	воюешь	воевать	<i>make war</i>
горюю	горюешь	горевать	<i>mourn</i>
я †			
ваяю	ваяешь	ваять	<i>sculpt</i>
гуляю	гуляешь	гулять	<i>walk</i>
-виняюсь <sup>5</sup> (cf. § 100)	-виняешься	-виняться	<i>(excuse)</i>

## CLASS II.

(Inf. любить)

люблю = *I love*  
 любишь  
 любить  
 любимъ  
 любите  
 любятъ

(Inf. видѣть)

вижу = *I see*  
 видишь  
 видить  
 видимъ  
 видите  
 видятъ

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with спою, спѣть a compound of пѣть.

<sup>2</sup> Also spelt брѣю, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Not to be confused with зрю, зрѣть (class II) = *to see*.

<sup>4</sup> затѣю, &c. = *to plan, contrive*.

<sup>5</sup> извиняться = *to excuse oneself*.

(Inf. лежѣть)

лежѣю = *I lie, am lying*  
 лежѣишь  
 лежѣишь  
 лежѣимъ  
 лежѣите  
 лежѣать

(Inf. спать)

сплю = *I sleep, am sleeping*  
 спишь  
 спите  
 спимъ  
 спите  
 спять

(Inf. говорѣть)

говорю =  $\begin{cases} I \text{ speak, am speaking} \\ I \text{ say, am saying} \end{cases}$   
 говоришь  
 говорятъ  
 говоримъ  
 говорите  
 говорятъ

(Inf. платѣть)

платю = *I pay*  
 платишь<sup>1</sup>  
 платятъ<sup>1</sup>  
 платимъ<sup>1</sup>  
 платите<sup>1</sup>  
 платятъ<sup>1</sup>

(Inf. учѣть)

учю = *I teach*  
 учишь  
 учить  
 учимъ  
 учите  
 учать

(Inf. слышать)

слышу = *I hear*  
 слышишь  
 слышатъ  
 слышимъ  
 слышите  
 слышать

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs and others:

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
б +			
люблю	любишь	любить	<i>love</i>
в +			
ловлю	ловишь	ловить	<i>catch</i>

<sup>1</sup> The accented a in all these five persons is usually pronounced like accented o in the case of this verb.

<i>Present.</i>			<i>Infinitive.</i>
(г + becomes ж)			
(д + becomes ж in 1st pers. sing.)	д +		
ла́жу	ла́дишь	ла́дить	<i>agree</i>
гла́жу	гла́дишь	гла́дить	<i>stroke</i>
ви́жу	ви́дишь	ви́дѣть	<i>see</i>
си́жу	си́дишь	си́дѣть	<i>sit</i>
вожу́	во́дишь	води́ть	<i>lead</i>
хожу́	ходи́шь	ходи́ть	<i>go (sc. on foot)</i>
гожу́сь (cf. § 100)	годи́шься	годи́ться	<i>be of use</i>
горжу́сь ( „ )	гordíшься	гordíться	<i>be proud</i>
гляжу́	гяди́шь	гядѣ́ть	<i>look</i>
ж + (= г +)			
лежу́	лежи́шь	лежа́ть	<i>lie</i>
дро́жу	дро́жишь	дро́жатъ	<i>tremble</i>
держу́	де́ржишь	держáть	<i>keep, hold</i>
—	бѣ́жишь (cf. § 89)	бѣ́жатъ	<i>run</i>
(з + becomes ж in 1st pers. sing.)	з +		
ла́жу	ла́зишь	ла́зить	<i>clamber</i>
вожу́	во́зишь	вози́ть	<i>convey</i>
(к + becomes ч)			
л +			
велю́	вели́шь	велѣ́ть	<i>command</i>
боли́ть	боли́ть (impersonal)	болѣ́ть	<i>ache</i>
молю́сь (cf. § 100)	мо́лишься	моли́ться	<i>pray</i>
м +			
шумлю́	шуми́шь	шумѣ́ть	<i>make a noise</i>
н +			
вино́	вини́шь	вини́ть	<i>blame</i>
гоню́	го́нишь	гнать	<i>chase</i>
п +			
сплю́	спи́шь	спать	<i>sleep</i>
терплю́	те́рпишь	терпѣ́ть	<i>endure</i>
тороплю́сь (cf. § 100)	торо́пишься	торопи́ться	<i>hurry</i>

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
р +			
говори́ю	говори́шь	говори́тъ	<i>speak, say</i>
гори́ю	гори́шь	гори́тъ	<i>burn (intrans.)</i>
смотре́ю	смотре́шь	смотре́тъ	<i>look (at)</i>
кури́ю	кури́шь	кури́тъ	<i>smoke</i>
(с + becomes ш in 1st pers. sing.)	с +		
краси́ю	краси́шь	краси́тъ	<i>paint (sc. walls)</i>
виси́ю	виси́шь	виси́тъ	<i>hang (intrans.)</i>
носи́ю	носи́шь	носи́тъ	<i>wear, carry</i>
(т + becomes ч or щ in 1st pers. sing.)	т +		
плачу́	пла́тишь <sup>1</sup>	пла́тить	<i>pay</i>
лечу́	лети́шь	лети́тъ	<i>fly</i>
верчу́	вѣрти́шь	вѣрти́тъ	<i>turn, twist</i>
блещу́	блести́шь	блести́тъ	<i>shine</i>
—	хоти́мъ, &c. (cf. § 89)	хоти́тъ	<i>wish</i>
пущу́	пу́стишь F	пу́стить	<i>allow, let go</i>
-сѣщу́ <sup>2</sup>	-сѣ́тишь F	-сѣ́тить	<i>(visit)</i>
(х + becomes ш) ч + (= к +)			
кричу́	кричи́шь	крича́тъ	<i>shout</i>
молчу́	молчи́шь	молча́тъ	<i>be silent</i>
учу́ <sup>3</sup>	учи́шь	учи́тъ	<i>teach</i>
ш + (= х +)			
слышу́	слы́шишь	слы́шать	<i>hear</i>
	and very many others.		
о +			
бою́сь (cf. § 100)	бои́шься	боя́ться	<i>fear</i>
стою́	стои́шь	стои́тъ	<i>cost, be worth</i>
стою́	стои́шь	стои́тъ	<i>stand</i>

<sup>1</sup> N.B. The а in all the persons of the present of this verb except the 1st sing. is usually pronounced like accented о.

<sup>2</sup> посѣ́тить = *to visit*.

<sup>3</sup> The reflexive учи́ться = *to learn*.



## § 89. Irregular Verbs.

These are not really irregular at all, but merely the remains of an old conjugation.

3rd sing. есть = *is*  
3rd plur. суть = *are*

are all that is left of the present of the verb БЫТЬ = *to be* (cf. §§ 81, 112).

ѢМЪ = *I eat, I am eating*

(Inf. ѣсть)

Sing.	{	1 ѢМЪ	Plur.	{	1 ѣдѣмъ
		2 ѢШЬ			2 ѣдите
		3 ѢСТЬ			3 ѣдятъ

N.B. For the 2nd sing. and plur. кѹшать is more often used.

ДАМЪ = *I shall give*

(Inf. дать)

Sing.	{	1 ДАМЪ	Plur.	{	1 дадѣмъ
		2 ДАШЬ			2 дадите
		3 ДАСТЬ			3 дадутъ

[ВѢМЪ = *I know*, obsolete except in the phrase БОГЪ ВѢСТЬ = *God knows*, still sometimes used; a part, the imperative sing., still survives in the very common conjunction вѣдь = *for*, equivalent to the French *donc* or *mais voyons*.]

The following two verbs are partly irregular, and as they are very common deserve special attention :

БѢГҪ = *I am running*

(Inf. бѣжѣть)

Sing.	{	1 БѢГҪ
		2 БѢЖИШЬ
		3 БѢЖИТЬ

Plur.	{	1 БѢЖИМЪ
		2 БѢЖИТЕ
		3 БѢГҪҪ

ХОЧҪ = *I want, wish*

(Inf. хотѣть)

ХОЧҪ
ХОЧЕШЬ
ХОЧЕТЬ

ХОТИМЪ
ХОТИТЕ
ХОТѢТЬ

The very common present

Sing.	{	1	ѣду = <i>I am going</i> (sc. on horseback or in any form of conveyance but not on foot)
		2	ѣдешь
		3	ѣдетъ
Plur.	{	1	ѣдемъ
		2	ѣдете
		3	ѣдутъ

has an infinitive ѣхать.

МОЛОТЬ = *to grind*, pres. мелю, мелешь, may also be classed as irregular.

### § 90.

### The Past.

As mentioned on p. 146 the past in Russian is a tense only in name. In reality it is a past participle active which formerly was used with the help of the present of the verb БЫТЬ = *to be*, as a compound perfect tense like the German *ich bin gewesen*. When this present became obsolete the past participle came to be used alone as the past tense and is now not felt to be a participle at all. It is formed from the infinitive, the general rule being to cut off the last two letters (-ТЬ or -ТИ) and substitute :

-ТЬ	for the masc. sing.	} all three persons
-ла	„ fem. sing.	
-ло	„ neut. sing.	
and -ли	„ masc. fem. and neut. plur.	all three persons.

In the singular it must always agree in gender with the subject of the sentence, whatever person it be, except, of course, that the neuter sing. in -ло is only used for the 3rd pers. sing.

The personal pronouns must be prefixed as required, e. g. Я, ТЫ, ОНЪ, ОНА, ОНО for the sing., according to gender, and МЫ, ВЫ, ОНИ, ОНѢ for the plur., but they are often omitted.

There is absolutely no difficulty in forming the past from any verb the infinitive of which ends in

-АТЬ, -ЯТЬ, -ѢТЬ, -ИТЬ, or -ОТЬ.

This includes all the verbs in class II and most of those in class I. The only difficulty is in the accent. This sometimes falls on the ending and sometimes not; it is best learnt by observation and practice.

Examples are given of the pasts of verbs in class II, and of those of class I whose infinitives end as indicated above :

1, 2, 3 <i>Sing.</i>	1, 2, 3 <i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
М. знать } Ф. зна́ла } Н. зна́ло }	зна́ли	знать = <i>know</i>
М. смѣ́ялся } Ф. смѣ́ялась } Н. смѣ́ялось }	смѣ́ялись	смѣ́яться = <i>laugh</i>
М. ви́дѣль } Ф. ви́дѣла } Н. ви́дѣло }	ви́дѣли	ви́дѣть = <i>see</i>
М. мы́ль } Ф. мы́ла } Н. мы́ло }	мы́ли	мы́ть = <i>wash (trans.)</i>
М. пи́ль } Ф. пи́ла } Н. пи́ло }	пи́ли	пи́ть = <i>drink</i>
М. боро́лся } Ф. боро́лась } Н. боро́лось }	боро́лись	боро́ться = <i>struggle</i>

In the case of the verbs of class I, all those of which the infinitive ends in -ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ыть, or -ить are formed in exactly the same way as those just mentioned, e. g. ста́ть, ста́ла, ста́ло, ста́ли; бы́ть, бы́ла, бы́ло, бы́ли; дѣ́ть, дѣ́ла, дѣ́ло, дѣ́ли; жи́ть, жи́ла, жи́ло, жи́ли, from ста́ть, дѣ́ть, бы́ть, and жи́ть. In the case of the others, i. e. of those the stem of which ends in a consonant and the infinitive in -ти, -зти, -зть, -сти, -сть, -еть, -ѣчь, -ечь, -ичь, -очь, -ячь, and those with infinitives in -нуть, the formation of the past is a little more difficult.

One reason is that the infinitive sometimes disguises the end of the stem, and it is to the stem (ending in a consonant) that the endings of the past have to be added, and another is that some of the stems undergo phonetic changes when followed by the -ль of the past. The stem can always be found in the 2nd sing. of the present by cutting off the personal endings -шь or -нешь.

Stems ending in -с, -з, -к, -г, -б, -р lose the -ль of the masculine singular past (those in -р being formed from the infinitive stem, e. g. from *теp-* and not from *тp-*), e. g.

M.	пѣсь	}	песлі́	песті́ = <i>carry</i>
F.	песла́			
N.	песло́			
M.	вѣзь	}	везлі́	везті́ = <i>convey</i>
F.	везла́			
N.	везло́			
M.	тѣкъ	}	текли́	течь = <i>flow</i>
F.	текла́			
N.	текло́			
M.	могъ	}	могли́	мочь = <i>be able</i>
F.	могла́			
N.	могло́			
M.	грѣбъ	}	греблі́	гребті́ = <i>row</i>
F.	гребла́			
N.	гребло́			
M.	тѣрь	}	тѣрли	тѣрѣть = <i>rub</i>
F.	тѣрла			
N.	тѣрло			

Stems ending in -д, -т lose these consonants before all the endings beginning with л, e. g.

M.	вѣль	}	вेलі́	вестві́ = <i>lead</i>
F.	велла́			
N.	велло́			
M.	мѣль	}	мелі́	месті́ = <i>sweep</i>
F.	мелла́			
N.	мелло́			

Of the verbs whose infinitives end in -нуть, the majority form their past in the ordinary way, e. g.<sup>1</sup>

M.	тронуль	}	тронули	тронуть = <i>touch</i>
F.	тронула			
N.	тронуло			

<sup>1</sup> N.B. дв́инуть when compounded with the preposition, воз-, inserts again the г of its stem, viz. *воздв́игнуть* = *to erect*, the past of which is *воздв́игъ, воздв́игла, &c.*; but not when compounded with other prepositions. *Исчѣзнуть* = *to disappear* has both *исчѣзъ* and *исчѣзнулъ*.

but those verbs of this class which have so-called inchoative meaning, i. e. denote a process of any sort, lose the syllable *-нѹ-* and add the terminations direct to the real stem (after stems ending in *-х, -с, -к, -з* the *-тъ* falls off), e.g.<sup>1</sup>

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M.	СОХЪ	СОХЛИ	СОХНУТЬ = <i>become dry</i>
F.	СОХЛА		
N.	СОХЛО		
M.	КИСЪ	КИСЕЛИ	КИСНУТЬ = <i>grow sour</i>
F.	КИСЕЛА		
N.	КИСЕЛО		
M.	МОКЪ	МОКЛИ	МОКНУТЬ = <i>grow wet</i>
F.	МОКЛА		
N.	МОКЛО		
M.	СТЫЛЬ	СТЫЛИ	СТЫНУТЬ = <i>grow cold</i>
F.	СТЫЛА		
N.	СТЫЛО		

The pasts of the following verbs of class I must be mentioned individually, being somewhat unexpected; to them are added those of the irregular verbs:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M.	-ЧЕТЬ	-ЧЛИ	-ЧЕСТЬ = ( <i>read</i> )
F.	-ЧЛА		
N.	-ЧЛО		
M.	СЪТЬ	СЪЛИ	СЪЕСТЬ = <i>sit down</i>
F.	СЪЛА		
N.	СЪЛО		

<sup>1</sup> *ги́бнуть* = *to perish*, has an alternative form *ги́нуть*; the past of the first is either *гибь, гибла, or ги́бнулъ, &c.*, that of the second *ги́нулъ, &c.*, and in compounds, e.g. *поги́бнуть*, only *поги́бь, поги́бла, &c.* Several other verbs of this category have both forms of past, but all have the shorter form as given above.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
М. росъ	}	росли	расти = <i>grow</i>
Ф. росла́			
Н. росло́			
М. клялъ	}	кляли	клясть = <i>curse</i>
Ф. кляла́			
Н. кляло́			
М. лёгъ	}	легли	лечь = <i>lie down</i>
Ф. легла́			
Н. легло́			
М. жёгъ	}	жгли	жечь = <i>burn (trans.)</i>
Ф. жгла́			
Н. жгло́			
М. -шибъ	}	-шибли	-шибить = ( <i>hit</i> )
Ф. -шибла́			
Н. -шибло́			
М. ѣлъ	}	ѣли	ѣсть = <i>eat</i>
Ф. ѣла́			
Н. ѣло́			
М. далъ	}	дали	дать = <i>give</i>
Ф. дала́			
Н. далó			

Notice especially

М. шёлъ	}	шли	идти = <i>go</i>	
Ф. шла́				
Н. шло́				
хотѣть	has	хотѣль	хотѣла	хотѣло
		хотѣли		
бѣжѣть	"	бѣжѣль	бѣжѣла	бѣжѣло
		бѣжѣли		
ѣхать	"	ѣхаль	ѣхала	ѣхало
		ѣхали		
быть	"	быль	была́	было́
		были		
молóть	"	молóль	молóла	молóло
		молóли		

## § 91. The Future.

The future in form is exactly the same as the present, and has no special endings of its own. It is a peculiarity of Russian that the present tenses of all the so-called perfective verbs have future meaning. This will be explained amply in §§ 101, 104.

The future can also be formed by using the form *бúду, бúдешь* = *I shall be, thou wilt be, &c.* (of the verb *быть* = *to be*), together with the infinitive of any of the so-called imperfective verbs. The difference in meaning between these two forms of the future will be explained in § 104.

## § 92. The Conditional.

This is formed by adding the particle *бы* (often contracted to *бъ*) to the past of any verb.

This particle is really a part of the verb *быть* = *to be*, which originally possessed a complete conditional tense, long since quite obsolete. This particle *бы* can be placed before or after the verb, the only rule being that as it is an enclitic it cannot begin a sentence, and therefore if placed before the verb the personal pronoun which is otherwise often omitted must be used. In meaning the conditional can be either past or future, according to the context.

Example:

*хотѣль-бы* = *I should have liked* or *I should like* (inf. *хотѣть* = *to wish*).

The particle can either follow the verb thus:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
M.	хотѣль-бы	хотѣли-бы
F.	хотѣла-бы	
N.	хотѣло-бы	

all of which forms can of course be preceded by the requisite personal pronouns; or it can precede it, in which case the personal pronouns are essential:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
M.	я бы хотѣль	мы } бы хотѣли	
	ты бы хотѣль		вы }
	онъ бы хотѣль		они }

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
F.	{	я бы хотѣла	} бы хотѣли
		ты бы хотѣла	
		она́ бы хотѣла	
N.		онó бы хотѣло	они́ бы хотѣли

### § 93. The Imperative.

The endings of the imperative are :

2nd sing.	-и,	-ь
2nd plur.	-ите,	-ьте

The endings -и, -ите are added to the present stems of all those verbs in class I which end in a consonant and have the accent on the ending of the 1st sing. of the present, e.g.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	
иду́	иди́!	} = go!
	идите́!	
пишу́	пиши́	} = write!
	пишите́	
берегу́	береги́ <sup>1</sup>	} = watch!
	берегите́	

If the accent is not on the ending of the 1st sing., then -ь, -ьте are added, e.g.

бу́ду	будь	} = be!
	бу́дьте	
ся́ду	сядь	} = sit down!
	ся́дьте	
пла́чу	плачь	} = weep!
	пла́чьте	

If, however, the present stem ends in two consonants, then, although the accent be on the root, the endings -и, -ите are added,<sup>2</sup> e.g.

кри́кну	кри́кни	} shout!
	кри́кните	

<sup>1</sup> The very common reflexive береги́сь, береги́тесь = take care!

<sup>2</sup> But N.В. сы́плю, сы́пь, сы́пьте = scatter!  
and  
внѣмлю, внѣмли́, внѣмли́те = heed!



The endings -и, -ите are added to all those present stems which end in a vowel, wherever the accent be, and as a diphthong is formed, the и appears as й, e. g.

дѣлай	}	= <i>do!</i>	пой	}	= <i>sing!</i>
дѣлайте			пойте		
крой	}	= <i>cover!</i>	дай	}	= <i>give!</i>
крóйте			дайте		
	}	= <i>advise!</i>			
			совѣтуй		
		совѣтуйте			

Notice that the imperatives of the five verbs бить, вить, лить, шить, and шить are somewhat different, viz.:

бей	}	= <i>hit!</i>	пей	}	= <i>drink!</i>
бóйте			пóйте		

Similarly the verbs of class II take one or the other pair of endings according to where the accent is on the 1st sing. of the present. In the case of these verbs it is important to remember that the stem is to be found in the 2nd sing. of the present, and not always in the 1st, e. g.

спи	}	= <i>sleep!</i>			
спíte					
сиди	}	= <i>sit!</i> (i. e. <i>don't get up</i> )			
сидíte					
слышь	}	= <i>hear!</i>			
слышьте					
брось	}	= <i>throw!</i> (sc. <i>give over!</i> )			
бросьте					

The following imperatives are irregular:

from лягу ляжешь, inf. лечь

imper.	лягь	}	= <i>lie down!</i>
	лягте		

from ѣмь ѣшь, inf. ѣсть (кúшай(те) = *partake!* is more often used)

imper.	ѣшь	}	= <i>eat!</i>
	ѣшьте		

from ѣду ѣдешь, inf. ѣхать

imper.	поѣзжай	}	= <i>start! go! drive!</i>
	поѣзжайте		

N.B. An anomalous 1st plur. of the imperative is often formed colloquially by adding the ending *-те* on to the 1st plur. of the present, e. g.

(по)идѣте = *let us go!*

поговорѣте = *let's have a little chat!*

though as a rule the 1st plur. of the present is used alone to express *let us*.

The 3rd sing. and 3rd plur. of the imperative is expressed by using the word *пускай* (= 2nd sing. imperat. from *пускать* = *to let*) or *пусть* (= 2nd sing. imperat. from *пустить* = *to let*), followed by the *perfective* present, e. g.

пускай придѣтъ = *let him come*

пускай стоѣтъ = *let them stand*

пусть скажетъ = *let him tell.*

For the use of the imperative in conditional clauses cf. § 106.

#### § 94.

#### The Infinitive.

The infinitive ends in *-ть*, *-чь*, *-ти*, or *-чи*, preceded by various vowels and consonants; when the accent rests on the infinitive ending itself (which it does in a small minority of all the Russian verbs) then the ending is *-ти* (*-чи*), otherwise it is *-ть* (*-чь*).

As examples of all possible varieties of infinitives have been given in § 87, it is unnecessary to repeat them here.

#### § 95.

#### The Gerund.

The present gerund is in most cases formed from the third person plural of the present by cutting off the last three letters, viz. *-ють*, *-уть*, or *-ятъ* and adding *-я*, e. g.

неся́ = *carrying* from несу́тъ

чита́я = *reading* „ читаю́тъ

говоря́ = *speaking* „ говоря́тъ

сидя́ = *sitting* „ сидя́тъ

стоя́ = *standing* „ стоя́тъ

глядя́ = *looking* „ глядя́тъ. 2

The following are formed somewhat irregularly:

дава́я = *giving* from даю́тъ

-знава́я = *recognizing* „ -знаю́тъ

-ставя́я = *standing* „ -стаю́тъ.

N.B. The present gerund from хотѣтъ = *they wish* has acquired the meaning *although* and is almost always used as a conjunction in this sense.

When the 3rd plural of the present ends in -уть or -ать preceded by ж, ч, ш, or щ then the present gerund ends not in -я, but in -а, e. g.

пла́ча = <i>weeping</i>	from	пла́чутъ
и́щя = <i>seeking</i>	„	и́щутъ
мо́лча = <i>being silent</i> <sup>1</sup>	„	мо́лчатъ
ле́жа = <i>lying down</i>	„	лежа́тъ

There is another form of the present gerund which is formed by cutting off the last two letters of the 3rd pl. present (-тъ) and adding -чи. This form is very commonly used by the peasants and in popular poetry, but in literature only a few verbs have it; from the verb быть = *to be*, it is, however, the only form of the gerund ever used, viz.:

бѹдучи, from бѹдутъ.

The past gerund is formed from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense' by cutting off -лъ and adding -въ or -вши, e. g.

бывъ	from	былъ
чита́въ ог }	„	чита́лъ
чита́вши }	„	„
ѣвши	„	ѣлъ.

Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -ши, e. g.

ле́гши from ле́гъ  
не́сши „ не́съ.

Those pasts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -ши, e. g.

ве́дши from ве́лъ (inf. ве́стї).

Notice especially:

ше́дши from ше́лъ (inf. итї).

<sup>1</sup> Used adverbially = *in silence*.

## § 96.

## The Participles.

The present participle active is formed, like the present gerund, from the 3rd plural of the present tense by cutting off the last two letters -тъ and adding -щій, -шая, -шее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій, хоро́шая, хоро́шее, q. v.

E. g. from лю́бятъ (inf. лю́бить), pres. part. act. лю́бящій = *loving*  
from веду́тъ (inf. вести́), pres. part. веду́щій = *leading* (sc. to)

from зна́ютъ (inf. знать), pres. part. зна́ющій = *knowing* (sc. who knows).

It must be noticed that the participle, present in form, of the verb б́уду = *I shall be*, viz. б́удущій, has imperfective future meaning, and commonly means *next*, or *the next*; the neuter б́удущее is used substantivally = *the future*.

§ 97. The past participle active is formed, like the past gerund, from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense', by cutting off -лъ and adding -вшій, -шая, -шее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій.

E. g. from любі́лъ (inf. лю́бить), past part. любі́вшій, &c. = *having loved*

from ѣлъ (inf. ѣсть), past part. ѣвшій, &c. = *having eaten*

from былъ (inf. быть), past part. бывші́й which is always used to express *former* or *late* (though, N.B., not *the late*, which is покойный). Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -шій, -шая, -шее.

E. g. from у́меръ (inf. умре́ть), past part. у́мерші́й, &c. = *having died, dead*.

Those parts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -шій, &c.

E. g. from ве́лъ (inf. вести́), past part. ве́дші́й, &c. = *having led*

from ше́лъ (inf. итти́), past part. ше́дші́й, &c. = *having gone*

from па́лъ (inf. пасть) there are two forms: па́дші́й and па́вшій = *having fallen*.

§ 98. The present participle passive is formed from the 1st plur. of the present tense, the final -мъ of which is turned into -мый, -мая, -мое, the word thus formed being declined like б́ѣлый; e. g. from чита́емъ (inf. чита́ть), pres. part. pass. чита́емый, &c.; from ви́димъ (inf. ви́дѣть), pres. part. pass. ви́димый, &c.; from лю́бимъ (inf. лю́бить), pres. part. pass. лю́бимый, &c. (= *favourite*).

A few verbs of class I with stems ending in consonants form the present participle passive irregularly in -омый, &c.

E. g. from неcёмъ (inf. неcтѣ), pres. part. pass. неcомый, &c.

from ведёмъ (inf. вестѣ), pres. part. pass. ведомый, &c.

from иcкать = *to seek*, pres. part. pass. иcкомый, &c.

§ 99. The past participle passive is formed from the infinitive in two different ways. One is by cutting off the -ть of the infinitive and adding -нъ, -на, -но for the short or predicative and -(н)ный, -(н)ная, -(н)ное for the long or attributive form, which word is then declined like бѣлый.

E. g. from сдѣлать = *to make*

past part. pass. сдѣланъ, -на, -но; -ны; сдѣланный, &c.

from потерѣть = *to lose*

past part. pass. потѣрянъ, -на, -но; -ны; потѣрянный, &c.

from дать = *to give*

past part. pass. данъ, дана, дано; даны; данный, &c.

from осмотрѣть = *to inspect*

past part. pass. осмотрѣнъ, -на, -но; -ны; осмотрѣнный, &c.

Verbs of Class II with inf. in -ить form the past part. pass. as follows:

from обвинить = *to accuse*

past part. pass. обвинѣнъ, -на, -но; -ны; обвинѣнный, &c.

from ужалить = *to sting*

past part. pass. ужаленъ, -на, -но; -ны; ужаленный

from ранить = *to wound*

past part. pass. раненъ, -на, -но; -ны; раненный

from учить = *to teach*

past part. pass. (short form not used) учѣнный (= *learned, a savant*).

The past participle passive of those verbs of class II, the 1st person sing. of the present of which is affected by the following palatal vowel (cf. § 87), is formed from the 1st person sing. of the present in the following way:

from заплатить = *to pay*

1st sing. pres. заплачу (т + ю = чу)

past part. pass. заплаченный (pronounced заплаченный)

from садить = *to set, plant*

1st sing. pres. сажу (д + ю = жу)

past part. pass. саженный

	from	скосить = <i>to mow</i>
1st sing. pres.		скошú (с + ю = шу)
past part. pass.		скóшенный
	from	купить = <i>to buy</i>
1st sing. pres.		куплю
past part. pass.		кúпленный.

Notice especially :

	from	обидеть = <i>to offend</i>
past part. pass.		оби́женный, &c.

A few verbs of this class which have presents in -шу form their past participles passive with щ.

	E. g. from	обратить = <i>to turn</i>
past part. pass.		обращённый
	from	просвѣтить = <i>to enlighten</i>
past part. pass.		просвѣщённый
	from	посѣтить = <i>to visit</i>
past part. pass.		посѣщённый
	and from	отмстить = <i>to avenge oneself</i>
past part. pass.		отомщённый.

Many verbs of class I whose stems end in a consonant form their past participles passive from the second person sing., cutting off the ending -ешь and adding -ёнъ, &c., for the predicative, -ённый, &c., for the attributive form.

	E. g. from	вести = <i>to lead</i>
2nd sing. pres.		ведёшь
past part. pass.		ведённый
		прочѣсть = <i>to read through</i>
2nd sing. pres.		прочтёшь
past part. pass.		прочтённый
		стричь = <i>to shear, cut (hair)</i>
2nd sing. pres.		стрижёшь
past part. pass.		стри́женный
		жечь = <i>to burn (trans.)</i>
2nd sing. pres.		жжёшь
past part. pass.		жжённный
		and others.

The other way of forming the past participle passive is by cutting off the *-ь* of the infinitive and adding *-ь, -а, -о* for the short or predicative, and *-ый, -ая, -ое* for the long or attributive form. This form is by far the less common of the two.

E. g. from	МЫТЬ = <i>to wash</i>
past part. pass.	мы́тый, &c.
	from БИТЬ = <i>to hit</i>
past part. pass.	би́тый, &c.
	from ПРОКЛѢТЬ = <i>to curse</i>
past part. pass.	проклѣ́тый, &c.
	from ГРѢТЬ = <i>to heat</i>
past part. pass.	грѣ́тый, &c.
	from ТЕРѢТЬ = <i>to rub</i>
past part. pass.	терѣ́тый, &c.
	from ЗАПЕРѢТЬ = <i>to shut</i> (e. g. a building)
past part. pass.	за́пертый, &c.

Other common verbs which form their past participles passive in this way are :

начáть = <i>to begin</i>	жáть = <i>to reap</i>
нажáть = <i>to earn</i>	мять = <i>to crush</i>
запáять = <i>to occupy, to borrow</i>	одѣ́ть = <i>to dress</i>
покрѣ́ть = <i>to cover</i>	пѣ́ть = <i>to sing</i>
жáть = <i>to press</i>	брить = <i>to shave</i>

and all verbs in *-нуть*,

e. g. from	протяну́ть = <i>to stretch forth</i>
past part. pass.	протяну́тый, &c.

## § 100. The Reflexive Verb.

This is formed by the addition of *-ся* (or *-сь*), a reduced form of the reflexive pronoun *себя*, to all parts of the verb, as follows :

купа́ться = *to bathe* (imperfective and intransitive).

*Present.*

я	купа́юсь
ты	купа́ешься
онъ, она́, онó	купа́ется
мы	купа́емся
вы	купа́етесь
они́, онѣ́	купа́ются

*Past.*

	M. купáлся	} Plur. купáлись
Sing. F.	купáлась	
N.	купáлось	

*Future.*

бúду купáться, &amp;c.

*Conditional.*

купáлся-бы, &amp;c.

*Imperative.*купáйся  
купáйтесь*Present Gerund.*

купáясь

*Past Gerund.*

купáвшись

*Present Participle.*

купáющійся, &amp;c.

*Past Participle.*

купáвшійся, &amp;c.

Ся is added whenever the part of the verb ends in a consonant or in *ь* or *й*; *сь* when it ends in a vowel. *Ся* is added in the participles throughout, whether preceded by vowel or consonant.

## § 101.

## The uses of the Verb.

In order to use the verb correctly it is necessary to know not only the way it is conjugated but also what aspects it possesses.

This is where the real difficulty begins. It will have been noticed that, compared with other languages, Russian possesses very few tenses in the grammatical sense of the word; this want is supplied by the aspects.

The aspects are different forms of the same verb; the same verb acquires a different meaning according to its aspect. The aspects are formed by altering the verb itself either by prefixing some preposition or by lengthening or otherwise altering the root itself; the personal endings remain unaltered and each aspect of the verb has a more or less complete set of forms, i.e. present, imperative, infinitive, &c.

There are two main divisions of the aspects of the Russian verb:

1. imperfective
- and 2. perfective.

The verbs themselves are called imperfective or perfective according to the aspect in which they are used in any particular case, i.e. a verb is said to be imperfective, or is said to be used in the imperfective aspect, and every verb must necessarily belong



to one or the other division, i.e. must be either imperfective or perfective.

The difference in meaning between these two aspects is that when any one uses an imperfective verb the action described by that verb is in the mind's eye of the speaker **INCOMPLETE**, or, if in the past, must have been of uncertain duration.

When, on the other hand, any one uses a perfective verb, then the action is either **COMPLETE** or, if in the future, the speaker must have its completion in his mind's eye.

In English there is of course also variety of aspects, but it is expressed not by altering the verb itself but by the use of auxiliary verbs or adverbs; for instance, *I go, I am going, I used to go, I often go, I was going* are imperfective, whereas *I went, I am gone, I shall go* are perfective.

The majority of simple Russian verbs, i.e. those which are not compounded with any preposition, are imperfective, but from the fact that a given verb is compounded with a preposition it by no means follows that that verb is perfective. Nevertheless it is true that the commonest way of turning an imperfective into a perfective verb is by prefixing to it a preposition.

Now the curious thing is that when a preposition is used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb, that preposition loses its original meaning.

Further, while there is always one preposition in particular which when prefixed to a verb both makes the verb perfective and loses its own original meaning, on the other hand, all the other prepositions when prefixed to the same verb both make it perfective and retain their original meaning, thus altering the meaning of the verb as well.

The difficulty is to know which is the particular preposition in each case which merely makes a given verb perfective, and as it is sometimes one preposition and sometimes another, the only thing for the beginner to do is to make a list of the commonest verbs and learn them by heart, putting down the simple (imperfective) verb and the form of the same verb compounded with that preposition which makes the verb perfective, while allowing the verb to retain its meaning but losing its own.

One of the prepositions most frequently used for transforming an imperfective into a perfective verb is *no*, which in the process

quite loses its meaning of *along* or *over*, and merely defines the space of time during which the action takes place, e.g.

смотрѣть (imperfective) = *to look*

посмотрѣть (perfective) = *to give a look.*

It has already been indicated that not all simple verbs are imperfective and conversely that not all verbs compounded with prepositions are perfective; these categories of verbs will be examined later.

There follow now paradigms of one or two very common verbs in couples, first the simple (imperfective) and then the compound (perfective) verb. It will be noticed that not both aspects of the same verb have an equally complete paradigm. This, as will be explained, is in the nature of things, and is invariably the case.

First the paradigms are given, then remarks on the use of the various parts of the two aspects :

дѣлать } *for acc. of. see 9 p. 151*  
сдѣлать<sup>1</sup> } = *to do, to make*

	<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
present	дѣлаю	— (cf. § 102)
past	дѣлалъ	сдѣлалъ
future	бѹду дѣлать	сдѣлаю
conditional	дѣлалъ-бы	сдѣлалъ-бы
imperative	дѣлай	сдѣлай
infinitive	дѣлать	сдѣлать
pres. ger.	дѣлая	—
past ger.	дѣлавъ	сдѣлавъ
pres. part. act.	дѣляющій	—
past part. act.	дѣлавшій	сдѣлавшій
pres. part. pass.	дѣлаемый	—
past part. pass.	дѣланный	сдѣланный

<sup>1</sup> = съ + дѣлать.

на + <sup>писатьъ</sup> „ } = to write

	<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
present	пишú	— (cf. § 102)
past	писáль	написáль
future	буду писатьъ	напишú
conditional	писáль-бы	написáль-бы
imperative	пиши́	напиши́
infinitive	писа́ть	написа́ть
pres. ger.	—	—
past ger.	писа́въ	написа́въ
pres. part. act.	пи́шущий	—
past part. act.	писа́вший	написа́вший
pres. part. pass.	—	—
past part. pass.	пи́санный	напи́санный

### § 102. The Present (imperfective).

Russian possesses only one present, while English has two: я пишú = (1) *I write* (sc. *it is my custom or profession to write*) and = (2) *I am writing* (sc. *at this moment*). Both these meanings are of course imperfective; when one says я пишú = *I write*, or я пишú = *I am writing*, the speaker does not naturally envisage the termination of his activity. An example of the use of the imperfective present:

что вы дѣлаете? = *what are you doing?*

я пишú письмо = *I am writing a letter.*

The imperfective present is frequently used in Russian illogically, instead of the future, as in English; e. g. in telegrams, letters, &c.:

приѣзжáю зáвтра = *I am arriving to-morrow* (приѣзжáю is an imperfective present).

The historic present is often used in narration instead of the past.

### Use of the Present in subordinate sentences.

The imperfective present is used in all cases where it is used in English; after verbs of *declaring, feeling, &c.* The subordinate sentence is always introduced by *что*, e. g.

я говорю, что онъ врётъ = *I say that he is lying*

я думаю, что онъ любитъ её = *I think he loves her*

ты знаешь, что я тебя люблю = *thou knowest that I love thee.*

In this connexion it should be noticed that after the verb *видѣть* the so-called paratactic construction is very common in Russian; this is especially frequent in narration. By omitting the *что* it gives the impression of two principal sentences instead of a principal and a subordinate sentence, e. g.

видѣть — летѣть къ нимъ птица = *they see a bird flying towards them* (lit. *they see — a bird is flying towards them*).

Russian is much stricter in the correct expression of time, however, and the present is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences where in English we use the past although we mean the present, e. g.

*I did not know that this was so* = я не зналъ, что это такъ (lit. *I did not know that this [is] so*)

*he told me that he was writing a book* = онъ сказалъ мнѣ, что пишетъ книгу (lit. = *he told me that he is writing a book*)

*she thought he loved her* = она думала, что онъ её любитъ (lit. *she thought he loves her*)

and in these cases it would be a very bad mistake to use the past in the subordinate clause.

In conditional clauses the imperfective present is used whenever the condition refers to the actual present; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *если* = *if* (sometimes by *еслили*), and the antithesis in the principal sentence is often expressed by the pronoun *то* used adverbially, e. g.

если вы хотите, то скажите ему = *if you wish, then tell him*

сдѣлайте это для ней, если вы её любите = *do this for her if you love her.*

When the condition refers to the future the perfective present (= perfective future, q.v.) is usual, though in the cases of some

verbs the imperfective present is used illogically for the future, as in English, e. g.

если можете, то приходите завтра = *if you can, then come to-morrow.*

In concessive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English ; the subordinate sentence is introduced by хотя = *although* (sometimes reduced to хотъ), не смотря на то, что = *in spite of the fact that*, and the antithesis in the principal sentence is expressed by но = *but*, однако = *nevertheless*, всётаки = *all the same*, or by the enclitic -таки = *yet*,

хотя все говорить что это правда, я имъ всётаки не вѣрю = *although all say that this is true (the truth), all the same I don't believe them.*

In relative clauses—*whoever*, in sentences where the present is necessary, is expressed by the simple relative, e. g.

кто говоритъ это, врётъ = *whoever says this, lies.*

*Whoever*, *whatever*, and *however* are also expressed by the relative with the negative particle ни, which however does not make the sentence negative,

что онъ ни дѣлаетъ, всё ему́ удаётся = *whatever he does, he succeeds in everything*

какъ вы ни стараетесь, вы не сумёте это сдѣлать = *however much you try you will not be able to do this.*

If the relative sentence is negative the ordinary negative particle не is used and not ни,

кто не знаетъ этого человека, тотъ не можетъ понять почему его такъ уважаютъ = *whoever does not know this man, cannot understand why people respect him so.*

In causal clauses the imperfective present is very common ; the subordinate clause is introduced by потому́, что = *because* or такъ какъ = *since* (in letter-writing these are often abbreviated to п. т. ч. and т. к.).

она́ цѣлуетъ его по томú, что она́ его любитъ = *she kisses him because she loves him*

такъ какъ вы не хотите сказать мнѣ, я спрошú его = *since you do not wish to tell me, I'll ask him.*

In consecutive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English ; the subordinate sentence is introduced by что, e. g.

онъ такъ боленъ, что я не могу его оставитъ = *he is so ill that I cannot leave him.*

In temporal clauses the subordinate sentences are introduced by когда = *when* (often answered by тогда = *then*), пока = *while*, между тѣмъ какъ, въ то время какъ = *while*,

когда я пишу, я не люблю чтобы со мной говорили = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me*

сидите со мной пока я одѣваюсь = *sit with me while I am dressing.*

In comparative clauses the subordinate sentence is introduced by какъ = *how* answered by такъ, or такъ и = *thus*

какъ думаетъ, такъ и говоритъ = *as he thinks, thus (too) he speaks.*

### The Present (perfective).

It is one of the greatest peculiarities of the Russian verb that the formal present of every perfective verb has future meaning, so that while every perfective verb has a tense which is present in form, it is in meaning always a definite future (cf. § 104).

### § 103. The Past (imperfective).

This is the equivalent of the imperfect, and its use connotes that the action was more or less habitual or that the period of time during which it lasted is in the mind's eye of the speaker indefinite.

я писалъ = *I was writing, or I used to write.*

Examples of the use of this tense :

что вы дѣлали когда я вошёлъ въ комнату ? = *what were you doing when I entered the room ?*

я писалъ письмо = *I was writing a letter*

прежде она писала много = *formerly she used to write a lot.*

The use of the imperfective past in subordinate sentences is common in temporal, concessive, and comparative clauses, but presents no difficulties.

It is important to remember that in Russian the present is often used in a subordinate sentence where we use the past.

For the use of бывало with the perfective present (= perfective future), cf. § 104.

## The Past (perfective).

This is the equivalent of the aorist and its use connotes that the action is completed; it can never be used for any action that is habitual, frequentative, or indefinite:

я написАлъ = *I wrote*, or *I have written*, or *I had written*.

Examples of the use of this tense:

я сдѣлАлъ это нарѳчно = *I did this on purpose*

я написАлъ твоёму отцу писемѳ = *I have written your father a letter*

что вы сдѣлАли? = *what have you done?*

There is one curious use of the perfective past which, owing to its prevalence and peculiarity, deserves special mention. The perfective past of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of БЫТЬ, viz. БЫЛО, to convey the meaning that an action was on the point of being completed and was only just prevented; it is the Russian way of saying *was on the point of*, *was just about to* . . . , e. g.

онъ нАчалъ было приподнимАться на постѣли чтобъ встать . . . = *he was on the point of beginning to raise himself on the bed, in order to get up* (when some one addressed him and he stopped where he was)

не дожидАясь отвѣта онъ пошѣлъ было вонъ = *without waiting for an answer he was just going to leave the room* (when he was stopped)

Алѣша сталъ было отъ ликѣра откАзываться = *Alesha was about to refuse the liqueur*

я было сказАлъ ему, а онъ ужѣ поѣхАлъ = *I was just going to tell him, but he had already gone*.

Although this construction usually implies an unfulfilled intention it is sometimes used when the action was really accomplished, but was interrupted at the very moment of completion.

Another idiomatic construction with much the same meaning is ЧУТЬ БЫЛО НЕ with the perfective past, e. g.

онъ чуть было не всталъ съ постѣли = *he almost got up from the bed* (sc. *but didn't*)

я чуть было не упАлъ = *I very nearly fell*.

This is in fact the usual way of saying *nearly* followed by a verb, as the adverb *nearly* (почти) is almost exclusively used with nouns and adjectives.

**The use of the Imperfective Past where that of the Perfective Past is to be expected.**

This is very common and for the foreigner immensely increases the difficulty of correct expression. It is most frequent in negative sentences; negation of an action seems to the Russian to demand an imperfective verb. E. g.

я не писалъ ему́ may mean: *I was not writing to him*; but it may also mean, and usually does: *I have not written to him*.

Very common phrases are:

вы мнѣ давно́ не писали́ = *you haven't written to me for a long time*

я никогда́ не видалъ его́ (imperfective) = *I have never seen him*  
(N.B. In Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative)

я не слыжала́ ея́ (imperfective) = *I have not heard her* (sc. never).

But where the negation refers to one particular event, the perfective may be used, e. g.

не я это́ сдѣлать = *it was not I (who) did this*

я не узналъ васъ = *I didn't recognize you*.

In interrogative sentences also, where the question covers a long period of time, the imperfective is also frequently used (-ли is the interrogative particle):

писали-ли вы	} когда-нибудь? = <i>have you ever written, done, seen,</i> <i>heard?</i>
дѣлали-ли вы	
видали-ли вы	
слыхали-ли вы	

In general it may be said that in negative and interrogative sentences the imperfective is, in the nature of things, more usual than the perfective aspect.

A most unexpected use of the imperfective past is made in some cases where the action is quite definite and the most obvious aspect to use would seem to be the perfective. These are cases in which the speaker who uses the imperfective instead of the perfective aspect wishes by so doing to give a slightly indefinite tone to what he is saying; by using the imperfective instead of the



perfective he makes a suggestion, as it were, instead of a statement. To the beginner this seems a gross inconsistency, but it is really a very subtle refinement.

For example, one often hears Russians say :

ОНЪ МНѢ ПИСАТЬ ОБЪ ЭТОМЪ

when one definite letter is referred to and the meaning can only be: *he wrote to me about this*, or *he did write to me*, &c.; in this case the use of the imperfective may connote hostility or incredulity in the mind of the speaker, or it may be merely intentional vagueness.

Another very common instance is :

ОНЪ ГОВОРИЛЪ МНѢ, ЧТО . . . = *he told me, that . . .*

where a perfective verb would be natural; in this case there is an English equivalent, for we often say: *he was telling me* when we mean *he told me*.

The imperfective past is used where one would expect the perfective past particularly frequently in the case of the following verbs :

ХОДИТЬ and its compounds, ЪЗДИТЬ, compounds of ЪЗЖАТЬ, and ПОСЫЛАТЬ, ВОДИТЬ and ВОЗИТЬ and their compounds, amongst others.

These are all verbs of motion and their use in such cases usually implies a stay of short duration and subsequent return to the point of departure, e. g.:

ВЪ ПРОШЛОМЪ ГОДУ МЫ ЪЗДИЛИ ВЪ РОССІЮ = *last year we went to Russia (for a trip)*

МЫ ВЧЕРА ХОДИЛИ ВЪ ТЕАТРЪ = *yesterday we went to the theatre*

СЕЙЧАСЪ ПРИЪЗЖАТЬ КО МНѢ ОБОЛЕНСКІЙ И ПРИВОЗИТЬ ПИСЬМО, ТОЛЬКО ЧТО ПОЛУЧЕННОЕ ИМЪ ОТЪ БРАТА ДМИТРІЯ . . .

*Obolenski has just come to (see) me and has brought a letter just received by him from (his) brother Demetrius.*

### The use of the Perfective Past as an Imperative.

In the case of two verbs the perfective past is used as an imperative; these are:

ПОШѢТЬ	}	fr. inf. ПОЙТИ = <i>to go (on foot)</i> and
ПОШЛА		
ПОШЛО		
ПОШЛИ		

ПОЊХАТЬ, &c., fr. inf. ПОЊХАТЬ = *to go (sc. in any way except on foot)*

It must be noticed that the verb of course agrees with the object addressed, e. g.

ПОШЛА СОБАКА! = *be gone, be off* (addressing a dog).

### The use of the Perfective Past in subordinate sentences.

The perfective past is used in subordinate sentences after verbs of *declaring*, &c., when the event really refers to the past, e. g.

Я УЖЕ СКАЗАТЬ ВАМЪ, ЧТО НАПИСАТЬ ПИСЬМО = *I have already told you that I have written the letter*

but it is important to remember that whenever the action is still going on, even though the principal sentence is in the perfective past, the verb in the subordinate sentence must be in the present or the future (cf. § 102).

Я ЕМУ СКАЗАТЬ, ЧТО НЕ ЛЮБЛЮ ЕГО = *I told him that I didn't like him.*

In relative, concessive, temporal, comparative, and consecutive clauses the imperfective and perfective past are of course both common, but its use presents no difficulties; the perfective past is common in temporal clauses beginning with *as soon as* (какъ только), *before* (прежде чѣмъ, передъ тѣмъ какъ), *after* (послѣ того какъ), *hardly — when* — (только что — какъ —), *as soon as ever* (чуть), *until* (пока не):

КАКЪ ТОЛЬКО ПРИѢХАТЬ, Я ЗАХВОРАТЬ = *as soon as I arrived, I fell ill*  
ОНЪ СДѢЛАТЬ ЭТО ПЕРЕДЪ ТѢМЪ, КАКЪ Я ЕМУ НАПИСАТЬ = *he did this before I had written to him*

ОНЪ НАПИСАТЬ ЭТО ПОСЛѢ ТОГО, КАКЪ ПОЛУЧИТЬ МОЕ ПИСЬМО = *he wrote this after he had received my letter*

ТОЛЬКО ЧТО Я ПРИШЕЛЪ, КАКЪ ОНЪ УМЕРЪ = *hardly had I come, when he died*

ТЫ ЧУТЬ ВОШЕЛЪ, Я ВМНГЪ УЗНАЛА = *thou hadst barely entered, I at once recognized [thee].*

### § 104. The Future (imperfective).

The imperfective future presents no difficulties; it is a compound tense and is formed by бѹду (= *I shall be*) and the imperfective infinitive. It is always used when any future action is referred to the completion of which is not envisaged by the speaker.

It must be remembered that it is only the imperfective infinitive which can be used after бѹду; to use a perfective infinitive after

б́уду is one of the worst mistakes a foreigner can make. An example of the tense is given in full:

я б́уду писáть  
 ты б́удешь писáть  
 онъ, она́ б́удетъ писáть  
 мы б́удемъ писáть  
 вы б́удете писáть  
 онѣ, онѣ́ б́удутъ писáть

= *I am going to write* (sc. indefinitely).

An example of the use of the imperfective future :

что вы б́удете дѣлать послѣ́ з́автрака ? = *what are you going to do after lunch* (= *in the afternoon*) ?

я б́уду писáть, читáть = *I am going to write, read*

вы б́удете писáть мнѣ́ ? = *you will write to me?* (sc. *more than once*)

б́уду = *I will*.

Стáну, стáнешь, &c. (from стать = *to become, to take up one's stand*), is also used followed by an imperfective infinitive to form this same tense, instead of б́уду, but it is much commoner in the written than in the spoken language. It is particularly common in negative sentences.

The use of the imperfective future in subordinate sentences does not present any difficulties, but cf. § 102.

### The Future (perfective).

This is in form exactly the same as the present, and is in theory the present tense of the perfective aspect, while in fact it always has future meaning. It is used when the completion of any future action is contemplated by the speaker. The use of this tense is at first the most puzzling for the beginner.

Examples:

я напиш́у ему́ тепѣ́рь = *I shall write to him now*

я сдѣлаю́ это́ з́автра = *I shall do this to-morrow*.

The imperfective present and the perfective future can of course be used together, e. g.

я посмотрю́, что́ онъ тамъ дѣлаетъ = *I shall have a look, what he is doing there*

while

я смотрю́, что́ онъ дѣлаетъ = *I am watching, what he is doing*.

There is one use of the perfective future which is very idiomatic and requires special notice. The perfective future of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of БЫВАТЬ (the imperfective frequentative form of БЫТЬ = *to be*), viz. БЫВАЛО, to convey the idea of a perfective or definite action which used to take place often or customarily in the past :

зайдётъ она́ бывало ко мнѣ чай пить = *she used often to look in on me to have tea* (зайдётъ = *she will look in on*, perfective)

онъ бывало скажетъ мнѣ: 'Принеси стаканъ воды' = *he would often say to me: 'Bring me a glass of water.'*

Бывало can also be used with the imperfective present to express an imperfective habitual action in the past, but this construction is not so common.

The perfective future is also used in narration like a historic present, e.g.

Татьяна то вздохнётъ, то охнеть = *at one moment Tatyana would sigh, at another she would groan.*

It is also frequently used where one would expect *I cannot* followed by a perfective infinitive, e.g.:

не разберу́ ничегó, всё вздоръ = *I can't make out a word, it's all nonsense* (lit. *I shall not be able to make out*).

#### Use of the Future in subordinate clauses.

The future is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences, where in English we use the past or the verb *would, should*, e.g. after verbs of *declaring, &c.*:

*He said that he would be there, or that he was going to be there* = онъ сказа́ль, что бу́детъ тамъ (lit. = *he said that he will be there*)

*I knew that he would do this, or that he was going to do this* = я зналь, что онъ это сдѣлаеть (= *I knew that he will do this*)

*She did not know that I was going to write* = она́ не зна́ла, что я напишú

&c.

In relative clauses the perfective future is used after *кто ни* = *whoever*, *что ни* = *whatever*:

что вы ни скажете, я вамъ не повѣрю = *whatever you may say, I shall not believe you.*

The use of the perfective future is especially common in temporal clauses with the meaning of the future perfect where we in English illogically use the present, e.g.

напишите, какъ только приѣдете = *write as soon as you arrive*  
(lit. *shall arrive*)

подумайте хорошенько, передъ тѣмъ какъ сдѣлаете это = *reflect well before you do this* (lit. *will do*)

скажемъ вамъ всё послѣ того, какъ вернемся = *we shall tell you everything after we return* (lit. *shall return*).

N.B. какъ is often used alone with the meaning *when*. *Until* is usually expressed by пока не, though не is sometimes omitted, e.g.

я не напишú, пока не получú отъ него письмо = *I shall not write, until I have a letter from him*.

The perfective future is often used in conditional clauses where we use the present illogically:

если онъ сдѣлаетъ это, я закричú = *if he does this* (lit. *will do*)  
*I shall scream*.

### § 105. The Conditional (imperfective and perfective).

The conditional, as already explained in § 92, is not a separate tense in form, but is merely compounded of the past and the particle бы. It can be formed from the imperfective as well as from the perfective past, but it is far more commonly formed from the latter.

The peculiarity of the tense from the syntactical point of view is that it can refer to the future as well as to the past, e.g.

я бы сдѣлалъ = *I should have done, or I should do*

что вы бы написали? = *what would you have written? or what would you write?*

это было-бы невозможно = *that would have been impossible, or that would be impossible*.

#### Other uses of the Conditional.

The conditional is very common in relative sentences beginning with *whoever, whatever*, expressed in Russian by the relative pronouns кто что, followed by the бы of the conditional and the negative particle ни:

кто бы это ни написалъ, я ему скажú . . = *whoever wrote this, I shall tell him*

что бы вы ни сдѣлали, ниче́го не помо́жетъ = *whatever you do, nothing will help*

что бы́ это ни сто́ило, на́до это сдѣ́лать = *whatever it cost, we must do this*

что бы ни случи́лось, по́йдемъ = *whatever happens, we shall go.*

The conditional is used in unfulfilled conditional sentences, both in the principal and in the subordinate sentences; in the latter it is joined to the word *если* (= *if*) and is usually reduced to *бъ*, e.g.

я бы сдѣ́лать это́, е́слибы могъ = *I should have done this if I had been able*

е́слибъ она́ хоте́ла, она бы написа́ла = *if she had wished (to), she would have written.*

But it must be carefully observed that if the condition is still capable of fulfilment either in the present or the past, these tenses are used in Russian and not the conditional, e.g.

е́сли мо́жете, напи́шите те́перь = *if you can, write now*

я бу́ду о́чень радъ, е́сли вы сдѣ́лаете́ это́ = *I should be very glad if you did this (lit. = I shall be very glad if you will do this).*

The conditional is used in final clauses where the subject of the subordinate is not the same as that of the principal sentence; *бы* is always joined to the conjunction *что* which introduces the subordinate sentence, e.g.

я пишу́ ему́, что́бы онъ у́зналъ пра́вду = *I am writing to him in order that he may learn the truth*

онъ дѣ́лаетъ это́, что́бы мы заме́тили его́ = *he is doing this in order that we may notice him*

она́ помогла́ ему́, что́бы онъ пото́мъ помо́гъ ей = *she helped him in order that he might later help her.*

The conditional is used in concessive clauses if the sense is hypothetical, e.g.

хотя́-бы зналъ, что вы тамъ, я бы не могъ при́дти = *even though I had known you were there I should not have been able to come.*

The conditional is used after all verbs of wishing, commanding, and praying, both affirmative and negative; the subordinate sentences are introduced by *чтобы* or *чтобъ*, e.g.

я хочú, чтобъ онъ это́ сдѣ́лать = *I wish him to do this (lit. I wish that he would do this)*

она́ хóчеть, чтобъ я ей написáль = *she wishes me to write to her*  
 (. . . чтобъ я ей писалъ would mean *to write more than once,*  
*often*)

онъ приказáль, чтóбы вы пошли́ къ нему́ = *he ordered you to go to him*

она́ просíла, чтóбы мы это сдѣлали = *she begged us to do this.*

The conditional is often used after verbs of declaring, feeling, and believing when the verb in the principal sentence is negated; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *чтобы* or *чтобъ*, e. g.

я не говорю́, чтóбы это было́ такъ = *I do not say, that this is so*

я не думаю́, чтóбы онъ это сдѣлалъ = *I do not think that he did it*

я не вѣрю́, чтóбы было́ опасно́ = *I don't believe that it is dangerous*

когда́ я пишу́, я не люблю́ чтóбы со мной́ говорíли = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me.*

In conversation, however, the present and past are often used instead of the conditional, and when the subordinate sentence refers to the future, then the future only is used, e. g.

я не думаю́, что́ бѹдетъ хóлодно́ = *I don't think that it will be cold.*

The conditional, negated, is often used after verbs of fearing (*боя́ться*) expressing a positive fear; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *чтобы* or *какъ-бы*, e. g.

я бою́сь, чтóбы вы не простудíлись = *I am afraid that you will catch cold*

я бою́сь, какъ-бы онъ не узна́ль = *I am afraid he will find out*

though *что* followed by the perfective future can also be used in such cases, and must be if the fear is negative, e. g.

я бою́сь, что́ онъ мнѣ́ не напишетъ = *I am afraid that he will not write me.*

The conditional is also used invariably after certain negative expressions, e. g.

невозмо́жно, чтóбы это́ было́ прав́да = *it is impossible that this is true* (lit. *the truth*)

невѣро́ятно, чтóбы онъ написáль мнѣ́ = *it is improbable that he would write me, or that he will write.*

The particle **бы** is sometimes used by itself in certain expressions elliptically, e. g.

ВОТЬ-БЫ ХОРОШО! = *there, wouldn't that be nice!*

For the use of **бы** with the infinitive cf. § 107.

### § 106. The Imperative (imperfective and perfective).

The imperative is used in Russian as in English. The difference between the imperfective and the perfective imperative is that the former implies a command of a more general nature, while the latter refers to the immediate present, e. g.

СМОТРИ, СМОТРИТЕ! = *look out (sc. take care)!*

ПОСМОТРИ, ПОСМОТРИТЕ! = *look here!*

СЛУШАЙТЕ МЕНЯ! (inf. слушать) = *listen to me (sc. take my advice)!*

ПОСЛУШАЙТЕ! (inf. послушать) = *listen!*

Very often the imperfective imperative is used when it is a question of polite request rather than of a peremptory command; this is especially so in the case of the verb *to take*, inf. брать (imperfective), and *взять* (perfective), e. g.

БЕРИТЕ ЭТО = *take this*

is more polite than

ВОЗЬМИТЕ, though the latter is often used.

The same holds good of the verb *to hand, to serve*, inf. подавать (imperfective), подать (perfective), e. g.

ПОДАВАЙ(ТЕ) ОБЪЕДЬ! = *serve the dinner!*

is more polite than

ПОДАЙ(ТЕ) МНЕ СЧЕТЬ! = *give (lit. hand) me the bill!*

The imperatives of the verb *to allow, to let*, inf. пускать (imperfective), пустить (perfective), followed by the 3rd sing. of the perfective future, are used to express the 3rd sing. of the imperative (cf. § 93), e. g.

ПУСТЬ ОН ПУСКАЙ СКАЖЕТЬ ВАМЪ = *let him tell you*

ПУСКАЙ СДѢЛАЕТЬ = *let him do it*

ПУСТЬ НАПИШЕТЬ = *let him write.*



The imperative дава́й(те) is very commonly used colloquially with the meaning *let's*, e. g.

дава́й(те) игра́ть въ ка́рты! = *let's have a game of cards!*

to which the answer usually is:

дава́й(те) = [*yes*] *let's!*

The imperative да́й(те) is often used with the meaning *let*, e. g.

да́й(те) мнѣ говори́ть! = *let me speak.*

In prohibitions the imperfective is used, e. g.

не дава́йте ей говори́ть! = *don't let her speak.*

In negative commands the imperfective imperative is almost invariably used, even when the prohibition only covers a definite act or period of time, e. g.

не пиши́те ему́! = *don't write to him!* (= either *now*, or *in future*)

не смотре́йте! = *don't look!*

не говори́те ему́! = *don't tell him!*

не говори́те! = *don't talk about it!*

(for the use of the infinitive in commands cf. § 107).

An exception is the verb

*to forget*, inf. забыва́ть (imperfective), забы́ть (perfective)

of both of which the imperative is quite common, e. g.

не забыва́йте мени́! = *don't forget me*

but не забу́дьте что́ я вамъ сказа́лъ! = *don't forget what I told you!*

не забу́дьте! = *don't forget!*

не забу́дьте написа́ть мнѣ! = *don't forget to write to me!*

(cf. незабу́дка = *forget-me-not*).

### Use of the Imperative in conditional sentences.

The imperative is frequently used in Russian in unfulfilled conditional sentences; in this construction the imperative can be combined with any noun or pronoun, e. g.

бу́дь э́тотъ до́мъ дешёвле, я бы купи́лъ его́ = *if this house had been cheaper, I should have bought it* (lit. = *be this house cheaper*).

In this construction the perfective imperative is always used in spite of the negative :

НЕ СЛУЧИ́СЬ ТАМЪ ЛО́ДКА, Я БЫ УТОНУ́ЛЬ = *if a boat hadn't happened [to be] there, I should have been drowned*

НЕ СДѢЛАЙ ОНѢ ЭТОГО, ОНА́ БЫ ПРИШЛА́ = *if he had not done this, she would have come*

СКАЖИ́ Я СЛОВО́, ОНѢ БЫ И ПАПИСА́ТЬ = *if I had said the word, he would have written*

ЧУЖО́ГО НЕ ЖЕЛА́Й—СВОЕ́ГО НЕ ТЕРЯ́Й = *if you don't covet other people's goods, you won't lose your own.*

There is a very idiomatic use of the imperative which is especially common in narration and deserves mention. This is a combination of the imperative of the perfective verb *взяться* = *to appear* (lit. *to take oneself*), viz. *возьмись* with the words *откуда ни* = *whencesoever*, e. g.

ВДРУ́ГЪ, ОТКУ́ДА НИ ВОЗЬМИ́СЬ, ЗАЯ́ЦЪ! = *suddenly, as if from nowhere, there appeared a hare!*

Notice also the following idiomatic uses of the imperative :

ТОГО́ И СМОТРИ́, ЧТО ОНѢ УПАДЕ́ТЬ! = *I am afraid that (sc. at any moment or before we know where we are) he will fall (lit. = look out!)*

ПОМНИ́АЙ КАКЪ ЗВА́ЛИ! = *you'll never see [him] again (lit. = remember how they called him, sc. his name)*

КАЖИ́СЬ (instead of *кажется*) = *it seems, one would think.*

Another idiomatic use of the imperative is with the conjunction *хоть*, when it acquires the meaning *you may as well . . .*

ЕСЛИ ВЫ НЕ ПОМО́ЖЕТЕ ВЪ НА́ШЕЙ ПРО́СЬБѢ, ТО УЖЕ́ НЕ ЗНА́ЕМЪ, КАКЪ И БЫТЬ : ПРО́СТО ХОТЬ ВЪ ПЕ́ТЛЮ ПОЛѢ́ЗАЙ! = *if you don't help us in our request, we simply shan't know what to do : we may as well go and hang ourselves! (lit. climb into the noose)*

НИЧЕ́ГО НЕЛЬЗЯ́ СЪ ЭТИ́МЪ СДѢ́ЛАТЬ, ХОТЬ БРОСЬ = *nothing can be done with this, you may as well fling it away.*

Sometimes *хоть* = *even though* (= *хотя*) in this same construction :

ХОТЬ УБЕЙ, НЕ СКАЖУ́ = *even though you kill me, I shall not tell.*

### § 107. The Infinitive (imperfective and perfective).

The difference in meaning between the two aspects of the infinitive has already been explained; it remains to give some examples of the various uses of the infinitive.

In expressions of a general character the imperfective infinitive is always used, e. g.

писáть кнѣги неприя́тно = *to write books is unpleasant*

while if a single event is referred to the perfective is of course necessary, e. g.

ско́лько у него́ де́нег? т́рудно сказа́ть = *how much money has he? it is difficult to tell.*

The following idiomatic use of the infinitive should be noticed:

не́чего дѣ́лать = *there is nothing to be done*

онъ пѣ́тъ отъ не́чего дѣ́лать = *he drinks because he has nothing to do (lit. from doing nothing)*

говори́ть не́чего (о́р не́чего и говори́ть)! = *there's nothing more to be said! (sc. that goes without saying)*

(cf. § 51)

ужь та́къ и бы́ть = *such is fate, or very well then, let's make the best of it!*

ста́ло-бы́ть = *consequently . . . or in that case, I suppose . . .*

After verbs of *beginning, continuing, ceasing, finishing, &c.*, the imperfective is used, e. g.

ужѣ на́чали играти́ = *they have already begun to play*

онъ продо́лжалъ чита́ть = *he continued to read*

они́ перестали́ говори́ть = *they ceased talking*

я́ кончи́лъ писа́ть = *I have finished writing*

and of course all the more when these verbs are negatived.

After the verb *to know how to*, inf. у́мѣть (imperfective), сьму́тъ (perfective), the imperfective and perfective infinitives respectively are used, e. g.

онъ у́мѣетъ дѣ́лать фо́кусы = *he knows how to do tricks*

сму́ете-ли вы́ э́то сдѣ́лать? = *will you know how to do this?*

After the verb *to have time to*, inf. успѣвать (imperfective), успѣть (perfective), the perfective is naturally always used, e.g.

я каждый день успѣваю написать пять писемъ = *every day I manage to write five letters*

успѣете-ли вы это сдѣлать сегодня? = *shall you have time to do this to-day?*

After the verb *to be able*, inf. мочь (imperfective),<sup>1</sup> both aspects are used, according to the sense, e.g.

можете-ли вы это сдѣлать? = *can you do this?*

я не могу говорить (imperfective) = *I can't speak* (sc. *am physically unable*)

я не могу сказать (perfective) = *I can't say*

я не могъ писать = *I could not write* (sc. *was physically unable*)

я не могъ написать = *I could not write* (sc. *just then, that once*), or  
*I have been unable to write* (sc. *till now*)

The perfective future of this verb is supplied as a rule by the perfective verb:

сумѣть = *to know how to*,

but this again is not used where it is a question of surmounting physical difficulties. In this case the Russians as often as not use the imperfective present могу, &c., illogically with future meaning, just as we do in English, e.g.

я могу придти завтра = *I can come to-morrow* (sc. *shall be able to*).

The imperfective future of мочь is not used; its place is taken by the phrase

бѣду въ состояннн + inf. = *I shall be in a position to . . .*

After the verb *to wish*, inf. хотѣть (imperfective), either aspect can be used, e.g.

я хочу писать = *I wish to write* (sc. *be an author*)

я хочу написать письмо = *I wish to write a letter*

я не хочу говорить (imperfective) = *I don't want to talk*

я не хочу сказать (perfective) = *I don't want to say*

я хотѣлъ говорить = *I wanted to speak*

я хотѣлъ сказать = *I meant to say*.

---

<sup>1</sup> N.B. The perfective aspect of мочь is смочь, pres. смогу = *I shall be able*, but this is very seldom used; whenever it is, it implies the surmounting of great physical difficulty.

After verbs such as любить = *to like*, предпочитать = *to prefer*, не любить = *to dislike*, the imperfective infinitive is of course the more usual.

After verbs of *refusing, agreeing, &c.*, either aspect can be used, though the perfective is the commoner.

### Use of the Infinitive instead of the Future.

This is common in such phrases as:

что́-же дѣлать? = *what are we to do? (what is to be done?)*

написать-ли ему? = *shall I write to him?*

что написать? = *what shall I write?*

пойти и сказать ему = *I shall go and tell him (or let us . . .)*

какъ намъ быть? = *how are we to manage?*

за́чѣмъ продать? = *why are you (or we) going to sell? (= why sell?)*

сказать вамъ = *shall I tell you?*

какъ вамъ сказать = (lit. = *how shall I tell you?*) *how shall I put it?*

### Use of the Infinitive with the conditional particle.

This occurs in such phrases as:

посмотрѣть-бы? = *shall we have a look?*

Often it is merely the verb было that has been omitted, e.g.

хорошо-бы поѣхать = *it would be nice to go*

попробовать-бы? = *shall we have a try (or a taste)?*

### Use of the Infinitive instead of the Imperative.

This is especially common in public notices, e.g.

ѣхать шагомъ! (imperfective) = *drive at walking speed!* (cf. *aller au pas!*)

никого не пускать! (imperfective) = *don't let any one go!*

наплевать! = *spit!* (sc. *take no notice of it!*)

The infinitive плевать can even be used in place of a finite verb, e.g.

я плевать на твоего хозяина! = *I don't care in the least about your master!*

**Use of the Infinitive in subordinate sentences.**

In final clauses the infinitive is used when the subject of the subordinate is the same as that of the principal sentence (cf. § 105), e. g.

я пишу́ ему́, чтобы́ узнать правду = *I am writing to him in order to find out the truth*

онъ дѣлаетъ это, чтобы́ помочь мнѣ = *he is doing this in order to help me.*

In conditional clauses the infinitive is very common, e. g.

если́ ему́ написать, онъ сдѣлаетъ сей-часъ = *if we write to him, he will do it at once*

если́ вамъ сказать, вы не повѣрите = *if I tell you, you won't believe [me].*

Sometimes the *если* is omitted, and the infinitive used in the principal as well as in the subordinate sentence, e. g.

много́ желать — добра́ не видать = *if you wish for much, you'll see no good*

пойти́ — такъ пойти́! = *if we are going, then let's go!*

A very curious idiomatic use of the infinitive is mentioned here, as it is at first extremely puzzling to the foreigner; it is often, though not always, in the form of an answer to a question, and consists of the infinitive followed by the past or present of the same verb, while in meaning it always implies dissatisfaction or the non-fulfilment of a possibility, e. g.

Question :

слыхали-ли вы про́ это? = *have you heard about this?*

Answer :

слыхать-то слыхаль, но не вѣрю = *oh yes, I have heard, but I don't believe it.*

Question :

видали-ли вы царя́? = *have you seen the tsar?*

Answer :

видать-то видаль! = *oh yes, I've seen him (sc. but never spoken to him)*

говорить-то она́ говоритъ, а ничего́ не дѣлаетъ = *she talks a lot, but does nothing*

умѣть-то я умѣю, но я не хочу́ = *I know how to [do it], but I don't want to.*

## § 108. The Gerund (imperfective and perfective).

The gerund is used in Russian as in other languages to avoid the complication of an explanatory (usually subordinate) sentence.

The present gerund is naturally formed only from imperfective verbs; the past gerund from both imperfective and perfective. Whenever a gerund from a perfective verb ~~does have~~ <sup>has</sup> the ending of the present gerund, viz. -я, it has perfective (past) meaning, e. g. from

inf. увидѣть = *to perceive*

past perfective gerund

увидѣвши }  
and увидя } = *having perceived.*

## Examples of the use of the Gerunds.

бѣдучи въ гóродѣ, мы зашли къ вамъ = *being in the town, we looked you up*

прочитавъ письмо, онъ поѣхалъ = *having read the letter, he departed*

говоривъ три часа, онъ сѣлъ на своё мѣсто = *having spoken for three hours, he sat down in his place.*

Some gerunds are very commonly used to express attitude, e. g.

писать лёжа = *to write while lying down*

пѣть сидя = *to sing sitting*

говорить стоя = *to speak standing up.*

The following idioms should be noticed :

мóлча = *in silence*

мáло погодя }  
or немногó погодя } = *after a little (lit. = having waited a little)*

нѣхотя = *unwillingly.*

Some gerunds have quite lost their original meaning and are used as adverbs or conjunctions :

from хотѣть = *to wish*

хотя = *although*

(N.B. *willingly* is охóтно)

from зрѣть = *to look*

зря = *at random, without reflection, to no purpose*

from *смотре́ть* = *to look*

*несмотря́ на* + acc. = *in spite of*

*смотря́* = *all according*

e. g. *смотря́ какъ* = *that's just as it may happen*

*смотря́ по ка́кой цѣнѣ* . . . = *according to the price at which . . .*

and from *у́мѣть* = *to know how to*, the popular form *у́мѣючи* = *having the knowledge*, e. g.

*это́ надо́ сдѣлать у́мѣючи* = *you must have the knack to do this*.

### § 109. The Participles (imperfective and perfective).

The participles are little used in conversation but are very common in literature.

There are naturally no present participles formed from perfective verbs. Past participles active are formed from almost all verbs of both aspects; past participles passive are formed from all perfective (transitive) verbs and from a considerable number of imperfective (transitive) verbs.

As regards the use of the participles it may be mentioned that some of them are used as nouns, e. g.

<i>для ку́рящихъ</i>	= <i>for smokers</i>
<i>для неку́рящихъ</i>	= <i>for non-smokers</i>
<i>бúдущее</i>	= <i>the future</i>
<i>въ бúдущемъ</i>	= <i>in the future</i>
<i>подлежа́щее</i>	= <i>the subject (gram.)</i>
<i>ска́зýемое</i>	= <i>the predicate</i> „
<i>насе́комое</i>	= <i>insect</i>

while in general it may be said that the present participles both active and passive are far more commonly used as pure adjectives without being considered as participles at all, e. g.

*слѣдующій* = *following* is always used for *the next*

*въ слѣдующемъ году́* = *next year*

*свѣдущій* = *knowing, learned*

*онъ очень свѣдущъ по + dat.* = *he is very learned in . . .*

*настоящій* = (1) *present* (of time), = (2) *real*

*бúдущій* = *future*

*лю́бимый* = *favourite*

*зави́симый* = *dependent*

*незави́симый* = *independent*.



Notice the idiom :

повидимому = *apparently*.

Present participles passive beginning with не- correspond to our e. g. *in — able*

e. g. неумолимый = *inexorable*

неоцѣнимый = *invaluable*.

From several verbs two forms of participle are in use, the regular present participle in -щій (which is phonetically not Russian but Old Bulgarian) and the purely adjectival form in -чий (which is the original Russian form of the present participle);

e. g. from горѣть = *to burn* (intrans.)

горящій = *burning*

горячий = *hot* (esp. of *water, food, &c.*).

Notice the following present participles which are very common in letter-writing :

многочуваема́емый (or -ая) . . .

глубоко ————— (or -ая) . . . = *much or deeply respected*

уважающій (or -ая) Васъ

глубоко ————— (or -ая) Васъ = *(deeply) respecting you*

любящій (or -ая) Васъ = *your loving*.

The past participle active, too, is but rarely used as a participle. One or two forms are very commonly used as adjectives or nouns, e. g.

бывшій = *former*

прошедшій = *past*<sup>1</sup> (esp. in grammar).

Notice

сумасшедшій = *madman*

from сойти съ ума́ = *to go mad* (lit. *to go off one's mind*).

The past participle passive is by far the most commonly used of all the participles, and even is not rare in conversation. This participle also often takes the place of the passive, e. g.

къ́мъ эта́ кни́га была́ переведе́на? = *by whom was this book translated?*

<sup>1</sup> Though the forms

прошлый = *last*

прошлое = *the past*

newly-formed from the perfective past прошёлъ are far commoner.

къмъ эта пьеса написана? = *by whom is this play written?*

она одѣта въ чѣрномъ = *she is dressed in black.*

In this case also many participles are almost entirely used as adjectives, e. g.

проклѣтый = *accursed*

вышеупомянутый = *above-mentioned.*

Notice the idioms :

заныто = *occupied* (of places in train, &c.)

заперто = *shut* (of buildings)

биткомъ набито = *chock-full.*

### § 110. The Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive.

The reflexive verb can sometimes be used, as well as the passive participles, to express the passive, but as a matter of fact phrases which in other languages are in the passive are in Russian very often expressed in the active, e. g.

*he is very much liked* would be always translated егó очень  
любить

*he is hated* = егó очень не любить

*this is not done* = этó не дѣлаютъ

though the phrase этó не дѣлается is also common

*this paper is little read* = эту газету мало читаютъ or эта газета  
мало читается.

As a matter of fact, reflexive verbs in Russian are often merely the intransitive forms of otherwise transitive verbs, e. g.

мыть	= to wash (trans.)
мыться	= to wash (intrans.)
купать	= to bathe (trans.)
купаться	= to bathe (intrans.)
продолжать	= to continue (trans.)
продолжаться	= to continue (intrans.)
родиться	= to be born
(родить)	= to bear child

but N.B.

онъ продолжаетъ писать = *he continues to write.*

Some transitive verbs when used intransitively require the complete reflexive pronoun instead of the abbreviated form -ся, e. g.

чу́ствовать	= to feel (trans.)
чу́ствовать себя́	= to feel (intrans.)
я себя́ чу́ствую нехорошо́	= I don't feel well
как вы себя́ чу́ствуете ?	= how do you feel ?

Many reflexive verbs which are intransitive have no corresponding transitive form, e. g.

сморка́ться = to blow one's nose	призна́ться = to confess
улыба́ться = to smile	каза́ться = to seem
смѣ́яться = to laugh	остава́ться = to remain
стано́виться = to become	случа́ться = to happen.
надѣ́яться = to hope.	простуді́ться = to take cold

боя́ться = to fear is both transitive and intransitive.

The verbs

пра́виться = to please	любова́ться = to admire
каса́ться = to touch, concern	наслажда́ться = to enjoy

are looked upon as intransitive, and take the first the dative, the second the genitive, and the last two the instrumental.

A few reflexive verbs are only used impersonally :

смерка́ется = it is growing dark
мнѣ́ хо́чется = I want to . . .
мнѣ́ нездо́ровича = I don't feel well
мнѣ́ не спи́тся = I can't get to sleep, I don't sleep well
мнѣ́ снѣ́тся = I see in my dream, (he) appears to me in my dream
че́шется = it itches
разу́мѣ́тся = it is understood, of course.

Notice the curious use of the impersonal verb :

прихо́дится (lit. = it comes itself)

1. = one has to

прихо́дится игра́ть = one has to play

(мнѣ́) пришло́сь запла́тить = (I) had to pay

что приде́тся памъ сдѣ́лать ? = what shall we have to do ?

2. = stands in relation to (me) + inst.

она́ прихо́дится мнѣ́ двоюро́дной сестро́й = she stands in the relationship of first cousin to me = she is my first cousin.

### § 111. Impersonal Verbs.

Besides the impersonal reflexive verbs already mentioned, a few others, the use of some of which is peculiar, may be noticed here. Some do not call for comment, e. g.

болѣть = *it hurts*

у меня голова болѣть = *my head aches*

„ зубъ „ = *my tooth* „ (this can of course also be used in the plural)

подморáживаетъ = *it is beginning to freeze.*

*It is freezing* is usually expressed merely by the noun морóзъ = *frost* (sc. *there is a frost*), e. g.

сегóдня морóзъ = *it is freezing to-day*

similarly сегóдня óттепель = *it is thawing.*

*It is raining* can only be expressed by :

дождь идѣть (= *rain is going*)

дождь льѣтъ = *it is pouring*

cf. снѣгъ идѣть = *it is snowing*

градъ идѣть = *it hails*

мóлнія сверкаѣтъ = *the lightning is flashing*

громъ гремитъ = *the thunder is thundering.*

These phrases are expressed in the past and the future as follows :

вчера шѣлъ дождь = *yesterday it rained*

но́чью выпалъ снѣгъ = *there has been a fall of snow in the night*

пошѣлъ дождь = *it has started raining*

вчера быть сильный морóзъ = *yesterday there was a hard frost*

бúдетъ дождь = *it is going to rain (there will be of rain)*

не бúдетъ дождя = *it is not going to rain*

перестáлъ дождь = *the rain has stopped.*

The impersonal verb can also be used, e. g.

выпало много снѣгу (gen.) = *much snow has fallen (it has fallen out much of snow)*

замелó or занесло дорóгу снѣгомъ = *the road has got covered with snow.*

*To smell* (intrans.) is expressed as follows :

пахнетъ хорошó = *it smells nice*

пахнетъ рóзамъ = *it smells of roses*

and by a curious impersonal use of the verb нести = *to carry*

отъ него несётъ духами = *he smells of scent* (lit. = *it carries with scents from him*).

To suffice :

хватаетъ (imperfective) = *it suffices*

хватитъ (perfective) = *it will suffice*

недостаётъ = *it wants*

e.g. недостаётъ мнѣ егó = *I miss him*.

Notice the following :

достаточно } = *that is enough*  
довольно }

можно = *one may*

можно сказать = *one may say*

можно говорить = *talking is allowed*

можно ? = *may one ?*

нельзя = *one may not, it is impossible*

нельзя сказать = *one can't say*

but N.B. неизвестно = *one can't tell (sc. know)*

известно, что . . . = *it is well known that*

возможно } = *it is possible*  
можетъ быть }

возможно, что откажется = *it is possible that he will refuse*

можетъ быть онъ знаетъ = *perhaps he knows*

the latter phrase is very commonly transposed: быть можетъ

невозможно = *it is impossible*

невозможно, чтобы онъ не знаетъ = *it is impossible that he does not know*

должно быть = lit. *it must be*, but comes to mean *it is probable, I expect*

должно быть, онъ знаетъ = *I expect he knows*

стало быть = lit. *it has become (or begun) to be*, but comes to mean *consequently, I suppose*

стало быть, вы егó не любите ? = *then I suppose (I must conclude that) you don't love him ?*

стало быть — такъ ! = *I suppose it is so*

не стало + gen. = *there is no more of*

у него не стало денегъ = *his money came to an end*

надо = *it is necessary*

мнѣ надо́ это́ сдѣлать сегодня́ = *I must do this to-day*

не надо́ = *one must or need not, don't*

не надо́ написать сегодня́ = *it is not necessary to write (the letter) to-day*

ска́затъ вамъ? = *shall I tell you?*

нѣтъ, не надо́ = *no, don't*

пу́жно = *it is necessary*

не ну́жно = не надо́

слѣ́дуетъ = *it is proper, ought (lit. = follows)*

не слѣ́дуетъ = *it is not correct*

вамъ слѣ́довало-бы . . . = *you ought to . . .*

Notice the impersonal use of the verb *to begin*:

начина́етъ темнѣ́тъ = *it is beginning to grow dark*

but ко́гда начина́ется ко́нцертъ? = *when does the concert begin?*

Other common impersonal expressions are:

предсто́итъ мнѣ́ + inf. = *I have got to . . .*

оста́ется мнѣ́ + inf. = *it remains for me to . . .*

состо́итъ (изъ or въ) = *it consists (of)*

состо́ится = *it will take place.*

## § 112. How to express the verb *to be*.

The present tense of the verb *быть* = *to be* has long since become obsolete; it is either omitted absolutely or its place is taken, in writing by a long hyphen, in speaking by a pause, e.g.

я англича́нинъ = *I am an Englishman*

это́ — мой сы́нъ = *this is my son*

whether the pause is made or not entirely depends on how much emphasis the speaker wishes to put in the subject of the sentence.

Notice the fact that the phrases *this is, that is, there are, those are*, are usually expressed by *это́* irrespective of the number and gender of the predicate, e.g.

это́ мои́ жена́ = *this is my wife*

это́ мои́ дѣ́ти = *these are my children*

unless of course special emphasis is laid on the pronoun, e.g.

тѣ́ кни́ги егó, а э́ти — мои́ = *those books are his, but these are mine.*

*Here is, here are* are often expressed by *вотъ*, e.g.

*вотъ мой домъ* = *here is my house*,

*вотъ* can also mean *over there is*; if very remote distance is pointed to *вонъ тамъ* can be used.

The 3rd sing. of the present is still very commonly used in certain cases, e.g.

*тó есть* = *that is (to say)*

*т. е.* = *i. e.*

Combined with *у* and a pronoun it is the commonest way of saying *have*, e.g.

*у мен́я есть* = *I have*

*у него́ есть* = *he has*

though as often as not in these cases the verb *есть* is omitted.

In shops, restaurants, &c., when asking a question, *есть* must be used, e.g.

Question :

*есть у васъ икра́* = *have you any caviare?*

Answer :

*есть* = *we have*,

the negative answer is always

*нѣтъ* or *нѣту* = *we have not*.

*Нѣтъ* is really a contraction of *не есть*, and has come to be the ordinary word for *no*; it also means *there is not* and thus *have not*, e.g.

*у мен́я нѣтъ* = *I have not*

*у мен́я нѣтъ отца́* = *I have no father*.

*То есть* is sometimes added the interrogative particle *-ли*, though *есть* by itself, if the voice is inflected accordingly, is quite sufficient to indicate the question.

*Есть-ли* is apt to sound like *если* (= *if*), and *если* is in fact a corruption of *есть-ли*.

*Нѣтъ-ли у васъ?* is also a very common way of saying *have you got?*

*Найдётся-ли у васъ?* from *найти́* (= *to find*) is also much used to express the same thing.

*Есть* is also used for *there is, there are* in such cases as :

*есть такіе люди, которые не любятъ икры́* = *there are such people, who don't like caviare*

есть многія вещи, о которыхъ я бы хотѣлъ съ вами поговорить =  
*there are many things about which I should like to talk to you*  
 въ этой книгѣ есть много хорошаго = *in this book there is much*  
*that is good.*

The 3rd sing. *есть* and the 3rd pl. *суть* are also used in emphatic declarations or definitions; it should be noted, however, that *суть* is very little used, and that *есть* can be used for any of the three persons singular or plural, e. g.

Тургеневъ любилъ русскихъ какъ они *есть* = *Turgenev loved the Russians as they are*

жизнь *есть* трудъ для будущаго поколѣнія = *life is labour for the next generation.*

Owing to the fact that *есть* is so seldom used, single adverbs acquire the meaning of whole sentences, e. g.

холодно	= <i>it is cold</i>
тепло	= <i>it is warm</i>
жарко	= <i>it is hot</i>
можно	= <i>it is possible</i>
надо	= <i>it is necessary</i>
мнѣ холодно	= <i>I am cold, &amp;c.</i>

The 3rd sing. of the present of *быва́ть*, the imperfective frequentative of *быть*, is often used :

это часто *быва́етъ* = *that often happens*

это никогда не *быва́етъ* = *that never happens*

онъ у насъ *быва́етъ* = *he sometimes comes to see us.*

The past tense of *быть* does not call for special mention. It is often used to express the idea of visits, e. g.

я *былъ* у нихъ вчера = *I went to see them yesterday.*

The neuter is often used impersonally :

тамъ было двадцать человѣкъ = *there were twenty people there.*

(For other uses of *было* and *бывало* cf. §§ 103, 104.)

The future *б́уду* presents no difficulties. Notice the idiom :

*б́удетъ!* = *enough!*

(For uses of the future, conditional, imperative, and infinitive of *быть* cf. §§ 104-107.)



§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and  
Perfective Verbs.

It has already been remarked that most perfective verbs are formed from imperfective verbs by prefixing a preposition to the latter, and that the preposition used for this purpose loses its meaning. It is impossible to tell which preposition in each particular case is used for the particular purpose of making the imperfective verb perfective, as various prepositions are thus used, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
смотреть	<i>to look</i>	посмотрѣть
писáть	<i>to write</i>	написáть
дѣлать	<i>to do</i>	сдѣлать
знать	<i>to know</i>	узнáть

and others.

The only thing that can be said is that *no* is used in an infinitely greater number of cases for this purpose than any other preposition. But it must be remembered that while one preposition merely makes the imperfective verb perfective and loses its own meaning, all the other prepositions when compounded with the same verb *both make the verb perfective and endow it at the same time with their own special meaning*. For instance :

разсмотрѣть	= <i>to examine closely</i>
приписáть	= <i>to ascribe, to add in writing</i>
передѣлать	= <i>to do over again, to alter.</i>

These verbs, as has been remarked, are perfective ; the imperfective verbs corresponding to them in meaning, i. e. compounded with the same preposition, are the so-called frequentative imperfective verbs, which form a subsidiary category of imperfective verbs. These verbs are frequentative (or iterative) for the most part only in name ; the large majority of them are quite ordinary imperfective verbs. Their peculiarity is that even when they are preceded by a preposition they do not, like other verbs, become perfective. They remain imperfective, forming the ordinary imperfective verb corresponding to a perfective verb which has been made perfective by having a preposition added to it and at the same time been altered in meaning by that preposition. These frequentative imperfective verbs are all formed by some alteration of the stem of the verb, either by lengthening it or by

altering the vowel which precedes the infinitive ending. These verbs seldom occur in their simple form, i. e. uncompounded with a preposition, but one or two are quite commonly used, e. g.

БЫВА́ТЬ (from БЫТЬ) = *to be often*

ЭТО БЫВА́ЕТЬ = *that sometimes happens*

Я У НИХЪ БЫВА́Ю = *I am in the habit of going to see them*

ГОВА́РИВАТЬ (from ГОВА́РИТЬ) = *to be in the habit of saying*

ОНЪ ТАКЪ ГОВА́РИВАЛЪ = *he often used to say so.*

Such verbs are really frequentative in meaning. But in the great majority of cases, i. e. when compounded with prepositions, they are merely ordinary imperfective verbs. They may have frequentative meaning, but this as a rule has to be specially expressed by the addition of some such word as *ча́сто* = *often*. E. g. *забыва́ть* is theoretically the frequentative imperfective from *забы́ть* (perfective) = *to forget*; *я забыва́ю* may mean *I often* (or *always*) *forget*, but on the other hand it may mean merely *I am forgetting*. Similarly *разговарива́ть* = *to converse* is theoretically a frequentative imperfective from *говори́ть*, but it may mean either *I converse* or *I am conversing*. For this reason it is better not to label these verbs *frequentative* or *iterative*, but to call them what they are in the great majority of cases, viz. *compound imperfective verbs*, in order to differentiate them effectively from the large number of imperfective verbs which are simple and from the perfective verbs the majority of which are compound, while some are simple.

It is now time to examine the various ways in which these compound imperfective verbs are formed.

In a large number of cases they are formed by the insertion of the syllable *-ыв-* or *-ив-* between the stem of the verb and the infinitive ending. Compound imperfectives from almost all verbs ending in *-ать* and from many others besides are formed thus and belong to this category. Verbs of this formation which in their original form contain the vowel *o* in their stems, usually, but not necessarily, change this to *a* in the compound imperfective. The verbs are here arranged in series of four, e. g.

1. *пыта́ть* = *to try* = simple imperfective.

2. *попыта́ть* = *to try* = compound perfective with loss of meaning by preposition.

3. *испытать* = *to experience* = compound perfective with retention of meaning by preposition.

4. *испытывать* = compound imperfective with retention of meaning by preposition. *It must of course not be imagined that the particular compound perfective, with retention of meaning by the preposition, is in each example here given the only compound perfective formed from that verb.* In the case of some verbs such compounds are very numerous; the examples here given are chosen at random, but they include only verbs that are commonly used:

*Imperfective.*

писáть	<i>to write</i>
приписывáть	<i>to ascribe</i>
дѣлáть	<i>to do</i>
передѣлывáть	<i>to alter</i>
смотрѣть	<i>to look</i>
разсмáтривáть	<i>to examine</i>
читáть	<i>to read</i>
прочитывáть	<i>to read through</i>
искáть	<i>to search</i>
взыскивáть	<i>to exact</i>
работáть	<i>to work</i>
зарабáтывать	<i>to earn</i>
слýшать	<i>to listen</i>
подслýшивать	<i>to overhear</i>
ломáть	<i>to break</i>
проламывáть	<i>to break through</i>
стрóить	<i>to build</i>
устрáивать	<i>to arrange</i>
смѣяться	<i>to laugh</i>
осмѣивáть	<i>to deride</i>
крáсть	<i>to steal</i>
обкράдывáть	<i>to rob</i>
тянýть	<i>to pull</i>
стягивáть	<i>to tighten, close</i>

*Perfective.*

написáть	
приписáть	
сдѣлáть	
передѣлáть	
посмотрѣть	
разсмотрѣть	
почитáть	
прочитáть	alternative verbs identical in meaning
прочѣсть	
поискáть	
взыскáть	
поработáть	
заработáть	
послýшать	
подслýшать	
сломáть	
проломáть	
пострóить	
устрóить	
засмѣяться	
осмѣять	
украсть	
обокрáсть	
потянýть	
стянýть	

Those verbs of class II, the 1st sing. of whose present is affected by the personal ending -ю (which changes into -у, cf. §§ 87, 88), are similarly affected in their compound imperfective forms, though no longer belonging to the same class, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
проси́ть	<i>to request</i>	попроси́ть
спра́шивать	<i>to ask (a question)</i>	спроси́ть
дави́ть	<i>to squash</i>	подави́ть
зада́вливать	<i>to throttle</i>	задави́ть

From a number of perfective verbs the compound imperfectives are formed by inserting -ва- between the stem and the infinitive ending, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
бíti	<i>to hit</i>	поби́ть
убива́ть	<i>to kill</i>	уби́ть
пѣти	<i>to sing</i>	спѣ́ть
запѣва́ть	<i>to strike up a song</i>	запѣ́ть
пíti	<i>to drink</i>	вы́пить
пропи́вать	<i>to spend on drink</i>	пропи́ть
кры́ть	<i>to cover</i>	покры́ть
раскры́вать	<i>to uncover, open, discover</i>	раскры́ть
мы́ть	<i>to wash (trans.)</i>	вы́мыть
умы́ваться	<i>to wash (intrans.)</i>	умы́ться

Notice especially the verbs (for other simple perfective verbs cf. § 114):

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
дава́ть	<i>to give</i>	да́ть
pres. даю́		pres. дамъ
дѣва́ть	<i>to put</i>	дѣ́ть
pres. дѣваю́		pres. дѣну́

and быва́ть = *to be often, to happen* (from быть = *to be*).

Some verbs of this category cannot be formed in complete series in this way, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
зна́ть	<i>to know</i>	узна́ть
узнава́ть	<i>to learn (news), to recognize</i>	

*Imperfective.*

 pres. узнаю  
узнаёшь

 — to take one's stand<sup>1</sup>

уставать to grow tired

pres. устаю

and many other very common compounds

болѣть to be ill

commonly used only as impersonal }

болѣть it aches

заболѣвать to fall ill

*Perfective.*

 pres. узнаю  
узнаёшь

стать

pres. стану

устать

pres. устану

заболѣть

Those verbs which, both in their imperfective and perfective aspects, have no preposition, i. e. do not require a preposition to form their perfective aspect, can of course also be compounded with any preposition in both aspects, the preposition always retaining its meaning, e. g.

*Imperfective.*

давать	to give
подавать	to hand, serve
продавать	to sell
придавать	to add
передавать	to hand over
пздавать	to edit, publish
раздавать	to distribute
воздавать	to reward
выдавать	to deliver
подаваться	to submit
сдавать	to deliver
создавать	to create
задавать	to set (e. g. questions)
додавать	to complete

*Perfective.*

дать
подать
продать
придать
передать
пздать
раздать
воздать
выдать
поддаться
сдать
создать
здать
додать

(N.B. Many of the compounds here given have other meanings besides those given here, and of course the same applies to other verbs.)

<sup>1</sup> For its other meanings cf. p. 214.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
дѣвѣть	<i>to put</i>	дѣть
одѣвѣть(ся)	<i>to dress</i>	одѣть(ся)
надѣвѣть	<i>to put on</i>	надѣть
раздѣвѣть(ся)	<i>to undress</i>	раздѣть(ся)
переодѣвѣть(ся)	<i>to change dress</i>	переодѣть(ся)
задѣвѣть	<i>to catch hold of</i>	задѣть
(-ставѣть)	<i>to take one's stand</i>	стать
переставѣть	<i>to cease</i>	перестать
заставѣть	<i>to find (sc. at home)</i>	застать
доставѣть	<i>to obtain</i>	достать
оставѣться	<i>to remain</i>	остаться
вставѣть	<i>to get up (sc. from bed)</i>	встать
разставѣться	<i>to part (intrans.)</i>	разстаться

Verbs with infinitives in -чь, -зть, -сти form their compound imperfectives by adding -ать to their stem, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
мочь	<i>to be able</i>	смочь
помогѣть	<i>to help</i>	помочь
влечь	<i>to drag</i>	повлечь
привлекѣть	<i>to attract</i>	привлечь

The verb ѣсть forms its compound imperfective as follows:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
ѣсть	<i>to eat</i>	поѣсть
сѣдѣть	<i>to eat up, consume</i>	сѣсть
надоѣдѣть(intrans.)	<i>to importune</i>	надоѣсть(intrans.)

The cognate verb *to dine*:

<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
обѣдать	{ пообѣдать отобѣдать

is from the noun обѣдъ = *dinner*.

Verbs of which the stem contains two adjacent consonants insert *ы* or *и* between these in the compound imperfective, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
слать <sup>1</sup>	<i>to send</i>	послать
pres. шлю		
высылать	<i>to banish</i>	выслать
жать	<i>to press</i>	пожать
pres. жму		
прижимать	<i>to squeeze</i>	прижать
звать	<i>to call</i>	позвать
pres. зову		
называть	<i>to name</i>	назвать
тереть	<i>to rub</i>	потереть
pres. тру		
обтирать	<i>to wipe</i>	обтереть
жечь	<i>to burn (trans.)</i>	сжечь
pres. жгу		
зажигать	<i>to light, kindle</i>	зажечь
ждать	<i>to wait</i>	
pres. жду	<i>to await</i>	
ожидать	<i>to expect</i>	
подкидывать	<i>to wait (for)</i>	подождать
дожидаться	{ <i>to attain by waiting</i> <i>to await until (arrival)</i> }	дождаться

There are several verbs of this kind which are never used except in composition, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
умирать	<i>to die</i>	умереть
		pres. умру
начинать	<i>to begin</i>	начать
		pres. начну

<sup>1</sup> This verb has an imperfective frequentative of its own, *посыловать* = *to send*.

The verb *-ять* (only used in composition with prepositions, cf. § 88) forms its compound imperfectives as follows:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
[ <i>-пмать</i> ]		[ <i>-ять</i> ]
<i>внимать</i>	<i>to attend, hear</i>	<i>внять</i> (pres. not used)
<i>занимать</i>	<i>to occupy, to borrow</i>	<i>занять</i>
		pres. <i>займý</i>
		<i>займёшь</i>
<i>нанимать</i>	<i>to hire</i>	<i>нанять</i>
		pres. <i>наймý, &amp;c.</i>
N.V. <i>понимать</i>	<i>to understand</i>	<i>понять</i>
		pres. <i>поймý</i>
		<i>поймёшь, &amp;c.</i>
<i>поднимать</i>	<i>to lift</i>	<i>поднять</i>
( <i>от подымать</i> )		pres. <i>поднимý</i>
		<i>поднимешь, &amp;c.</i>
<i>принимать</i>	<i>to accept</i>	<i>принять</i>
		pres. <i>примý</i>
		<i>примешь, &amp;c.</i>
<i>снимать</i>	<i>to take off (clothes)</i>	<i>снять</i>
	<i>to photograph</i>	pres. <i>снимý</i>
		<i>снимешь</i>
N.V. —	<i>to take</i>	<i>взять</i>
cf. § 117		pres. <i>возьмý</i>
[ <i>взимать = to levy money</i> ]		<i>возьмешь</i>
<i>поймать</i>	<i>to catch</i>	cf. § 117

In the case of this verb, the stems of which are *-пм-* and *-зм-*, the *н* between the preposition and the stem is explained by the fact that certain prepositions, e.g. *съ* and *въ*, originally ended in a nasal, which was dropped after such forms as *снять* had become crystallized. On the analogy of these forms, the *н* was inserted between the preposition and the stem in other compounds of this verb.

The pasts of all these perfectives are *зánялъ, заняла́, зánяло*; *зánяли*: *пóнять, поняла́, пóняло*; *пóняли, &c.*, i.e. they are, as to be expected, formed from the infinitive.



§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs.

Not all perfective verbs are compound. There is a fair number of simple verbs which are already perfective in themselves without the prefixing of any preposition.

Such verbs are

дать = *to give*

дѣть = *to put*

стать = *to take one's stand, to become, to begin.*

Besides these there are two categories of simple verbs which are perfective; the first contains verbs of various classes, most of them very common:

*Imperfective.*

бросать	<i>to throw</i>
кончать	<i>to finish</i>
ложиться	<i>to lie down</i>
лишать	<i>to deprive</i>
падать	<i>to fall</i>
прощать	<i>to forgive</i>
———ся	<i>to say good-bye</i>
пускать	<i>to let (go)</i>
рѣшать	<i>to decide</i>
скакать	<i>to leap</i>
становиться	<i>to become</i>
ступать	<i>to step</i>
садиться	<i>to sit down</i>
хватать	<i>to seize</i>
являться	<i>to appear</i>

*Perfective.*

бросить
кончить
лечь
лишить
пасть
простить
———ся
пустить
рѣшить
скочить
стать
ступить
сѣсть
хватить
явиться

Of one verb the imperfective aspect is compounded with a preposition, while the perfective aspect is a simple verb, viz.

покупать	<i>to buy</i>	купить
----------	---------------	--------

These verbs being perfective when they are simple, are none the less perfective when compounded with a preposition. Of the corresponding simple imperfective verbs, some when compounded with a preposition become perfective and require the formation of a compound imperfective, others remain imperfective.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
ступать	<i>to step</i>	ступитъ
поступать	{ <i>to enter (an institution)</i> <i>to behave</i> }	поступитъ
рѣшать	<i>to decide</i>	рѣшитъ
разрѣшать	<i>to permit</i>	разрѣшитъ
являться	<i>to appear</i>	явится
объявлять	<i>to declare</i>	объявитъ
	but	
бросать	<i>to throw</i>	броситъ
выбрасывать	<i>to throw out</i>	{ выброситъ выбросать }
становиться	<i>to become</i>	станетъ
останавливаться	<i>to stop</i>	остановится
садиться	<i>to sit down</i>	сѣдетъ
пересаживаться	<i>to change trains</i>	пересѣдетъ

The other category contains a number of verbs ending in -нуть, which by means of this ending connote a single (definitive, perfective) action, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
глядѣть	<i>to look</i>	глянутъ
двигать	<i>to move (trans.)</i>	двинутъ
кричать	<i>to cry out</i>	крикнутъ
кидать	<i>to fling</i>	кинутъ
махать	<i>to wave</i>	махнутъ
плевать	<i>to spit</i>	плюнутъ
совать	<i>to shove</i>	сунутъ
трогать	<i>to touch</i>	тронутъ
шептать	<i>to whisper</i>	шепнутъ

It is important not to confuse these with other simple verbs ending in -нуть which are imperfective, e. g. тянуть = *to pull*, which are made perfective in the ordinary way, viz. by prefixing a preposition, потянуть, крѣпнуть = *to grow strong*, compound perfective окрѣпнуть. These verbs in -нуть being perfective are naturally also perfective when compounded with a preposition; the corresponding simple imperfective verbs are usually lengthened by the already familiar process (insertion of -ыв- or -ив-) to form the corresponding compound imperfective, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
глядѣть	<i>to look</i>	гляну́ть <sup>1</sup>
взглядыва́ть	<i>to look up</i>	взгляну́ть
совáть	<i>to shove</i>	су́нуть
высо́вывать	<i>to shove out</i>	высу́нуть
трога́ть	<i>to touch</i>	трону́ть
дотро́гиваться	<i>to come into (physical) contact with</i>	дотро́нуться
крича́ть	<i>to cry out</i>	крикну́ть
вскри́кивать	<i>to scream</i>	вскри́кнуть
<b>Notice</b>		
кида́ть	<i>to fling</i>	кину́ть
прики́дываться	<i>to pretend to be but</i>	прики́нуться
покида́ть	<i>to abandon</i>	покину́ть
and		
висѣ́ть	<i>to hang (intrans.)</i>	повисну́ть

Some verbs only used in composition with prepositions cannot be formed in complete series, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
обма́нывать	<i>to deceive</i>	обману́ть
вздыха́ть	<i>to sigh</i>	вздохну́ть
псчезáть	<i>to disappear</i>	псчезну́ть
привыка́ть	<i>to grow accustomed to</i>	привы́кнуть
отвыка́ть	<i>to disaccustom oneself to</i>	отвы́кнуть

### § 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs.

Conversely not all compound verbs are perfective. We have already seen that the prefixing of a preposition does not necessarily make a verb perfective, e. g. разговáривать = *to converse*, убивáть = *to kill*, покупáть = *to buy*, поступа́ть = *to behave*. Besides these there is a very large number of compound imperfective verbs which form a class by themselves. These correspond in meaning to a series of compound perfective verbs ending mostly

<sup>1</sup> A perfective verb поглядѣть also exists.

in -ТЬ or -ЪТЬ and belonging to class II. The corresponding compound imperfectives are formed not by lengthening the root with additional syllables, but by altering the infinitive ending from -ТЬ or -ЪТЬ to -ЯТЬ, thus making them verbs of class I. In the course of this alteration the phonetic changes observable in the 1st sing. of the present of verbs of class II (palatalization of the last consonant of the stem and substitution of the ending -у for -ю, e. g. вижу from видѣть, or insertion of л, e. g. люблю from любѣть) are reproduced throughout the whole of the compound imperfective owing to the influence of the palatal vowel я, which in certain cases becomes а (i. e. -ЯТЬ, &c., become -АТЬ, &c.).

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
встрѣчать	<i>to meet</i>	встрѣтить
воображать	<i>to imagine</i>	вообразить
выражать	<i>to express</i>	выразить
навѣщать	<i>to visit</i>	навѣстить
объяснять	<i>to explain</i>	объяснить
ошибаться	<i>to be mistaken</i>	ошибиться
отвѣчать	<i>to answer</i>	отвѣтить
перемѣнять	<i>to change</i>	перемѣнить
повторять	<i>to repeat</i>	повторить
получать	<i>to receive</i>	получить
позволять	<i>to permit</i>	позволить
посѣщать	<i>to visit</i>	посѣтить
ударять	<i>to strike (trans.)</i>	ударить
убѣждать	<i>to convince</i>	убѣдить
употреблять	<i>to use</i>	употребить
Notice вѣшать	<i>to hang (trans.)</i>	повѣсить
	and many others.	

In the case of a few verbs which are used in their simple forms it is possible to form the already familiar complete series of four, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
ставить	<i>to put</i>	поставить
оставлять	<i>to leave</i>	оставить

and many other very common compounds.



or habit. The former are called *actual simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *concrete*), the latter *potential simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *abstract*). A good example is the verb *to go* (sc. *on foot*); to express this there are two distinct imperfective verbs:

1. идти (sometimes spelt идти́)
2. ходить.

The first means *actually to go* or *to be going*, the second *potentially to go* or *to be in the habit of going*. Examples:

куда вы идёте? = *where are you going?* (sc. now)

ходите-ли вы въ теа́тръ? = *do you go to the theatre?* (sc. ever or often)

я иду гуля́ть = *I am going for a walk*

я уже хожу́ = *I can now walk* (sc. after an illness).

The verb *to fly* is:

1. летѣть
2. летать

вотъ летитъ аэроплáнь! = *there is an aeroplane flying!*

птицы летáютъ = *birds fly.*

The verb *to carry* is:

1. нести́
2. носить

почтальо́нь несётъ вамъ письмó = *the postman is bringing you a letter*

я всегда ношу́ кало́ши = *I always wear galoshes.*

These verbs are the following:

		<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
inf.		блестѣть	<i>to shine</i>	блистáть
pres.	{	блещу́		блистаю́
		блести́шь		блиста́ешь
inf.		бѣжать	<i>to run</i>	бѣга́ть
pres.	{	бѣгу́		бѣгаю́
		бѣжи́шь		бѣга́ешь
inf.		везти́	<i>to convey</i>	вози́ть
pres.	{	везу́		вожу́
		везёшь		вози́шь

	<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
inf.	вести́	<i>to lead</i>	води́ть
pres.	{ веду́		вожу́
	{ ведёшь		водишь
	гнать	<i>to drive, chase</i>	гоня́ть
	гони́ю		гоняю
	гони́шь		&c.
	идти́	<i>to go (on foot)</i>	ходи́ть
	иду́		хожу́
	идёшь		ходишь
	летѣ́ть	<i>to fly</i>	лѣта́ть
	лечу́		летаю
	лети́шь		&c.
	ломить	<i>to break</i>	лома́ть
	ломлю́		ломаю
	лони́шь		&c.
	лѣзть	<i>to climb, clamber</i>	ла́зить
	лѣзу		лажу
	лѣзешь		лазишь
	нести́	<i>to carry, bear</i>	носи́ть ( <i>to wear</i> )
	несу́		ношу́
	несёшь		носишь
	плыть	<i>to float, swim</i>	пла́вать ( <i>to swim</i> )
	плыву́		плаваю
	плывёшь		&c.
	ползти́	<i>to crawl</i>	по́лзать
	ползу́		ползаю
	ползёшь		&c.
	сади́ть	<i>to set, plant</i>	сажа́ть
	сажу́		сажаю
	сади́шь		&c.
	ѣхать	<i>to go (in any way</i>	ѣзди́ть
	ѣду	<i>except on foot, e. g.</i>	ѣзжу
	ѣдешь	<i>by train or on horseback)</i>	ѣдишь

Two verbs belonging to this category are defective, viz.

<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
ВІДѢТЬ	<i>to see</i>	ВІДАТЬ
ВІБКУ		
ВІДИШЬ (sometimes contracted to ВИШЬ)		
СЛЫШАТЬ	<i>to hear</i>	СЛЫХАТЬ
СЛЫШУ		
СЛЫШИШЬ		

The presents of the potential imperfectives of these verbs are not used; the infinitives and the pasts are, on the other hand, quite common, especially in negations and interrogations, e.g.

ЕГО НЕ ВИДАТЬ = *he is not to be seen* (sc. *I can't see him*)

СЛЫХАЛИ-ЛИ ВЫ ЭТОГО ПѢВЦА? = *have you ever heard this singer?*

When these verbs are compounded with prepositions it is usually the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with loss of meaning by the preposition, though such are also sometimes formed by the *potential imperfective*. It is also the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition. On the other hand, it is the *potential imperfective* which forms the *compound imperfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
летѣть (actual)	<i>to fly</i>	полетѣть
летать (potential)		
перелетать	<i>to fly over</i>	перелетѣть
весті	<i>to lead</i>	повесті
водіть		
проводіть	{ <i>to lead through</i> } { <i>to spend (time)</i> }	провесті
везті	<i>to convey</i>	повезті
возіть		
привозіть	<i>to bring (in a conveyance)</i>	привезті



*Imperfective.*

нести́	<i>to carry</i>
носить	<i>to wear</i>
приносить	<i>to bring (by hand)</i>
идти́	<i>to go (on foot)</i>
ходить	
приходить	<i>to come (on foot)</i>
находить	<i>to find</i>
проходить	<i>to pass</i>

*Perfective.*

понести́
поносить <sup>1</sup>
принести́
пойти́
сходить <sup>2</sup>
прійти́ (or придти́)
найти́
пройти́

Needless to say, both forms of all these verbs have many other compounds besides those given here.

The two verbs видеть and слышать have the following perfectives:

*Imperfective.*

видѣть	<i>to see</i>
видать	
слышать	<i>to hear</i>
слыхать	

*Perfective.*

увидѣть
увидать
услышать
услыхать

The presents of увидѣть and услышать are very common, being the ordinary (perfective) futures of видѣть and слышать, e. g.

я уви́жу его́ за́втра = *I shall see him to-morrow.*

The presents of увидать and услыхать are never used. Their pasts on the other hand are quite common, and it is to be noticed that there is no essential difference in meaning between

увидать and увидѣль

<sup>1</sup> This verb is seldom used, the perfective future of нести́ (without idea of any particular direction) is понести́; from носить (which usually, but not always, means *to wear*) the imperfective future is naturally буду носить, while *I shall wear* (= *I shall put on*) is надѣну from надѣть.

<sup>2</sup> сходить has a special meaning, viz. *to go, with the implication of speedy return*, e. g.

я схожѹ на почту́ = *I shall just run round to the post (and shall be back soon).*

There is also an imperfective verb сходить (perfective сойти́) = *to come or go off*, e. g.

онъ сходитъ съ умá = *he is going off his head*  
сходятся, сойтисъ = *to foregather.*

or between

услыхать and услышать.

Notice the compounds:

*Imperfective.*

завидовать

ненавидѣть

предвидѣть

*to envy*

*to hate*

*to foresee*

*Perfective.*

позавидовать

возненавидѣть

(only imperfective).

Two verbs deserve special mention, viz. бѣжать and ѣхать; these form their compound perfectives from the actual imperfective, but the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the potential imperfective but from yet a third imperfective form of the word, only used in composition:

*Imperfective.*

бѣжать

бѣгать

перебѣгать

избѣгать

убѣгать

прибѣгать

ѣхать<sup>1</sup>

ѣздить

приѣзжать

уѣзжать

*to run*

*to run across*

*to avoid*

*to run away*

{ *to run to*  
*to have recourse to*

*to go (except on foot)*

*to arrive*

*to depart*

*Perfective.*

побѣжать

побѣгать

перебѣжать

{ избѣжать and  
избѣгнуть

убѣжать

прибѣжать

прибѣгнуть

поѣхать

съѣздить<sup>2</sup>

приѣхать

уѣхать

плыть and лѣзть have the same peculiarity, forming their compound imperfectives not with the verbs плáвать and лáзить but with -плывáть and -лѣзáть; they are not given in full here, because they are of much less common occurrence.

<sup>1</sup> ѣхать and ѣздить form parallels to идти and ходѣть, e. g.

я ѣду въ Лондонъ = *I am travelling to London*

я каждый годъ ѣзжу въ Россію = *I travel to Russia every year.*

<sup>2</sup> съѣздить forms a parallel to сходить and means *to take a journey and come back soon*, e. g.

вчера мы съѣздили къ знакомымъ = *yesterday we drove to see some acquaintances (sc. we didn't stay long or we came home again the same day).*

It has already been mentioned that the *potential imperfectives* are not often used to form the *compound perfectives*, but usually to form the *compound imperfectives*, e. g. *перелетать, проводить, &c.* But we have seen that they can be so used, e. g. *сходить, съездить*. Besides these there are, however, numerous instances of the use of the *potential imperfectives* to form a *compound perfective*; in such cases the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the actual imperfective but by the already familiar process of the insertion of *-ыв-* or *-ив-*, or by some other alternative form. It is to be noticed that several potential imperfectives which are in themselves intransitive become transitive when they enter this category of compound perfectives. For the sake of lucidity the verbs are repeated in full :

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
нести	<i>to carry</i>	понести
носить	<i>to wear</i>	поносить
приносить	<i>to bring (by hand)</i>	принести
изнашивать	<i>to wear out (materials, clothes)</i>	износить
notice also		
выносить	<i>to carry out, to endure</i>	внести
вынашивать	<i>to wear out (clothes)</i>	внести
вести	<i>to lead</i>	повести
водить		
проводить	<i>to spend (time)</i>	провести
проводать	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{to accompany (walking)} \\ \textit{to see off (at station)} \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \right\}$ проводить
идти	<i>to go (on foot)</i>	пойти
ходить		сходить
уходить	<i>to go away</i>	уйти
ухаживать <sup>1</sup>		уходить <sup>2</sup>
ѣхать	<i>to go (except on foot)</i>	поѣхать
ѣздить		съездить
разъѣзжаться	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{to depart in different directions} \\ \textit{to miss one another on the road} \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \right\}$ разъѣхаться
разъѣживать	<i>to wear out (the road with traffic)</i>	разъездить

<sup>1</sup> = *to flirt with* or *to nurse*; construction : за + instrumental.

<sup>2</sup> = *to waste (money), to wear out (a horse)*.

and somewhat anomalously

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
изъѣзжать	{ <i>to travel over all parts of, visit</i> <i>exhaustively</i>	изъѣздить

Notice the causative verbs:

расти	<i>to grow (intrans.)</i>	вырасти
выращать	<i>to make grow</i>	вырастить
and	поить = <i>to water (animals)</i>	
from	пить = <i>to drink.</i>	

### § 117. Anomalous Verbs.

A few simple imperfective verbs have as compound perfectives corresponding to them in meaning verbs from other stems; these are:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
брать	<i>to take</i>	взять
pres. беру́		pres. возьму́
берёшь		возьмёшь
бить	<i>to hit</i>	ударить
pres. бью́		pres. ударю́
бьёшь		ударишь
класть	<i>to put</i>	положить
pres. кладу́		pres. положу́
кладёшь		положишь
ловить	<i>to catch</i>	поймать
pres. ловлю́		pres. поймаю́
ловишь		поймаёшь
говорить	<i>to say, tell</i>	сказать
pres. говорю́		pres. скажу́
говоришь		скажешь

Several of these verbs have compound perfectives or imperfectives formed from the same stem as well as those given here, but it has so happened that e. g. the verb сказать has come to be the regular perfective corresponding in meaning to говорить; there is a perfective verb поговорить, but it means *to have a little talk*, while

сказáть and говорíть both mean *to say* or *tell* (говорíть can also mean *to talk*). It is thus possible to form fuller though incomplete series of these verbs, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>			<i>Perfective.</i>	
брать	= <i>to take</i>	←	собрáть	= <i>to collect</i>
собира́ть	= <i>to collect</i>		→	взять
взима́ть	= <i>to levy money</i>			= <i>to take</i>
бить	= <i>to hit</i>	←	поби́ть	= <i>to hit a little</i>
убивáть	= <i>to kill</i>		→	уби́ть
ударíть	= <i>to hit</i>			= <i>to hit</i>
класть	= <i>to put</i>	←	уложи́ть	= <i>to pack (trans.)</i>
укладывáть	= <i>to pack (trans.)</i>		→	_____ся
_____ся	= „ <i>(intrans.)</i>			= „ <i>(intrans.)</i>
полага́ть	= <i>to suppose</i>		→	положи́ть
				= <i>to put to suppose</i>

Notice the idioms :

полага́ется? = *is it included (in the price)?*

поло́жимъ = *let us suppose*

ловíть	= <i>to catch</i>	←	налови́ть	= <i>to catch a lot</i>
налавли́вать	= <i>to catch a lot</i>		→	пойма́ть
				= <i>to catch</i>
				<i>Cf. the cognate verb</i>
понима́ть	= <i>to understand</i>		пони́ть	= <i>to understand</i>
говорíть	= <i>to say, tell, talk</i>	←	поговорíть	= <i>to talk a little</i>
разговáривать	= <i>to converse</i>		→	уговори́ть
уговáривать	= <i>to try to persuade</i>			= <i>to persuade</i>
отговáривать	= <i>to try to dissuade</i>		→	отговори́ть
отказывáть(ся)	= <i>to refuse</i>			= <i>to dissuade</i>
указывáть	= <i>to point out</i>		→	отказáть(ся)
оказывáться	= <i>to turn out to be</i>			= <i>to refuse</i>
приказывáть	= <i>to order</i>		→	указáть
заказывáть	= „			= <i>to point out</i>
наказывáть	= <i>to punish</i>		→	оказáться
доказывáть	= <i>to prove</i>			= <i>to turn out to be</i>
показывáть	= <i>to show</i>		→	приказáть
разсказывáть	= <i>to relate</i>			= <i>to order</i>
сказывáть	= „		→	заказáть
				= <i>to „ , register</i>
			→	наказáть
				= <i>to punish</i>
			→	доказáть
				= <i>to prove</i>
			→	показáть
				= <i>to show</i>
			→	разсказáть
				= <i>to relate</i>
			→	сказáть
				= <i>to tell, say</i>

*Imperfective.**Perfective.*

[Cf. *ка́жется* = { *it seems*,  
sc. *I think*

*каза́лось* = *it seemed*

*показа́лось* = *it seemed*]

Certain verbs are only perfective, e. g.

*очути́ться* = *to find oneself suddenly anywhere*

*очну́ться* = *to wake up anywhere*

*состо́иться* = *to take place.*

Others are only imperfective, e. g.

*зави́сѣть* = *to depend*

*значи́ть* = *to mean*

*недоумѣва́ть* = *to be perplexed,*  
*to hesitate*

*нужда́ться* = *to need*

*повиновáться* = *to submit to*

*подлежа́ть* = *to be open to* (e. g.  
*doubt*)

*подража́ть* = *to imitate*

*покрови́тельствова́ть* = *to protect*

*предсто́ять* = *to be imminent*

*предчу́вствовати́* = *to have a pre-*  
*sentiment of*

*преслѣ́довать* = *to persecute*

*принадлежа́ть* = *to belong*

*содержáть* = *to contain, maintain*

*содѣ́йствовати́* = *to help, contri-*  
*bute to (morally)*

*сожалѣ́ть* = *to regret*

*состо́ять* = *to consist*

*сочу́вствовати́* = *to sympathize*

*сто́ить* = *to cost*

Others can be used as imperfectives or perfectives, having only the one form, e. g.

*велѣ́ть* = *to order, command*

*жени́ться* = *to marry (of the man only)*

*ра́нить* = *to wound.*

Some verbs, apparently perfective, are derived from compound nouns, e. g.

*Imperfective.**Perfective.*

*разумѣ́тся* *it is understood*  
(*ра́зумъ*)

*забо́титься* *to trouble about anything*  
(*забо́та*)

*наслѣ́довать* *to inherit*  
(*наслѣ́дникъ*)

*позабо́титься*

*унаслѣ́довать*

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION WITH VERBS, NOUNS, ETC.

§ 118. The following is not intended to be a complete list of all the various meanings acquired or lent by prepositions in composition ; such a list to be exhaustive would require a whole book to itself.

Here only some of the most important varieties of meaning are given as a help to the beginner, who is often puzzled by the apparently numberless compound words. It is important to remember that most of the prepositions can be used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb. Also that in many cases besides this the original meaning of the preposition is barely apparent. In beginning to read Russian it is always helpful to cut off the preposition or prepositions of any unfamiliar compound word, when the root (and the meaning) will often become clear.

There are five prepositions which are only used in composition, viz. *воз-, вы-, низ-, пере- (пре-), and раз-*.

### ВОЗ- (ВЗ-)

The meaning is originally *up*, e. g.

*воздвигать* ipfv. = *to erect*

but this often lapses, e. g.

*возражать* ipfv. = *to reply*

*возразить* pfv. = „

sometimes it merely forms the perfective :

*возненавидеть* pfv. = *to conceive hatred for*

*возможно* = *it is possible.*

When the word with which it is compounded begins with a vowel it sometimes, though by no means always, contracts to *вз-*, e. g.

*взойти* pfv. = *to rise (of the sun, &c.)*

*взять* pfv. = *to take*

but *pres. возьмý* = *I shall take*

*взморье* = *deep water (at sea, as opposed to the shallow water of an estuary).*

If the word with which it is compounded begins with к, х, п, т, it becomes *вос-*, e. g.

восхóдь сóлнца	= sunrise
востóкъ	= the East
Воскресéние	= Sunday (Resurrection)
воспрещáть ipfv.	} = to forbid
воспретáть pfv.	

it sometimes appears as *вс-* before words beginning with these same consonants :

всхóдить ipfv.	= to rise
вскричáть pfv.	= to scream.

Care must be taken not to mistake *воз-* for *въ* in composition with words beginning with з, с.

### ВЫ-

usually = *out*, e. g.

выхóдить ipfv.	= to go out (on foot)
выйтí pfv.	= " "
выхóдь	= exit
выставка	= exhibition

it sometimes means *thoroughly*

высѣкáть } высѣчь }	} = to thrash thoroughly
выздоровѣть pfv.	

sometimes merely to form the perfective

вы́пить pfv.	= to drink (sc. to drink to the end)
--------------	--------------------------------------

in composition with *нести* and *носить* cf. § 116.

A peculiarity of this preposition in composition with verbs is that when it makes the verb compounded with it perfective it attracts and holds the accent throughout, while if the compound verb is imperfective the accent remains on the stem of the verb, e. g.

выражáть ipfv.	} = to express
выразитъ pfv.	

*Imperfective.*

выѣзжáть	to drive out
выѣзживáть	to break in horses

*Perfective.*

выѣхáть
выѣздитъ

Cf. also in composition with *нести* and *носить* § 116.



**низ-**= *down*

низверга́ть ipfv. }  
 низвергну́ть pfv. } = *to cast down, to abase.*

**пере-**generally = *over, across, afresh*

переходи́ть ipfv. }  
 перейти́ pfv. } = *to cross on foot*

переѣзжа́ть ipfv. } = *to cross (by boat or rail)*  
 переѣхатъ pfv. } *to move (into a new house)*

переме́на = *change (e. g. in the weather)*переши́ска = *correspondence*перевозо́в = *ferry*переводо́в = *translation*перевало́в = *watershed*

It can imply excess :

пересоли́ть = *to over-salt.*

Another form of this preposition is

**пре-**which is also used to express the ideas *round, over, or across.*

претвори́ть ipfv. }  
 претвори́ть pfv. } = *to transform, convert*

предава́ть ipfv. }  
 предатъ pfv. } = *to hand over to, to betray*

прѣданны́й = *devoted*преступле́ние = *transgression, crime*препятствіе = *obstacle*прѣды́ть = *boundary, region*превыша́ть ipfv. = *to surpass (trans.)*презира́ть ipfv. = *to despise*

прерыва́ть ipfv. }  
 прерва́ть pfv. } = *to interrupt*

преиму́щество = *advantage*Notice непреме́нно = *without fail.*

In composition with other prepositions :

превосходить ipfv. } = *to excel*  
 превзойти pfv. }  
 превосходительство = *Excellency*  
 превосходно! = *excellent!*  
 преподавать ipfv. } = *to teach, lecture on.*  
 преподать pfv. }

In composition with adjectives it lends superlative meaning, e. g.

прекрасный = *very beautiful, splendid*

(the original meaning of красивый was *bright*) cf. § 59.

### раз-

usually = *asunder, dis-, di-*

разводъ = *divorce*  
 разменить pfv. = *to change (money)*  
 размеръ = *dimension*  
 раздѣлѣть ipfv. } = *to divide, distribute*  
 раздѣлѣть pfv. }  
 разбивать ipfv. } = *to break (e.g. glass or china).*  
 разбить pfv. }

It can also as it were *amplify* any activity, e. g.

разговаривать ipfv. = *to converse*  
 разговоръ = *conversation*  
 рассказывать ipfv. } = *to narrate*  
 рассказать pfv. }  
 рассказъ = *a tale*  
 развратъ = *depravity*  
 разводить ipfv. = *to breed.*

It often corresponds to our *un-*:

раздѣваться ipfv. } = *to undress oneself*  
 раздѣться pfv. }  
 развитіе = *development (lit. unwinding)*  
 развалины = *ruins*  
 разстраивать ipfv. } = *to unsettle, upset (morally).*  
 разстроить pfv. }

It sometimes means *quite*, e. g.

я не разслышала = *I didn't quite hear.*

Notice the following :

умъ = *mind*

разумъ = *intellect*

умный = *clever*

разумный = *sensible (with common sense)*

разсчётъ = *calculation*

разсѣянный = *absent-minded.*

The *ъ* is retained before palatal vowels, e. g.

разъѣхаться pfv. = *to break up (of a party).*

When *и* follows it becomes *ы*, e. g.

разыскать from разъ + искать.

Before *к, х, п, т, ц, ч, ш, щ* раз- becomes рас-

расходы = *expenses.*

Occasionally, usually when the accent falls on it, раз- becomes роз-, e. g.

розлить, розлила = *to pour out (tea), to spill*

alternative past of разлить pfv., the other being разлить, &c.

рописание поѣздѡвъ = *time-table of trains (on the wall).*

In composition with other prepositions :

распродажа = *sale (in shops)*

расположеніе = *disposition, temperament*

распоряженіе = *disposition (control), arrangement*

распространеніе = *propagation.*

The other prepositions used in composition are :

### БЕЗЪ

= (*without*), *dis-, un-* (this never changes to бес-)

безпокоить ipfv. } = *to disturb*  
 обезпокоить pfv. }

безусловно = *unconditionally, absolutely*

безкорыстный = *disinterested*

безпокойный = *anxious*

безобразный = *horrible, disgraceful (lit. having no pattern, sc. unlike anything).*

When **и** follows it becomes **ы**:

БЕЗЫМѢННЫЙ = *nameless*  
(БЕЗЪ + ИМЯ).

**ВЪ (ВО)**

= *in, into*

ВХОДИТЬ (ВЪ) ipfv. } = *to enter*  
ВОЙТИ (ВЪ) pfv. }  
ВХОДЪ = *entrance*

ВВОДИТЬ ipfv. } = *to introduce (e. g. a custom)*  
ВВЕСТИ pfv. }

ВЛЮБИТЬСЯ (ВЪ) pfv. = *to fall in love with*

ВКЛЮЧИТЕЛЬНО = *inclusively.*

**Notice**

ВСТАВАТЬ ipfv. } = *to get up (from bed)*  
ВСТАТЬ pfv. }

ВНИМАНИЕ = *attention.*

The **ъ** is retained before soft vowels, e. g.

ВЪѢХАТЬ pfv. = *to ride or drive into.*

**ДО**

= *up to, to the end, pre-*

ДОХОДИТЬ (ДО) ipfv. } = *to reach (on foot)*  
ДОЙТИ (ДО) pfv. }

ДОѢХАТЬ (ДО) pfv. = *to reach (except on foot)*

ДОХОДЪ = *income*

ДОГОВОРЪ = *treaty*

ДОКАЗАТЕЛЬСТВО = *proof*

ДОПОТОПНЫЙ = *antediluvian*

ДОКЛАДЪ = *lecture (on anything)*

ДОСТАТЬ = *to obtain.*

**ЗА**

= *behind*

ЗАХОДЪ СОЛНЦА = *sunset*

ЗАКАТЬ „ „

It has many uses not obviously though indirectly connected with this meaning :

заходить къ ipfv. } = to call on, look in on  
зайти къ pfv. }

задержка = delay

заложить = to mortgage

закладъ = pledge, wager

заказъ = order (for anything, e. g. goods)

заказное письмо = registered letter

заплатить pfv. = to pay

(платить ipfv.)

заставлять ipfv. } = to compel  
заставить pfv. }

заставать ipfv. } = to find (any one, e. g. at home)  
застать pfv. }

за often gives the meaning: to start doing anything, e. g.

засмѣяться = to break into laughter

which is the perfective of

смѣяться = to laugh

запѣть pfv. = to burst into song

заговорить pfv. = to start talking.

With a reflexive verb it can mean to forget oneself, be lost in doing anything :

зачитаться pfv. = to read till you lose sense of time and place.

### ИЗЪ (ИЗО)

= out

издавать ipfv. } = to edit, publish  
издать pfv. }

издание = edition, publication

изложѣние = exposition.

The ъ is retained before soft vowels, e. g.

изъясненіе = explanation.

When и follows it becomes ы, e. g.

изысканный = exquisite, far-fetched.

Before *к, х, п, т, ч, ц* it becomes *ис-* :

*исходъ* = *issue* (out of a difficulty)

*исполнить* ipfv. }  
*исполнить* pfv. } = *to fulfil*

*исключёние* = *exception*

*исключительно* = *exclusively*.

### между

= *inter-* (but never with verbs)

*международный* = *international*.

### на

= *on to*

*находить* ipfv. }  
*найти* pfv. } = *to find* (to come upon)

*надёжда* = *hope* (something put on)

*надѣяться* = *to hope*.

### Notice

*наслѣдникъ* = *heir*

*на́сморкъ* = *cold* (in the head)

*нау́ка* = *science*

*наро́дъ* = *people, nation*

*на́ложеннымъ платёжёмъ* = *pay on delivery*

*насто́ящій* = *present, actual, real*

*наступа́ющій* = *coming, imminent*

*наме́рение* = *intention*.

Often with the meaning of *to do anything to the full, or largely*

*наѣ́сться* pfv. = *to eat one's fill*

*наку́пить* pfv. = *to buy a quantity of*

*наслажда́ться* ipfv. = *to enjoy oneself*

*начи́танный* = *well-read*.

Preceded by a negative it expresses the idea *not to be able to have enough of*

*ненагла́дный* = *that one cannot feast one's eyes on long enough*

*ненасы́тный* = *insatiable*.

**НАДЪ**= *over*на́дпись = *inscription*принадлежа́ть ipfv. = *to belong.***О (ОБ- ОБО)**= *about*

обходи́ть ipfv. }	} = <i>to go round</i>
обойти́ pfv. }	

необходи́мый = *essential*

обду́мывать ipfv. }	} = <i>to think over</i>
обду́мать pfv. }	

ошн́бка = *mistake (= missing the mark).*

This meaning is often not apparent :

обижа́ть ipfv. }	} = <i>to offend (lit. look round)</i>
обидѣ́ть pfv. }	

опеча́тка = *misprint*огово́рка = *reserve, limitation*обѣ́дь = *dinner*огоро́дь = *kitchen-garden.*The **ъ** is retained before a palatal vowel, e. g.объясне́ние = *explanation.*When **н** follows it becomes **н**, e. g.обыска́тъ = *inquiry, search.***ОТЪ (ОТО)**= *away from*

отходи́ть (отъ) ipfv. }	} = <i>to go away from</i>
отойти́ (отъ) pfv. }	

о́тпель = *a thaw*отли́чно! = *excellent!*отрѣ́зать = *to cut off*sometimes ото- as in отосла́тъ = *to send away.*The **ъ** is retained before soft vowels, e. g.отѣ́здъ = *departure.*When **н** follows it becomes **н**, e. g.отыска́тъ = *to find by dint of searching.*

## ПО

The commonest use is to make imperfective verbs perfective ; in doing so it usually connotes that the action will be of less duration or of less importance than that expressed by the simple imperfective verb, e. g.

поговорить	= to talk a little
потанцовать	= to dance a little
посмеяться	= to laugh a little.

But in a large number of cases it has lost all trace of its original meaning, e. g.

посылать ipfv.	} = to send
послать pfv.	
получать ipfv.	} = to receive
получить pfv.	
посещать ipfv.	} = to visit.
посетить pfv.	

Notice the following very common words, all compounded with по:

походъ	= campaign
похожь (па)	= like (adj.)
похороны	= funeral
постель	= bed (specifically bedding)
поступокъ	= act, behaviour
посуда	= crockery
потеря	= loss
подержанный	= second-hand
послѣ	= after
послѣдній	= last
послѣдствіе	= consequence
послѣдовать (за) pfv.	= to follow after

and hundreds of others.

<b>Cf.</b> слѣдующій	= next
вслѣдствіе + acc.	= as a result of
слѣдовать (за) ipfv.	= to follow after
слѣдить (за) ipfv.	= to follow.



**подъ (подо-)**= *under*

подходить (къ) ipfv. } = *to approach*  
 подойти (къ) pfv. }

поднимать } ipfv. } = *to lift*  
 or подымать } pfv. }

поддѣльный = *counterfeit*подходящій = *suitable*поддѣрка = *support*поджигательство = *incendiarism*подозрѣвать ipfv. = *to suspect*подозрительный = *suspicious*.

The *ъ* is retained before soft vowels, e.g.

подъѣздъ = *porch, entrance*.

When *и* follows it becomes *ы*, e.g.

подыскать = *to match (e.g. colours), assort*.**(передъ)****пред-**= *fore (fore-), pre-*

предсказывать ipfv. } = *to foretell*  
 предсказать pfv. }

предварительный = *preliminary*

предпочитать ipfv. } = *to prefer*  
 предпочесть pfv. }

предложёние = *offer, suggestion*.

Notice:

предпринимать ipfv. } = *to undertake*  
 предпринять pfv. }

предпріятіе = *undertaking*.

The *ъ* is retained before soft vowels, e.g.

предъявленіе = *presentation (of a claim)*.

When *и* follows it may be written *ы*, e.g.

предыдущій = *preceding*.

**при**

in composition often expresses the idea of *motion towards* or of the *application of one thing to another*:

приходитьъ ipfv. }  
 прийти pfv. } = *to come (on foot)*

приѣзжать ipfv. }  
 приѣхать pfv. } = *to arrive*

принимать ipfv. } = { *to accept (invitations), to receive*  
 принять pfv. } = { *(guests), to take (medicines)*

примѣръ = *example*

напримѣръ = *for example (abbr. напр.)*

причина = *reason.*

**про**

= *through, past*

проходить ipfv. }  
 пройти pfv. } = *to pass, go through.*

**Notice :**

пропускная бумага = *blotting-paper*

простуда = *cold (on the chest)*

напрокатъ = *on hire*

продавать ipfv. }  
 продать pfv. } = *to sell*

проиграть = *to lose (a game), to lose money at play.*

**(противъ)**

**противо-**

= *anti-*

противодѣйствовать = *to counteract*

противорѣчіе = *contradiction, inconsistency.*

**съ (co)**= (1) *with* (2) *from*

- (1) сравнѣніе = *comparison*  
 сходство = *resemblance*  
 состоять (изъ, въ) ipfv. = *to consist (of)*  
 соглашаться (съ) ipfv. } = *to agree (with)*  
 согласиться (съ) pfv. }
- (2) снимать ipfv. } = { *to take off (clothes) to take*  
 снять pfv. } { *(photographs)*  
 ссылка = *exile.*

Sometimes the meaning is not apparent :

- считать ipfv. } = *to count, consider*  
 счесть pfv. }
- счѣтъ = *bill, account*  
 насчѣтъ = *to the account of, as regards,*  
*on account of*  
 соборъ = *cathedral*  
 сомнѣваться ipfv. = *to doubt*  
 съѣсть pfv. = *to eat.*

The **ъ** is retained before soft vowels, e. g.

съѣздъ = *meeting, assembly.*

When **п** follows it becomes **ы**, e. g.

спыщикъ = *spy.*

**у**= *away*

- уходить ipfv. } = *to go away (on foot)*  
 уйти pfv. }
- уѣзжать ipfv. } = *to depart (e. g. by rail)*  
 уѣхать pfv. }
- убирать ipfv. } = *to clear away*  
 убрать pfv. }

But this primary meaning is often lost :

у́ставать ipfv. } у́стать pfv. }	= to grow tired
ухо́дь	= looking after, care for
уѣ́здъ	= district
убо́рная (sc. ко́мната)	= lavatory
ука́зывать (на) ipfv. } ука́зать (на) pfv. }	= to point to
ука́зь	= decree
униже́ние	= humiliation
умира́ть ipfv. } умере́ть pfv. }	= to die
удо́бно	= convenient, comfortable
уго́дно	= agreeable
какъ вамъ уго́дно	= just as you like.
убо́гий	= poor, lowly
удовле́творять ipfv. } удовле́творить pfv. }	= to satisfy
used reflexively	= to be satisfied
удово́льствие	= pleasure
укла́дывать ipfv. } уложи́ть pfv. }	= to pack (trans.)
used reflexively	= to pack (intrans.)
употре́блять ipfv. } употре́бить pfv. }	= to use (cf. p. 220)
used reflexively	= to be in use
уговáривать	= to try to persuade
уговори́ть	= to succeed in persuading
угово́рь	= agreement, stipulation
уви́дѣть } уви́дѣть } узна́ть } услы́шать } услы́хатъ }	= perfectives of
	{ уви́дѣть ви́дѣть зна́ть слы́шатъ слы́хатъ

## INTERJECTIONS

## § 119.

- а! ба! ахъ! охъ! = *ah! oh!* (surprise); ой! = *oh!* (fright).  
 ай! эй! = *hi! hullo!* (attracting attention or expressing delight)  
 ага! оро! эре! = *aha!* (triumph); *r* in these words sounds like *h*.  
 тфу! тьфу! (imitative of the action of spitting) = *ugh! pooh!*  
 (disgust); чортъ возьми! = *devil take it! damn!*  
 бѣтjюшки (*little fathers*)! мѣтjюшки (*little mothers*)! express horror  
 and amazement.  
 па! = *here you are, take this!* вотъ! = *voici!* or *voilà* (cf. p. 116).  
 ну! ну-ка! = *well!* вонъ! = (1) *there it is over yonder!* (2) *away!*  
 -ка! (e.g. дай-ка сюда = *come, give it here;* 'пу, прочтj-ка, вотъ' =  
 '*come along here and just read this through*')  
 -то! (cf. pp. 63, 111)  
 -те! (cf. p. 170)  
 увѣ! = *alas!* ура! = *hurrah!*  
 чу! шть! тшь! = *hush!* шабѣшь! = *stop! easy! steady!*  
 ей-Богy! ей-ей! = *by God!* sc. *in very truth* (asseveration).  
 чѣстное слово! = (*my*) *word of honour!*  
 Господи! Божѣ мой! = (*Good*) *Lord! My God!* (both used as  
 frequently as *Mon Dieu* in French)  
 да здравствуетъ . . ! = *long live . . ! vive . . !*  
 . . долѣй! = *down with . . !* прочъ! = *away! avaunt!*  
 вотъ-те-разъ! = *there's a nice thing! there's a fine set-out!*  
 вотъ — такъ — ! = *that's what I call a fine . . !*  
 вотъ собѣка, такъ собѣка! = *some dog, what!*  
 предствѣ(те)! скажѣ(те)! = *just think! fancy that!* (cf. p. 251).  
 неужѣли! неужтѣ! нештѣ! развѣ! = *is it possible!*  
 сщѣ-бы! = *I should say so! not half!*  
 какъ бы не такъ! = *I don't think!*  
 здравствуйте (imperative of здравствовать, pronounce *zdrástye*, lit.  
*be well*), какъ вы поживаетѣ? = *how do you do, how are you?*  
 дѣброе утро (seldom used)! здорѣво! = *good morning!* (cf. p. 250).  
 покойной (or спокойной) нѣчи (genitive after желаю вамъ under-  
 stood, cf. p. 121)! = *good-night!*  
 до-свидѣнія! = *au revoir!* (lit. *till seeing again*)  
 прощѣйте! = *good-bye!* but, N. B., простѣте! = *forgive! excuse me!*

---

<sup>1</sup> и ну + imperfective infinitive = *and (he) began to . . .*

There are many interjections abbreviated from and often used instead of verbs, e. g.: баць! хлопъ! = *bang!* бухъ! = *flap!* нымыгъ! = *off he dashed!* Cf. also idioms on pp. 66, 76, 103, 111, 112, 115-118, 120, 122, 128, 170, 192-198, 208, 251.

## RELATIONSHIPS

## § 120.

прадѣдъ = <i>great-grandfather</i>	прабабушка = <i>great-grandmother</i>
дѣдъ (дѣдушка) = <i>grandfather</i>	бабушка = <i>grandmother</i>
дядя (дядюшка) = <i>uncle</i>	тѣтя (тѣтушка) = <i>aunt</i>
отець (бáтюшка, тятя, &c.) = <i>father</i> (cf. p. 46)	мать (мáтушка, máма, &c.) = <i>mother</i> (cf. p. 54)
родители = <i>parents</i>	дѣти = <i>children</i> (cf. p. 55)
сынъ (сынóкъ) = <i>son</i> (cf. p. 48)	дочь (дóчка) = <i>daughter</i> (cf. p. 54)
братъ (брáтець) = <i>brother</i> (cf. p. 48)	сестра (сестри́ца) = <i>sister</i> (cf. pp. 49-51)
племянникъ = <i>nephew</i>	племянница = <i>niece</i>
внукъ (внучекъ) = <i>grandson</i>	внучка = <i>granddaughter</i>
двоюродный братъ or кузень = <i>cousin</i> (masc.)	двоюродная сестра or кузина = <i>cousin</i> (fem.)
зять <sup>1</sup> = <i>son-in-law</i> or <i>brother-in-law</i> ( <i>sister's husband</i> )	невѣстка <sup>1</sup> = <i>daughter-in-law</i> or <i>sister-in-law</i> ( <i>brother's wife</i> )
шуринъ <sup>1</sup> = <i>brother-in-law</i> ( <i>sister's husband</i> )	свóха <sup>1</sup> = <i>daughter-in-law</i> .
дѣверъ <sup>1</sup> = <i>brother-in-law</i> ( <i>husband's</i> or <i>wife's brother</i> )	золóвка <sup>1</sup> = <i>sister-in-law</i> ( <i>husband's sister</i> )
свои́къ <sup>1</sup> = <i>wife's sister's husband</i>	свои́ченица <sup>1</sup> = <i>sister-in-law</i> ( <i>wife's sister</i> )
свѣкоръ <sup>1</sup> = <i>father-in-law</i> ( <i>husband's father</i> )	свекрóвь <sup>1</sup> = <i>mother-in-law</i> ( <i>husband's mother</i> )
тесть <sup>1</sup> = <i>father-in-law</i> ( <i>wife's father</i> )	тѣща <sup>1</sup> = <i>mother-in-law</i> ( <i>wife's mother</i> )

<sup>1</sup> Russians themselves get mixed up in the correct use of these quaint terms and frequently say *beau-fils*, *beau-frère*, *belle-fille*, *belle-sœur*, *beau-père*, *belle-mère* instead, only discriminating generation and sex.

(в)отчимъ = <i>step-father</i>	мáчеха = <i>step-mother</i>
пáсынокъ = <i>step-son</i>	пáдчерица = <i>step-daughter</i>
свать = <i>match-maker</i> (masc.)	свáха = <i>match-maker</i> (fem.)
женихъ = <i>bridegroom</i>	невѣста = <i>bride</i>
мужъ = <i>husband</i> (cf. pp. 48, 144)	женá = <i>wife</i> (cf. pp. 133, 135)
кумъ = <i>gossip</i> ( <i>co-god-parent</i> , masc.)	кумá = <i>gossip</i> ( <i>co-god-parent</i> , fem.)

## MEASURES AND WEIGHTS

## § 121.

## MONEY

100 копѣекъ (от копѣекъ) = 1 рубль (about 2s. in normal times)  
(cf. pp. 103, 104).

## DISTANCE

1 верста ( $\frac{2}{3}$ of a mile)	= 500 сажѣнямъ (dative, cf. p. 130)
1 сáжень (7 feet, a fathom)	= 7 фúтамъ (фугъ = <i>foot</i> )
„ „	= 3 аршинáмъ
1 аршинъ ( $2\frac{1}{3}$ feet)	= 16 вершкáмъ
„ „	= 28 дюймамъ
1 вершокъ = $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches,	1 дюймъ = 1 inch.

## SPACE

1 десяти́на =  $2\frac{1}{10}$  acres; the other measures preceded by the  
adjective квадратный = . . . . square.

## WEIGHT

1 берковецъ ( $360\frac{2}{3}$ lb.)	= 10 пудáмъ
1 пудъ ( $36\frac{1}{10}$ lb.)	= 40 фунтáмъ
1 фунтъ ( $\frac{9}{10}$ lb. <i>avoirdupois</i> )	= 32 лóтамъ
1 лотъ (.45 oz.)	= 3 золотникáмъ
1 золотникъ (65.8 grains)	= 96 дóлямъ
1 дóля = .68 grain.	

## RUSSIAN ABBREVIATIONS

## § 122.

- до Р. X. (до Рождества Христова) = *B. C.*  
 по Р. X. (по Рождествѣ Христовомъ) = *A. D.*  
 н. с. (новаго стѣля) = *new style* }  
 с. с. (старога стѣля) = *old style* } cf. p. 132  
 п. м. (прошлаго мѣсяца) = *ult.*  
 с. м. (сего мѣсяца) = *inst.*  
 б. м. (будущаго мѣсяца) = *prox.*  
 г. от г-нѣ (господинъ) = *Mr.*  
 гжа. (госпожѣ) = *Mrs. or Miss*  
 гг. (господѣ) = *Messrs. or Mr. and Mrs.*  
 и др. (другіе от другія) }  
 и пр. (прочее от -чіе от чія) } = *and others, &c.*  
 и т. д. (такъ дальѣ) }  
 и т. п. (тому подобное) } = *and so forth, and so on, cf. pp. 131, 250.*  
 т. е. (то-есть) = *that is, i. e.*  
 напр., нпр. (на-примѣръ) = *for example, e. g.*  
 м. б. (можетъ быть) = *maybe, perhaps*  
 п. т. ч. (потому-что) = *because*  
 т. к. (такъ-какъ) = *since, inasmuch as*  
 т. н. (такъ называемый) = *so-called, aforesaid*  
 вм. (вмѣсто) = *instead of*  
 см. (смотри) = *see, v.*  
 ср. (сравни) = *compare, cf.*  
 стр. (страница) = *page*  
 гл. (глава) = *chapter*  
 ж. д. (желѣзная дорога) = *railway*  
 ст. (станція) = *station*  
 губ. (губернія) = *government, province*  
 с. (селѣ) = *village*  
 г. (городъ) = *town*  
 р. (рѣка) = *river*  
 к., коп. (копѣйка) = *kopek*  
 р., руб. (рубль) = *rouble*



## ADDENDA

## § 44, p. 56.

There are a few indeclinable neuter nouns, such as пальто (*paletot*) = *overcoat*, шоссе (*chaussée*) = *high-road*, all ending in vowels; also surnames in -о, such as Шевченко (those in -но are of Little Russian origin) and such names as Дурново́, Живаго́, and Мертваго́ (pronounced -ágo, cf. p. 32); surnames in -ичъ, e.g. Живковичъ, have no feminine forms.

## § 48, p. 64, Obs. 11.

The expression не то́ is used in the following idioms:

я не то́ хотѣлъ сказа́тъ = *I didn't mean that*

не то́, что́бы + conditional, or + adjective = *not exactly.*

не то́ . . . , не то́ . . . = *not exactly . . . , not exactly . . .*

это́ уже́ не то́ = *it is no longer the same thing.*

не то́, or а то́, used by itself at the beginning of a sentence = *or else.*

## § 53, p. 74, Obs. 7.

The difference between како́й and како́въ is this: како́й = *what kind, which sort*, e.g. это́ како́е вино́? = *what kind of wine is that?* како́въ = *of what quality, how do you like*, e.g. како́во вино́? = *how do you like this wine?* The pronoun тако́въ is used commonly in the following idiom и́ былъ тако́въ! = *and off he went (disappeared)!* The full forms како́во́й and тако́во́й are seldom used, their meaning is much the same as како́й and тако́й, but they are used rather as pure pronouns, referring to a noun in a previous sentence, and not as adjectives. Тако́й-то = *such and such*, cf. p. 144. Како́й-нибудь and како́й-то correspond in meaning to кто́-нибудь, кто́-то, ка́къ-нибудь, ка́къ-то, e.g. како́й-нибудь го́родъ = *any town (you like to mention)*, въ како́мъ-то ца́рствѣ = *in a certain kingdom* (opening of fairy-tale).

## § 55, p. 80.

The instrumental singular of names of places in -въ and -во is, not -вымъ, but -вомъ, e.g. за Кіево́мъ = *beyond Kíev*, подъ Кіево́мъ = *near* (lit. *under*) *Kíev*, ном. sing. Кіе́въ.

The locative singular of names in -овъ, -ово, -евъ, -ево, -инъ, -ино, -инъ, -ино, when they are surnames or place-names is, not -омъ, but -ѣ, as in the case of nouns, e. g. о Лѣрмонтовѣ, Пушкѣнѣ и Тургѣневѣ = *about Lѣrmentorov, Púshkin, and Turgѣnev*, въ Кіевѣ и въ Царѣцинѣ = *in Kіev and Tsarítsyn*.

§ 71, p. 107.

Notice the common idiom :

никуда не годится = *it is no good at all* (cf. p. 159).

§ 72, p. 109.

Notice :

нынѣ	} <i>nowadays</i> , also =	пока́ (cf. p. 118) can be and is
нынче		
(adj. нынѣшній = <i>of nowadays</i> ).		<i>the time being</i>

§ 73, p. 111.

Notice :

даромъ = <i>free, gratis</i>	очевѣдно = <i>evidently</i>
вѣроятно = <i>probably</i>	впроче́мъ = <i>for the rest, however</i>
вмѣстѣ = <i>together</i>	слѣвно = <i>exactly like, just as if</i>
точь-въ-точь = <i>exactly like, just as if</i> (lit. <i>dot-to-dot</i> ).	
такъ-то такъ ! = <i>that may be, that's all very well !</i>	
такъ и (+ verb) = ' <i>simply</i> ', ' <i>just as if</i> ', e. g. глаза́ у него́ такъ и горятъ = <i>his eyes are simply burning</i> .	
такъ, followed by a verb, may also mean : (1) <i>unintentionally</i> , (2) <i>gratis, for nothing</i> .	

§ 74, p. 114.

Notice : отча́сти = *partly*                      и́тогѣ : = *total* :

(This curious word is really и + то́ро, gen. sing. of то, = *and of that* ; it is put at the foot of a bill, summing up the items, and from it has been formed a noun и́тогъ = *a total*, подве́стї и́тогъ сче́ты = *to reckon up the total of*, lit. *to, a bill*.)

Forcible colloquial equivalents of о́чень are : здо́рово (not to be confused with здоро́во, p. 245), and бо́льно = *properly, extremely, not half*; не бо́льно = *not particularly*.

Other common comparative adverbs are :

дальше = *further* (и такъ дальше, и т. д. = *and so forth*)

дольше = *longer*

раньше = *earlier* (cf. заранее = *beforehand*, *betimes*).

§ 78, p. 118.

A subordinate clause in Russian is often preceded by a correlative pronoun in the principal sentence, which is not needed in English, and is puzzling at first sight, e. g. : дѣло въ томъ, что я не могу прийти = *the point is that I can't come*, analogously : для того, чтобы—за тѣмъ, чтобы—съ тѣмъ, чтобы = *in order that*, между тѣмъ, какъ = *while*, послѣ того, какъ = *after*, передъ тѣмъ, какъ (but прежде, чѣмъ) = *before*, до тѣхъ поръ,<sup>1</sup> пока не = *until*, съ тѣхъ поръ, какъ = *since*. According to Russian orthography a comma should always precede the conjunction, even in the phrase по тому, что = *because*, though this rule is not always observed. When что beginning a clause = *what* (and not *that*) it is often accented что, as on p. 187.

§ 106, p. 193.

Notice the following idiomatic uses of the imperative :

пожалуй (from пожаловать) ! = *by all means, I expect, I dare say, I shouldn't wonder* (used as an interjection in conversation).

(N.B.—пожалуйте = *be so good*, used more by shop-attendants and servants.)

помилуйте (from помиловать) = *goodness gracious, I say, look here, no really* (used as a remonstrance in conversation).

скажите (often followed by пожалуйста) ! = *you don't mean to say so !*

разсказывай ! = *go on !*

сдѣлайте одолженіе ! = *by all means, with pleasure, certainly* (lit *make the loan*, said when acceding to a request or granting a favour).

позвните ! = *excuse me ! I beg your pardon !*

---

<sup>1</sup> The words 'до тѣхъ поръ' are often omitted in this phrase, not being essential to its meaning.

## § 109, p. 202.

Notice :

закрѣто = *it is shut*свободно = *it is free*открѣто = *it is open*запрещено = *it is forbidden.*

## § 112, p. 203.

Notice that состоять is also used with the meaning 'to be', e. g.:

я состою предѣдателемъ (inst., cf. p. 141) этого общества =  
*I am the president of this society.*

How to express ONE.

This is most frequently expressed by the 2nd person singular, e.g.

ничего не поймѣшь = *one can't understand a word* (for this use  
of the perfective future cf. p. 188). After когда and если  
in such expressions either the present or the future may  
be used, e. g.

когда подумаешь . . . = *when one thinks . . .*если на это смѣришь = *if one looks at this.*The perfective future is frequently used after *whenever, if ever.**One* can also be rendered by the infinitive, e. g.

много желать, добра не видать = *if one wishes (too) much, one  
sees no good* (proverb), волковъ бояться, въ лѣсъ не ходить =  
*if one fears wolves, one mustn't go to the forest* (proverb).

если сказать всю истину = *if one were to say the whole truth.*The reflexive verb, the 3rd person plural of the present tense and the passive participles are also used to express *one*, cf. p. 110.

## § 117, p. 230.

Notice that не велѣть = *to forbid*, e. g.:Богъ лѣниться не велѣтъ = *God forbids (us) to be idle.*докторъ мнѣ не велѣлъ вставать = *the doctor forbade me to  
get up.*

## INDEX OF RUSSIAN WORDS AND PHRASES

(N.B. After verbs *i.* = *imperfective*, *pf.* = *perfective*; the numbers refer to the PAGES.)

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>а (conjunction), 62,<br/>115, 249.<br/>авось, 118.<br/>алтынъ, 103.<br/>американецъ, 56.<br/>американка, 56.<br/>англичанинъ, 48.<br/>англичанка, 56.<br/>английскій, 74.<br/>Англія, 50.<br/>аплодировать (<i>i.</i>),<br/>156.<br/>аршинъ, 49, 145.</p> <p>баринъ, 56, 116.<br/>барыня, 56, 116.<br/>барышня, 51.<br/>басня, 51.<br/>батюшка, 246.<br/>баць, 246.<br/>башня, 51.<br/>без- (prefix), 235,<br/>236.<br/>безпоко́ить (<i>i.</i>), 235.<br/>безпреста́нно, 110.<br/>безусло́вно, 111.<br/>безъ, 99, 118, 123,<br/>235.<br/>бе́й(те), 169.<br/>береги́(сь), 168.<br/>берегу́, 151.<br/>бе́регъ, 47, 136, 144.<br/>бе́речь (<i>i.</i>), 151.<br/>беру́, 150, 154, 228.<br/>битко́мъ, 202.<br/>бить, 156, 175, 212,<br/>228, 229.<br/>благодарить (<i>i.</i>),<br/>134, 135.</p> | <p>блева́ть (<i>i.</i>), 157.<br/>блестѣ́ть (<i>i.</i>), 160,<br/>222.<br/>бли́же, 84.<br/>бли́зко, 105.<br/>близъ, 119, 127.<br/>блиста́ть (<i>i.</i>), 222.<br/>блюсти́ (<i>i.</i>), 152.<br/>Богъ, 32, 33, 49, 82,<br/>143, 245.<br/>Бо́же, 49, 245.<br/>Бо́жій, 82.<br/>бокъ, 47, 144.<br/>боли́ть, 125, 159,<br/>204, 213.<br/>бо́льше, 85, 113.<br/>бо́льше всего́, 113.<br/>бо́льшею ча́стью,<br/>139.<br/>бо́льшій, 79.<br/>большо́й, 73, 74,<br/>85, 87.<br/>болѣ́е, 83.<br/>болѣ́ть (<i>i.</i>), 159,<br/>213.<br/>боро́ться (<i>i.</i>), 155,<br/>163.<br/>бою́сь, 59, 121, 191.<br/>боѣ́ться (<i>i.</i>), 59,<br/>121, 160, 203, 252.<br/>братъ, 48, 246.<br/>братъ (<i>i.</i>), 154, 228,<br/>229.<br/>брѣ́мя, 55.<br/>брести́ (<i>i.</i>), 152.<br/>бри́ть (<i>i.</i>), 157,<br/>175.<br/>бро́сать (<i>i.</i>), 217,<br/>218.</p> | <p>бро́сить (<i>pf.</i>), 217,<br/>218.<br/>бро́сь(те), 169, 194.<br/>брызга́ть (<i>i.</i>), 152.<br/>бу́детъ ! 208.<br/>бу́дто, 118.<br/>бу́дто-бы, 118.<br/>бу́ду, 152, 178, 187.<br/>бу́дучи, 171, 199.<br/>бу́дущее, 200.<br/>бу́дущій, 102, 133,<br/>172, 200.<br/>будь (= <i>if</i>), 193.<br/>будь, 168.<br/>бу́дьте, 168.<br/>бухъ, 246.<br/>-бы, 66, 107, 108,<br/>167, 189-92, 197.<br/>быва́ло, 69, (with<br/>perfective future)<br/>188.<br/>быва́ть (<i>i.</i>), 208,<br/>210, 212.<br/>бывши́й, 172, 200.<br/>бы́ло (unfulfilled<br/>intention), 183.<br/>бы́ть, 152, 171, 172,<br/>195, 208, 210, 212.<br/>бью, 156.<br/>бѣ́гать (<i>i.</i>), 221,<br/>222, 226.<br/>бѣ́гу, 151, 161, 222.<br/>бѣ́жать (<i>i.</i>), 151,<br/>161, 222, 226.<br/>бѣ́лый, 72.<br/>бѣ́лѣ́ть (<i>i.</i>), 157.</p> <p>в- (prefix), 236.<br/>вашъ, 61, 62.</p> |
|--|---|--|

- вáять (*i.*), 157.  
 вверху, 108, 134.  
 вдоль, 118, 161.  
 вдругъ, 110.  
 веду́, 152, 223.  
 вездѣ, 106.  
 везти́ (*i.*), 152, 164, 222, 224.  
 вѣль, 164, 171.  
 велѣть (*i. and pf.*), 159, 230, 252.  
 вернуться (*pf.*), 189.  
 верста́, 133, 247.  
 вертѣть (*i.*), 160.  
 верхомъ, 139.  
 весённый, 78.  
 весна́, 133.  
 весной, 139.  
 вести́ (*i.*), 152, 172-4, 223-5, 227.  
 весь, 67, 68.  
 весьма́, 113.  
 вечерний, 78.  
 вѣчеромъ, 139, 140.  
 вѣчеръ; 47.  
 вѣшний, 78.  
 вещь, 54.  
 вз- = воз- (*cf.* 231).  
 взгляды́вать (*i.*), 219.  
 взгляну́ть (*pf.*), 219.  
 вздо́хнуть (*pf.*), 219.  
 взды́хать (*i.*), 219.  
 взима́ть (*i.*), 216, 229.  
 разыска́ть (*pf.*), 211.  
 разыски́вать (*i.*), 211.  
 взять (*pf.*), 153, 216, 228, 229, 231.  
 выда́ть (*i.*), 66, 69, 184, 198, 224, 252.  
 ви́день, 77.  
 ви́дно, 137.  
 ви́дѣть (*i.*), 65, 66, 157, 159, 163, 172, 224, 225.  
 ви́жу, 70, 157, 159  
 вини́ть (*i.*), 159.  
 виновáть, 71.  
 висѣ́ть (*i.*), 160, 219.  
 ви́ть (*i.*), 156.  
 вишь, 224.  
 включи́тельно, 111.  
 владе́ть (*i.*), 141.  
 влеку́, 152, 214.  
 влечь (*i.*), 152, 214.  
 влюби́ться, 111, 236.  
 вмѣсто, 118, 128.  
 вмѣстѣ́, 250.  
 вмѣлю, 155, 168.  
 внизу́, 108.  
 внизъ, 108, 134.  
 внима́ть (*i.*), 155, 216.  
 внутри́, 108, 118, 127.  
 ви́ть, 119, 127.  
 внять (*pf.*), 216.  
 во (=въ), 236.  
 во-время, 102, 134.  
 во время, 102, 134.  
 во́все, 113.  
 во-вторы́хъ, 94.  
 вода́, 43, 120, 137.  
 води́ть (*i.*), 159, 223, 224, 227.  
 воева́ть (*i.*), 157.  
 вожу́, 159, 222, 223.  
 воз- (*prefix*), 35, 153, 164, 213, 226, 231.  
 возвраще́ние, 145.  
 возда́вать (*i.*), 213.  
 возда́ть (*pf.*), 213.  
 воздви́гать (*i.*), 221.  
 воздви́гнуть (*pf.*), 164, 221.  
 во́здухъ, 137.  
 вози́ть (*i.*), 159, 222, 224.  
 во́злѣ, 119, 127.  
 возмо́жно, 105, 205.  
 возненави́дѣть (*pf.*), 226, 231.  
 возьми́сь, 194.  
 возьму́, 153, 216, 228.  
 вокру́гъ, 119, 127.  
 во́лей-нево́лей, 139.  
 во́лосъ, 48.  
 волочи́ть (*i.*), 152.  
 волочь (*i.*), 152.  
 вонь, 207, 245.  
 [вонь *N.B.* = stink.]  
 вообража́ть (*i.*), 220.  
 вообрази́ть (*pf.*), 220.  
 вообще́, 110.  
 во-пѣрвыхъ, 94.  
 вопи́ть (*i.*), 156.  
 вопи́ять (*i.*), 156.  
 вопреки́, 119, 131.  
 воробѣ́й, 47.  
 вос- (=воз-), 140, 231.  
 воспользоваться (*pf.*), 140.  
 восто́къ, 136, 232.  
 во-тре́тьихъ, 94.  
 вотъ, 116, 207, 245.  
 вотъ — такъ —, 245.  
 вотъ-те-разъ, 245.  
 во что бы то ни ста́ло, 66.  
 вошь, 54.  
 вою́, 156.  
 вою́ю, 157.  
 впло́нѣ, 114, 144.  
 впослѣ́дствіи, 144.  
 впродолже́ние, 134.  
 впроче́мъ, 250.  
 вратъ (*i.*), 66, 154.  
 вре́мя, 54, 75, 102.  
 вре́мя отъ времени, 102.  
 вря́дь-ли, 117.  
 вс- (=вз-), 232.  
 всегда́, 108.

- всего, 68.  
 всего лучшаго! 68.  
 всего мѣнѣе, 114.  
 всего хорошаго! 68.  
 всё, 67, 68.  
 всё (adverb), 68.  
 всё равно, 68.  
 всётаки, 115, 181.  
 вскрикивать (*i.*),  
 219.  
 вскрикнуть (*pf.*),  
 219.  
 вслѣдствіе, 134,  
 240.  
 вставать (*i.*), 214.  
 встать (*pf.*), 214.  
 встрѣтить (*pf.*), 220.  
 встрѣчать (*i.*), 220.  
 всюду, 106.  
 всякая всячина,  
 75.  
 всякій, 67, 74.  
 втайнѣ, 144.  
 втеченіе, 134.  
 вчера, 109.  
 вчерашній, 78.  
 въ (+ acc.), 99,  
 100, 133, 134.  
 въ (+ loc.), 44, 47,  
 143, 144.  
 въ-гору, 134.  
 въ-двое, 96.  
 въ-двоёмъ, 97.  
 въ концѣ концѣвъ,  
 144.  
 въ-пору, 103, 134.  
 въ родѣ (+ gen.=  
*like*), cf. 75.  
 въ состояніи, 196.  
 въ то время, какъ,  
 182.  
 въ томъ-то и дѣло,  
 63, 115.  
 въ-трое, 96.  
 въ-троёмъ, 97.  
 вы, 58, 146.  
 вы- (prefix), 213,  
 232.  
 выбрасывать (*i.*),  
 218.  
 выбросать (*pf.*),  
 218.  
 выбросить (*pf.*),  
 218.  
 выдавать (*i.*), 213.  
 выдать (*pf.*), 213.  
 выйти (*pf.*), 135,  
 232.  
 вымытъ (*pf.*), 212.  
 вынашивать (*i.*),  
 227.  
 вынести (*pf.*), 227.  
 выносить (*i.*), 227.  
 выносить (*pf.*), 227.  
 выпасть (*pf.*), 204.  
 выпить (*pf.*), 212.  
 выражать (*i.*), 220.  
 выразить (*pf.*), 220.  
 вырасти (*pf.*), 228.  
 выразить (*pf.*),  
 228.  
 выращать (*i.*), 228.  
 выслать (*pf.*), 215.  
 высобывать (*i.*),  
 219.  
 высокій, 84, 86.  
 высоко, 105.  
 высунуть (*pf.*), 219.  
 высылать (*i.*), 215.  
 высшій, 86.  
 выть (*i.*), 156.  
 выходить (*i.*), 135,  
 232.  
 выше, 84.  
 вышеупомянутый,  
 202.  
 вышинна, 140 (cf.  
 84).  
 вью, 32, 156.  
 вѣдь, 119, 161.  
 вѣкъ, 47, 102, 144.  
 вѣрить (*i.*), 128,  
 191, 198.  
 вѣровать (*i.*), 128.  
 вѣроятно, 250.  
 вѣсть, 161.  
 вѣсь, 68.  
 вѣтеръ, 47.  
 вѣшать (*i.*), 220.  
 вѣять (*i.*), 156.  
 вязу, 152.  
 вязать (*i.*), 152.  
 гаснуть (*i.*), 153.  
 гдѣ, 106.  
 гдѣ бы то ни было,  
 107.  
 гдѣ (+ dative), 108.  
 гдѣ-нибудь, 107.  
 гдѣ-то, 107, 111.  
 гибнуть (*i.*), 165.  
 гинуть (*i.*), 165.  
 глѣдять (*i.*), 159.  
 глазъ, 47, 49.  
 глодать (*i.*), 152.  
 глубина, 140 (cf.  
 84, 88).  
 глубоок, 105, 201.  
 глядѣть (*i.*), 159,  
 218, 219.  
 глядя (ог глядѣ),  
 170.  
 глянуть (*pf.*), 218,  
 219.  
 гнать (*i.*), 159, 223.  
 гнесті (*i.*), 154.  
 гнить (*i.*), 156.  
 гнуть (*i.*), 153.  
 гнѣздѣ, 25.  
 говаривать (*i.*), 210.  
 говорить (*i.*), 65,  
 66, 69, 158, 160,  
 170, 195, 196, 198,  
 210, 228, 229.  
 годиться (*i.*), 159,  
 250. [140.  
 годъ, 47, 102, 133,  
 голова, 142.  
 голось, 47.  
 голубчикъ, 31.  
 гоню, 159, 223.  
 гонять (*i.*), 223.  
 гораздо, 112.  
 гораздъ, 76.

- гордиться (*i.*), 140, 159.  
горевать (*i.*), 157.  
городъ, 47, 68, 75.  
горѣть (*i.*), 160, 201.  
горячий, 79, 85, 201.  
господá, 48.  
Господень, 81.  
Гбсподи, 32, 49, 245.  
господи́нь, 48.  
Господь, 32, 49, 81.  
госпожа́, 56, 80.  
гости, 133.  
гости́ная, 73.  
госуда́рыня, 56.  
госуда́рь, 56.  
градъ (= *hail*), 204.  
[градъ, *N.B.* also = гóродъ].  
граница, 134, 142.  
гребу́, 151.  
гремѣть (*i.*), 204.  
гресті́ (*i.*), 151, 164.  
грѣвенникъ, 103.  
грѣвна, 103.  
грози́ть (*i.*), 129.  
громъ, 204.  
грязь (*i.*), 152.  
грѣть (*i.*), 157, 175.  
гуля́ть (*i.*), 157.  
гурто́мъ, 139.  
гусько́мъ, 139.
- да (conjunction), 115, 117, 245.  
дава́й(те), 193.  
дава́ть (*i.*), 128, 155, 170, 212.  
дави́ть (*i.*), 212.  
давні́мъ-давно́, 109.  
давно́, 63, 109.  
да́же, 116.  
да и то́лько, 112.  
да́й(те), 71, 111, 169, 193.  
дале́кій, 84, 86.
- далеко́, 105.  
далеко́ не, 113.  
да́льний, 86.  
дальнѣ́йшій, 86.  
да́льше, 84.  
да́лѣе, 248, 251.  
да́ромъ, 250.  
да́ть (*pf.*), 128, 161, 166, 173, 212, 213.  
даю́, 155, 212.  
два, 88, 90, 91, 101.  
дверь, 53.  
двѣ́гать (*i.*), 218, 221.  
двѣ́жу, 221.  
двѣ́нуть (*pf.*), 153, 164; 218, 221.  
дво́е, 96.  
дворе́ць, 46.  
дворь, 144, 145.  
двоу́родный, 94, 203, 246.  
двугрѣ́венникъ, 103.  
двухъ, 90.  
двѣ́сти, 89, 93.  
де́негъ, 112.  
де́нь, 46, 68, 75, 123, 136, 138.  
де́ньги, 63, 112, 113, 124, 128.  
де́ревня, 51.  
де́рево, 53.  
де́ржать (*i.*), 159.  
де́ржаться, 121.  
де́ру, 154.  
де́скать, 118.  
де́сятокъ, 97.  
дешѣ́вле, 85.  
дешѣ́вый, 85.  
дитя́, 27, 34, 55.  
длинá, 140.  
для, 128, 200, 251.  
днѣ́мъ, 100, 140.  
до, 103, 123, 236.  
довольно́, 112, 205.  
додава́ть (*i.*), 213.  
дода́ть (*pf.*), 213.
- дождáться (*pf.*), 215.  
дождь, 122, 204.  
дожидáться (*i.*), 121, 183, 215.  
доказа́ть (*pf.*), 229.  
доказыва́ть (*i.*), 229.  
дóкторъ, 47, 142.  
дóбго, 109.  
должно́ быть, 205.  
долóй, 245.  
дóльше, 84.  
дóлѣе, 251.  
дóма, 116, 117, 123.  
домóй, 131.  
домъ, 47.  
дорóга, 43.  
дóрого, 21.  
дорогóй, 74, 85.  
дорóжке, 85.  
дорожі́ть (*i.*), 140.  
дорóжка, 138.  
до-свидáнія, 245.  
до сихъ поръ, 64, 103.  
доставáть (*i.*), 214.  
достáточно, 112, 205.  
доставáть, 108, 214, 236.  
достóинъ, 77, 122.  
дó-сыта, 123.  
дотро́гиваться (*i.*), 219.  
дотро́нуться (*pf.*), 219.  
до тѣхъ поръ, 103, 251.  
дочь, 54.  
дража́йшій, 88.  
драть (*i.*), 154.  
дрема́ть (*i.*), 155.  
дрожа́ть (*i.*), 159.  
другóй, 67, 74, 75, 90, 136, 139.  
другъ, 48, 56.  
другъ дру́га, 67.  
дру́жески, 106.



- дружокъ, 57.  
 друвьѧ, 48.  
 дурно, 105.  
 духи, 82, 205.  
 духъ, 82.  
 душа, 50.  
 душистый, 82.  
 дымъ, 137.  
 дышать (*i.*), 141.  
 дѣва, 57.  
 дѣвать (*i.*), 212, 214.  
 дѣйствительно, 110.  
 дѣлается (*i.*), 59, 202.  
 дѣлать (*i.*), 69, 151, 155, 169, 178, 195, 202, 209, 211.  
 дѣлаться (*i.*), 141.  
 [дѣлить (*i.*), *N.B.* = *to divide.*]  
 дѣло, 63, 64, 144, 251.  
 дѣну, 153, 212.  
 дѣти, 53, 55.  
 дѣть (*pf.*), 153, 212, 214, 217.  
 дюжина, 97.  
 дядя, 23, 33, 50, 51.  
 егѠ, 32, 58, 60, 61, 83, 117.  
 едва, 114.  
 едва не, 114.  
 еѣ, 25, 58, 59, 117.  
 еже- (*prefix*), 100-102.  
 ежели=если,  
 ей, 24, 58, 60.  
 ей-БѠгу, 245.  
 эле-эле, 114.  
 ему, 58.  
 если, 24, 118, 180, 181, 189, 190, 198, 207, 252.  
 еслибѠ=еслибы, 190.  
 есть, 29, 124, 125, 207, 208.  
 есть-ли, 207.  
 ещѣ, 25, 109, 111, 116.  
 ещѣ-бы, 117, 245.  
 ещѣ не, 109.  
 ёю, 60.  
 ей, 25, 58-60, 83.  
 жажда, 34 (*cf. p.* 129).  
 жаловаться (*i.*), 129.  
 жаль, 130, 133.  
 жарко, 105, 130, 208.  
 жать (*i.*, = *squeeze*), 153, 175, 215.  
 жать (*i.*, = *reap*), 153, 175.  
 жгла, 166.  
 жгу, 151, 215.  
 ждать (*i.*), 121, 152, 215.  
 же (*suffix*), 60, 62, 64, 66.  
 жевать (*i.*), 156.  
 жѣгъ, 166.  
 желаніе, 52.  
 желать (*i.*), 65, 121, 194, 252.  
 желѣзная дорога, 66, 132.  
 женать, 144.  
 жениться (*i. and pf.*), 144, 230.  
 жѣртовать (*i.*), 141.  
 жечь (*i.*), 151, 174, 215.  
 жжѣнный, 175.  
 животное, 73.  
 живу, 151.  
 живъ, 71.  
 жизнь, 135, 208.  
 жить (*i.*), 151.  
 жму, 153, 215.  
 жну, 153.  
 жрать (*i.*), 154.  
 жуѠ, 156.  
 -жъ (*suffix*)=же.  
 за (+*acc.*), 69, 70, 75, 102 (= *ago*), 134, 135.  
 за (+*inst.*), 65, 70, 142.  
 за (+*nom.*), 120.  
 за- (*prefix*), 236, 237.  
 заболѣвать (*i.*), 213.  
 заболѣть (*pf.*), 213.  
 заботиться (*i.*), 230.  
 забудѣте, 193.  
 забывать (*i.*), 193.  
 забыть (*pf.*), 193.  
 завидовать (*i.*), 129, 226.  
 зависимый, 200.  
 зависѣть (*i.*), 230.  
 завтра, 109.  
 завтрашній, 78.  
 завѣдывать (*i.*), 141.  
 заглянуѣть (*pf.*), 108.  
 за-городомъ, 142.  
 за-городъ, 134.  
 за границей, 142.  
 за границу, 67, 134.  
 задавать (*i.*), 213.  
 задавить (*pf.*), 212.  
 задавливать (*i.*), 212.  
 задать (*pf.*), 213.  
 задѣвать (*i.*), 214.  
 задѣть (*pf.*), 214.  
 зажечь (*pf.*), 215.  
 зажигать (*i.*), 215.  
 займу, 216.  
 зайти (*pf.*), 199.  
 заказать (*pf.*), 229.  
 заказное, 141.  
 закрывать (*i.*), 229.  
 закрыто, 252.  
 заместіи (*pf.*), 204.  
 замокъ, 46.  
 [замокъ, *N.B.* = *door- of trunk-lock.*]

- замужемъ, 142.  
 замужь, 133.  
 занести (*pf.*), 204.  
 занимать (*i.*), 216.  
 занято, 202 (cf. 175).  
 занять (*pf.*), 175, 216.  
 заодно, 135.  
 западь, 136.  
 запереть (*pf.*), 154, 175.  
 заперто, 175, 202.  
 запечатлѣть, 25.  
 заплатить (*pf.*), 173.  
 запрещенó, 252.  
 запрѣчь, 25, 151.  
 зашѣвать (*i.*), 212.  
 зашѣть (*pf.*), 212.  
 зарабатывать (*i.*), 211.  
 заработать (*pf.*), 211.  
 заранѣе, 251.  
 за-руку, 43, 135.  
 засмѣяться (*pf.*), 211.  
 заснѣть (*pf.*), 221.  
 заставать (*i.*), 214.  
 застать (*pf.*), 214.  
 засыпать (*pf.*), 221.  
 засыпáть (*i.*), 221.  
 за то, 64, 135.  
 затѣмь, 63, 142.  
 затѣмь, чтобы, 66, 142, 251.  
 затѣять (*pf.*), 157.  
 зачѣмь, 65, 142.  
 заяць, 47.  
 звать (*i.*), 133, 141, 151, 215.  
 ввѣдá, 25.  
 здорово, 245.  
 здóрово, 250.  
 здорóвъ, 71.  
 здравствовать (*i.*), 245.  
 здѣсь, 24, 106.  
 здѣшній, 78.  
 земля, 51, 135, 143.
- зима, 133.  
 зимній, 78.  
 зимой, 139.  
 знакъ, 22.  
 знамя, 55.  
 знать (*i.*), 73, 155, 163, 172, 212.  
 значить (*i.*), 230.  
 зову, 151, 215.  
 зрѣть (*i. = to ripen*), 157.  
 зрѣть (*i. = to see*), 157, 199.  
 зря, 199.  
 зубъ, 125.  
 зять, 48.
- и (conjunction), 115 (cf. 63, 64, 112, 250).  
 и — и —, 64, 116.  
 играть (*i.*), 69, 155.  
 идѣть, 204.  
 иди(те), 168.  
 идти=итти.  
 идѣ, 30, 70, 150, 152, 222, 223.  
 из- (prefix), 237, 238.  
 избѣгать (*i.*), 121, 221, 226.  
 избѣгать (*pf.*), 221.  
 избѣгнуть (*pf.*), 221, 226.  
 избѣжать (*pf.*), 221, 226.  
 извѣстно, 205.  
 издавать (*i.*), 213, 237.  
 издáть (*pf.*), 213, 237.  
 изнашивать (*i.*), 227.  
 изнасить (*pf.*), 227.  
 изо=изъ.  
 изо дня въ день, 123.  
 изъ, 119, 123.  
 изъ-дому, 47, 124.
- изъ-за, 123.  
 изъ-подъ, 123.  
 изъбѣздить (*pf.*), 228.  
 изъбѣжать (*i.*), 228.  
 и́ли, 116.  
 и́ли — или, 116.  
 и́менно, 110.  
 и́ми, 27, 58, 59.  
 имъ, 27, 58, 59.  
 имѣние, 30, 51, 52.  
 имѣть (*i.*), 124, 157.  
 и́мя, 55.  
 и́наче, 43, 110.  
 и́ногда, 108.  
 и́ной, 67, 74-76.  
 и́норóгъ, 76.  
 и́норóдцы, 76.  
 ис- (= из-), 238.  
 искáть (*i.*), 121, 155, 173.  
 и́скренне, 105 (cf. 78).  
 испытáть (*pf.*), 211.  
 испытывать (*i.*), 211.  
 исчéзáть (*i.*), 219.  
 исчéзнуть (*pf.*), 164, 219.  
 и́такъ, 116.  
 и́тогó, 250.  
 и́тти (*i.*), 150, 152, 222, 223, 225.  
 ихъ, 27, 58, 59, 83.  
 ищѣ, 155.
- на (suffix), 245.  
 кáждый, 67, 74, 75, 101, 102.  
 кáжется, 130, 230.  
 кажись, 194.  
 казалось, 230.  
 казáться (*i.*), 142, 152, 203.  
 каковóй, 65, 74-76.  
 каковъ, 76, 249.  
 каковóй, 65, 74, 75, 139, 143, 249.

какой-нибудь, 249.	кѣ-кто=кѣй-кто.	кто бы ни, 66, 189.
какой-то, 249.	кѣ-что, 71.	кто бы то ни было,
какъ, 35, 69, 109,	кѣй-какой, 71, 74.	66.
182, 189, 251.	кѣй-кто, 71.	кто-либо, 70.
какъ — такъ и —,	кѣй-что=кѣс-что.	кто ни, 188, 189.
116, 182.	колебать ( <i>i.</i> ), 155.	кто-нибудь, 70.
какъ будто, 69, 118.	коли=если.	кто-то, 70.
какъ бы (= <i>lest</i> ),	колоколь, 47.	куда, 107.
191.	колѣть ( <i>i.</i> ), 155.	куда (+ dative),
какъ бы не такъ,	колѣно, 52, 135.	108.
245.	колю, 155.	куда бы то ни было,
какъ бы то ни было,	командовать ( <i>i.</i> ),	107.
110.	141.	куда-нибудь, 107.
какъ ни, 181.	кому, 35, 64, 130.	куда-то, 107.
какъ-нибудь, 110.	комъ, 64, 144.	купаться ( <i>i.</i> ), 175,
какъ-то, 110, 111.	конѣцъ, 123, 131,	202.
какъ только, 186,	144.	купить ( <i>pf.</i> ), 134,
189.	конечно, 110.	174, 217.
касаться ( <i>i.</i> ), 121,	кончать ( <i>i.</i> ), 217.	куплю, 70, 174.
122, 203.	кончить ( <i>pf.</i> ), 195,	курить ( <i>i.</i> ), 160,
кидать ( <i>i.</i> ), 218,	217.	200.
219.	копейка, 51, 103,	кусокъ, 46, 120.
кинуть ( <i>pf.</i> ), 153,	104.	кушанье, 52.
218, 219.	кость, 53.	кушать ( <i>i.</i> ), 136,
кинуть ( <i>i.</i> ), 153,	котенокъ, 53, 57.	169.
165.	который, 65, 74, 75.	кую, 156.
кладовая, 73.	кошка, 51.	къ, 35, 119, 131.
кладу, 151, 228.	краду, 152.	къмъ, 35, 64, 201.
кланяться ( <i>i.</i> ), 129.	край, 47.	
класть ( <i>i.</i> ), 151,	крайний, 78, 114.	ладить ( <i>i.</i> ), 159.
228, 229.	красить ( <i>i.</i> ), 160.	лажу (лад-), 159.
клевать ( <i>i.</i> ), 157.	красть ( <i>i.</i> ), 152, 211.	лажу (лаз-), 159,
ключъ, 46.	крашу, 160.	223.
клюю, 157.	крестьянинъ, 48.	лазить ( <i>i.</i> ), 159,
клянѣ, 153.	крикнуть ( <i>pf.</i> ), 153,	223, 226.
клясть ( <i>i.</i> ), 153,	218, 219.	лаять ( <i>i.</i> ), 155.
166.	кричать ( <i>i.</i> ), 160,	лба, 46.
князь, 48.	218, 219.	лгать ( <i>i.</i> ), 151.
ко=къ.	крѣмъ, 63, 119, 128.	левъ, 46.
ковать ( <i>i.</i> ), 156.	крѣю, 156 (cf. 169).	легла, 166.
когда, 32, 108, 182,	крѣглый, 133.	лѣгъ, 166, 171.
191, 252.	крѣгомъ, 119, 127.	лѣдъ, 46.
когда бы то ни	крыло, 53.	лѣжа, 171, 199.
было, 109.	крыть ( <i>i.</i> ), 156, 212.	лежать ( <i>i.</i> ), 159.
когда-нибудь, 108,	крѣпнуть ( <i>i.</i> ), 218.	лѣнь, 46.
184.	кстати, 131.	летать ( <i>i.</i> ), 223, 224.
когда-то, 108.	кто, 35, 64, 181.	летѣть ( <i>i.</i> ), 160,
кого, 64, 135.	кто — кто — 66.	223, 224.

- лечу́, 160, 223.  
 лечь (*pf.*), 151, 217.  
 -ли, 70, 116.  
 -ли — или }  
 -ли — ли } 117.  
 лижу́, 152.  
 лиза́ть (*i.*), 152.  
 листь, 48.  
 лить (*i.*), 156, 169,  
 204.  
 лицомъ къ лицу́,  
 139.  
 лишáть (*i.*), 121,  
 217.  
 лишítъ (*pf.*), 217.  
 лобъ, 46.  
 ловítъ (*i.*), 158,  
 228, 229.  
 ложítъся (*i.*), 217.  
 лóжка, 34.  
 ложь, 54.  
 ломáть (*i.*), 211,  
 223.  
 ломítъ (*i.*), 223.  
 лошадь, 53, 144.  
 лугъ, 47.  
 луна́, 35.  
 лúче, 85, 114.  
 лúчшій, 79, 87.  
 [льва=gen. левъ].  
 льда, 46.  
 льду, 144.  
 [льна=gen. лёнъ].  
 лью, 156, 204.  
 лѣвый, 137.  
 -лѣзáть (*i.*), 226.  
 лѣзáть (*i.*), 152, 223,  
 226.  
 лѣсъ, 47, 137.  
 лѣтній, 78.  
 лѣто, 102, 133, 135.  
 лѣтомъ, 139.  
 любímый, 172, 200.  
 любить (*i.*), 157,  
 158, 172, 197, 202.  
 любováться (*i.*),  
 140, 203.  
 любовь, 54.  
 любóй, 71, 74, 76.  
 любящій, 172, 201.  
 лю́ди, 53.  
 ля́гте, 169.  
 ля́гу, 151.  
 лягъ, 169.  
 ма́жу, 152.  
 ма́зать (*i.*), 152.  
 ма́ленькій, 74, 85.  
 ма́ло, 111, 112.  
 ма́ло-по-ма́лу, 110,  
 132.  
 ма́ло тогó, что, 123.  
 ма́лый, 83, 85.  
 ма́льчикъ, 46.  
 ма́льчи́шка, 56, 57.  
 ма́лѣйшій, 88.  
 ма́рка, 104.  
 ма́тушка, 246.  
 ма́ть, 39, 54.  
 маха́ть (*i.*), 154,  
 218.  
 махну́ть (*pf.*), 218.  
 ма́шу, 154.  
 ме́жду, 119, 128,  
 142, 238.  
 ме́жду тѣмъ, 142.  
 ме́жду тѣмъ, какъ,  
 182, 251.  
 ме́лкій, 84.  
 ме́ль, 164.  
 ме́льче, 84.  
 мелю́, 155, 162.  
 ме́ньше, 85, 113.  
 ме́ньше всегó, 113.  
 ме́ньшій, 79, 86.  
 ме́ншóй, 86.  
 ме́нѣ, 84, 114.  
 меня́, 58.  
 ме́рзнуть (*i.*), 153.  
 ме́стí (*i.*), 154, 164.  
 ме́тать (*i.*), 154.  
 мету́, 154.  
 мечу́, 154.  
 мило́, 104.  
 мило́сти про́симъ,  
 122.  
 мѣмо, 119, 128.  
 мину́та, 75, 99.  
 мла́дшій, 86.  
 мно́гие, 79, 80.  
 мно́го, 79, 95, 111,  
 112.  
 мно́гое, 80.  
 мной, 58, 60, 143.  
 мно́ю=мно́й.  
 мну, 153.  
 мнѣ, 58, 129, 133.  
 мнѣ́нiе, 131.  
 могла́, 164.  
 могу́, 150, 151.  
 могъ, 164.  
 мо́жетъ, 150, 151.  
 мой, 60-63.  
 мо́кнуть (*i.*), 153,  
 165.  
 моли́ться (*i.*), 129,  
 135, 159.  
 мо́лнiя, 204.  
 мо́лодець, 56.  
 мо́лодой, 72, 85,  
 86.  
 мо́ложе, 85.  
 [мо́лотитъ, *N.B.*=  
*to thresh.*]  
 мо́лотъ (*i.*), 155,  
 162, 166.  
 мо́лча, 199.  
 мо́лча́ть (*i.*), 160.  
 мо́ль, 118.  
 мо́ре, 51.  
 мо́ремъ, 138.  
 мо́розъ, 204.  
 мо́сть, 47, 76, 144.  
 мо́чь (*i.*), 150, 151,  
 214.  
 мо́ю, 156.  
 мсти́ть (*i.*), 129.  
 мужъ, 48 (cf. 133,  
 142).  
 мука́, 43.  
 му́ка, 43.  
 муравѣ́й, 47.  
 мы, 58, 146.  
 мы съ + inst., 115.

- мыть (*i.*), 156, 175, 202, 212.  
 мы́ться (*i.*), 202.  
 мѣста́ми, 139.  
 мѣсто, 68, 86.  
 мѣсяцъ, 46, 101.  
 мѣхъ, 48.  
 мѣшáть (*i.*), 129.  
 мясно́е, 73.  
 мя́со, 120.  
 мять (*i.*), 153, 175.  
  
 на (+ асс.), 75, 119, 135, 136.  
 на (+ loc.), 44, 47, 75, 119, 144.  
 на- (prefix), 238.  
 набито, 202.  
 навѣрно, 110.  
 навѣстítь (*pf.*), 220.  
 навѣщáть (*i.*), 220.  
 на-голову, 43.  
 на-гору, 136.  
 над- (prefix), 239.  
 наде́жда, 117, 238.  
 на́до, 71, 205, 206, 208.  
 надо = надъ.  
 на́добно = на́до.  
 надо́ждать (*i.*), 214.  
 надо́сть (*pf.*), 112, 214.  
 на́дпись, 239.  
 надъ, 119, 129, 142.  
 надѣванъ, 25.  
 надѣва́ть (*i.*), 25, 214.  
 надѣ́ть (*pf.*), 71, 214, 225.  
 надѣ́яться (*i.*), 136, 156, 203, 238.  
 на-еди́нъ, 144.  
 нажítь (*pf.*), 175.  
 наза́дъ, 102.  
 назва́ть (*pf.*), 215.  
 назывáть (*i.*), 215.  
 назывáться (*i.*), 141.  
  
 нан- (superlative prefix), 87, 114.  
 найдётся ли, 207.  
 наизу́сть, 136.  
 найму́, 216.  
 найти (*pf.*), 207, 225, 238.  
 наказáть (*pf.*), 229.  
 наказывáть (*i.*), 229.  
 накану́нъ, 145.  
 наконѣ́ць, 109, 136.  
 налáвливать (*i.*), 229.  
 наловítь (*pf.*), 229.  
 налóженный, 138, 238.  
 налѣ́во, 136.  
 на́ми, 58.  
 намъ, 58, 197.  
 нанима́ть (*i.*), 216.  
 на-ново, 136.  
 на-ночь, 136.  
 наня́ть (*pf.*), 216.  
 написа́ть (*pf.*), 70, 179, 209, 211.  
 наплева́ть (*pf.*), 197.  
 напомина́ть (*i.*), 129.  
 напо́мнить (*pf.*), 129.  
 напра́во, 136.  
 напрáсно, 110.  
 напри́мѣръ, 248.  
 напрока́ть, 242.  
 наро́дъ, 45, 238.  
 наро́чно, 110.  
 на-скоро, 136.  
 наслажда́ться (*i.*), 203, 238.  
 насле́довать (*i.*), 230.  
 на́сморкъ, 125.  
 настоя́щій, 200.  
 насче́тъ, 243.  
 насъ, 58, 124, 208.  
 насѣ́комое, 73, 200.  
 нахо́дить (*i.*), 75, 225, 238.  
  
 нача́ло, 131.  
 нача́ть (*pf.*), 153, 175, 215.  
 начина́ть(ся) (*i.*), 206, 215.  
 начну́, 153, 215.  
 нашъ, 61.  
 наяву́, 144.  
 не, 117, 193.  
 не- (prefix), 69, 70, 107.  
 не + present gerund (= *without-ing*), 183.  
 небеса́, 52.  
 не́бо, 52.  
 небо́сь (from не бóйся), 118.  
 не-было, 43, 122.  
 не-быль, 43.  
 невозмо́жно, 105, 130, 191, 205.  
 нево́ля, 132, 139.  
 невѣро́ятно, 191.  
 негдѣ́, 107.  
 негó, 124.  
 не-далъ, 43, 69.  
 не́ до, 123.  
 недоставáло, 115.  
 недостае́тъ, 205.  
 недоумѣ́вать (*i.*), 230.  
 недѣ́ля (= the old name for *Sunday*, literally: *doing nothing*), 101, 133, 137, 138.  
 неѣ = еѣ after a preposition.  
 неже́ли, 83.  
 незабу́дка, 193.  
 незави́смый, 200.  
 не за что, 70.  
 не за чѣ́мъ, 70.  
 нездорови́тся, 130, 203.  
 ней, 58.  
 нека́къ, 109.  
 некогда, 108.

- некого, 69.  
 некому, 69.  
 некуда, 107.  
 нельзя, 130, 205.  
 немногие, 79, 80.  
 немного, 79, 111, 112, 121.  
 немножко, 111, 121.  
 нему́ = ему́ after къ.  
 нѣмъ, 58, 60.  
 ненавидѣть (*i.*), 226.  
 ненаглядный, 238.  
 не надо, 206.  
 ненасытный, 238.  
 необходимый, 239.  
 необыкновенно, 111.  
 неоцѣнимый, 201.  
 не о чёмъ, 70.  
 неправильно, 110.  
 непременно, 110, 233.  
 неприятно, 130, 195.  
 не разъ, 95.  
 несётъ (*intransitive*), 205.  
 несмотря на, 181, 200.  
 не совсѣмъ, 114.  
 не стало, 205.  
 нести (*i.*), 154, 164, 171, 173, 223, 227.  
 не съ кѣмъ, 70.  
 не такъ (= *wrong*), 110.  
 не только, 112.  
 не то, 249.  
 неужели, 117, 245.  
 неумолимый, 201.  
 нехорошо, 105, 203.  
 нехотя, 199.  
 нечаянно, 110.  
 нечего, 69, 195.  
 ней, 124.  
 ни, 66, 69, 107, 110.  
 ни — ни —, 111, 114, 116.  
 ни въ чёмъ не бывало, 69.  
 нигдѣ, 106, 107.  
 ниже, 84.  
 нижегородскій, 79.  
 нижній, 78.  
 Нижній Повго-родъ, 78, 79.  
 низ- (prefix), 35, 233.  
 ни за что, 69.  
 низкій, 84.  
 низший, 86.  
 никакой, 69, 74, 75.  
 никакъ, 109, 117.  
 никогда, 108, 184, 208.  
 никого, 69, 117, 197.  
 никто, 68.  
 никуда, 107, 250.  
 ними, 37.  
 нимъ, 60.  
 ни о чёмъ, 69.  
 ни разу не, 95.  
 низ- = низ-.  
 несколько, 112.  
 ни съ кѣмъ, 69.  
 ни съ чѣмъ, 69.  
 нихъ, 124, 208.  
 ничего, 69, 111, 117.  
 ничто, 68.  
 но, 115.  
 ногá, 131, 138.  
 ножъ, 46.  
 номеръ, 75.  
 носить (*i.*), 160, 223, 227.  
 ночевать (*i.*), 156.  
 ночью, 156.  
 ночь, 54, 245.  
 ночью, 140, 204.  
 носу, 160, 223.  
 ноу, 156.  
 нравиться (*i.*), 59, 80, 129, 131, 203.  
 ну, 66, 245.  
 нуждаться (*i.*), 230.  
 нужень, 87.  
 нужно, 206.  
 нынѣ, 250.  
 ныть (*i.*), 156.  
 нѣкій, -75.  
 нѣкогда, 108.  
 нѣкоторый, 70, 74, 75, 79.  
 нѣкто, 70, 75.  
 нѣмецъ, 56.  
 нѣсколькихъ, 80.  
 нѣсколько, 79, 95, 112.  
 нѣту = нѣтъ.  
 нѣтъ, 107, 117, 125, 207.  
 нѣчто, 70.  
 о (+ *acc.*), 119, 136.  
 о (+ *loc.*), 44, 47, 69-71, 119, 145.  
 о- (prefix), 239.  
 об- (prefix), 239.  
 оба, 90, 92.  
 обвинять (*pf.*), 173.  
 обезпечить (*pf.*), 235.  
 обидѣть (*pf.*), 174, 239.  
 обижать (*i.*), 239.  
 обкрадывать (*i.*), 211.  
 облако, 52.  
 обмануть (*pf.*), 219.  
 обманывать (*i.*), 219.  
 [обнимать = *i.* of об-нять.]  
 обниму, 153.  
 обнять (*pf.*), 153.  
 обо (= объ = о), 145, 239.  
 обокрасть (*pf.*), 211.  
 образованный, 84.  
 образъ, 48, 75, 139.  
 обрaтить (*pf.*), 174.  
 обтереть (*pf.*), 215.  
 обтирать (*i.*), 215.  
 объ = о.  
 [объѣдать (*i.*), об-ѣсть (*pf.*), *N.B.* = to

- eat or gnaw round, to corrode, to 'sponge on'.]
- объявить (*pf.*), 218.
- объявлять (*i.*), 218.
- объяснение, 239.
- объяснить (*pf.*), 220.
- объяснить (*i.*), 220.
- обыкновенно, 111.
- Объ, 29.
- объ, 90, 92.
- объдать (*i.*), 214 (*N.B.* cf. объ-).
- объдъ, 214, 239.
- огонь, 47.
- огордь, 239.
- одна, 67, 83, 88-90.
- одинъ и тотъ же, 64.
- одна, 89.
- однажды, 95.
- однако, 115, 181.
- однакоже, 115.
- одни, 90.
- одно, 89, 90.
- однѣ, 90.
- одолжение, 251.
- одѣвать(ся), (*i.*), 214.
- одѣть(ся) (*pf.*), 175, 202, 214.
- ожидать (*i.*), 215.
- оказаться (*pf.*), 229.
- оказываться (*i.*), 229.
- окно, 52.
- около, 100, 119, 127.
- окрѣпнуть (*pf.*), 218.
- она, 58-60, 146.
- они, 58-60, 146.
- онѣ, 58, 59, 146, 147.
- онъ, 58-60, 146.
- онный, 64.
- онѣ, 58, 59, 146.
- опасаться (*i.*), 121.
- опасно, 191.
- опечатка, 239.
- оптомъ, 139.
- опять, 109.
- осенний, 78.
- осень, 55, 133.
- осеню, 139.
- осмотрѣть (*pf.*), 173.
- осмѣивать (*i.*), 211.
- осмѣять (*pf.*), 211.
- особенно, 110.
- особливо = особ-енно.
- оставаться (*i.*), 203, 214.
- оставить (*pf.*), 220.
- оставлять (*i.*), 220.
- остаётся, 206.
- останавливаться (*i.*), 218.
- остановиться (*pf.*), 218.
- остаться (*pf.*), 214.
- от- (prefix), 239.
- отвыкать (*i.*), 219.
- отвыкнуть (*pf.*), 219.
- отвѣтить (*pf.*), 220.
- отвѣчать (*i.*), 220.
- отговаривать (*i.*), 229.
- отговорить (*pf.*), 229.
- отецъ, 46, 49, 60, 120.
- отказаться (*pf.*), 229.
- отказываться (*i.*), 229.
- открыто, 252.
- откуда, 108.
- откуда бы то ни было, 108.
- откуда-нибудь, 108.
- откуда ни возь-мись, 194.
- откуда-то, 108.
- отлично, 239.
- отмстить (*pf.*), 174.
- отнять (*pf.*), 126.
- ото (= отъ), 127, 239.
- отобѣдать (*pf.*), 214.
- отсюда, 107.
- оттепель, 204, 239. [оттого, что = *be-cause*, cf. p. 65.]
- оттуда, 107.
- отчасти, 250.
- Отче, 49.
- отчего, 65.
- оть, 60, 119, 126, 127.
- оть времени до времени, 127.
- оть-роду, 47, 127.
- охотно, 199.
- очевидно, 250.
- очень, 63, 113.
- очи, 52.
- очки, 52.
- очнуться (*pf.*), 230.
- очутиться (*pf.*), 230.
- ошибаться (*i.*), 220.
- ошибиться (*pf.*), 220 (*N.B.* cf. 151, 166).
- ошибка, 239.
- падать (*i.*), 217, 221.
- падѹ, 151.
- пара, 97.
- пароходомъ, 138.
- пасты (*i.*), 154.
- пасть (*pf.*), 151, 217, 221.
- пасѹ, 154.
- пахать (*i.*), 154.
- пахнуть, 204.
- пахнуть (*i.*), 141.
- пашѹ, 154.
- пей(те), 169.
- пекѹ, 152.
- пере- (prefix), 233.
- перебѣгать (*i.*), 226.
- перебѣжать (*pf.*), 226.

- передавать (*i.*), 213.  
 передать (*pf.*), 213.  
 передній, 78.  
 передняя, 78.  
 передо=передь.  
 передовой, 73.  
 передь, 119, 143, 241.  
 передь тѣмъ, какъ, 143, 186, 189, 251.  
 передѣлать (*pf.*), 209, 211.  
 передѣлывать (*i.*), 211.  
 перелетать (*i.*), 224.  
 перелетѣть (*pf.*), 224.  
 перемѣнять (*i.*), 220.  
 перемѣнить (*pf.*), 220.  
 переодѣвать(*ся*)(*i.*), 214.  
 переодѣть(*ся*) (*pf.*), 214.  
 пересааживаться(*i.*), 218.  
 переставать (*i.*), 214.  
 перестать (*pf.*), 195, 204, 214.  
 пересѣсть (*pf.*), 218.  
 перо, 37, 52.  
 песокъ, 46.  
 печь (*i.*), 152.  
 писать (*i.*), 129, 150, 155, 179, 211.  
 письмó, 52, 120.  
 пить (*i.*), 129, 156, 228.  
 пишú, 150, 155, 179.  
 плавать (*i.*), 223, 226.  
 плакать (*i.*), 68, 154.  
 пламя, 55.  
 платить (*i.*), 158, 160.  
 пла́тье, 52.  
 плачу́, 43, 158, 160.  
 пла́чу, 43, 154, 171.  
 плевать (*i.*), 157, 197, 218.  
 племя, 55.  
 плести́ (*i.*), 154.  
 плетú, 154.  
 плечó, 52.  
 плóхо, 105.  
 -плы́вать (*i.*), 226.  
 плывú, 151, 223.  
 плыть (*i.*), 151, 223, 226.  
 плю́нуть (*pf.*), 218.  
 плюю́, 157.  
 плясать (*i.*), 155.  
 пляшú, 155.  
 по (+acc.), 95, 104, 119, 137.  
 по (+ dat.), 95, 104, 119, 131, 132.  
 по (+ loc.), 44, 119, 145.  
 по- + comparative adjective, 87.  
 по- + comparative adverb, 114.  
 по- (verbal and nominal prefix), 240.  
 по-англійски, 106.  
 побить (*pf.*), 212, 229.  
 по-бóльше, 113.  
 побѣ́гать (*pf.*), 221, 226.  
 побѣ́жать (*pf.*), 226.  
 по-вашему, 106.  
 повезти́ (*pf.*), 224.  
 повести́ (*pf.*), 224, 227.  
 повѣ́димо́му, 201.  
 повиноваться (*i.*), 230.  
 повиснуть (*pf.*), 219.  
 повлечь (*pf.*), 214.  
 повсю́ду, 106.  
 повторить (*pf.*), 220.  
 повторять (*i.*), 220.  
 повѣ́рить (*pf.*), 66, 198.  
 повѣ́снить (*pf.*), 220.  
 поговорить (*pf.*), 208, 228, 229.  
 погóда, 75.  
 погóдя, 199.  
 под- (prefix), 241.  
 пода́вать (*i.*), 213.  
 подавить (*pf.*), 212.  
 подарить (*pf.*), 95, 129.  
 подáть (*pf.*), 213.  
 подвигать (*i.*), 221.  
 подвину́ть (*pf.*), 221.  
 подда́ваться (*i.*), 213.  
 поддаться (*pf.*), 213.  
 поджидать (*i.*), 215.  
 поди́=пойди́.  
 подлежа́ть (*i.*), 230.  
 подлежащее, 200.  
 подлѣ́ть, 119, 127.  
 подморáживаетъ, 204.  
 поднимать (*i.*), 216.  
 поднимú, 216.  
 поднйть (*pf.*), 216.  
 подо (=подь), 143, 241.  
 подобный, 131.  
 подождать (*pf.*), 215.  
 подро́звѣать, 241.  
 подражать (*i.*), 129, 230.  
 подслýшать (*pf.*), 211.  
 подслýшивать (*i.*), 211.  
 подúмать, 252.  
 подь, 119, 143, 241.  
 подь-гору, 137.  
 подь-руку, 137.  
 подымать (*i.*), 216.



- подымѹ = поднимѹ.  
 пожалуй(те), 251.  
 пожалуйста, 120.  
 пожáть (*pf.*), 215.  
 пожертвовать (*pf.*),  
 141.  
 пожилóй, 120.  
 позабóтиться (*pf.*),  
 230.  
 позавѣдовать (*pf.*),  
 226.  
 позадѣ, 119, 128.  
 позвáть (*pf.*), 215.  
 позволѣть (*pf.*), 220.  
 позволять (*i.*), 220.  
 позвонѣть (*pf.*), 70.  
 пóзднѣй, 78, 85, 105.  
 пóздно, 105.  
 позднѣе, 85.  
 пóзже, 85.  
 пóй, 169.  
 пойдѣмте, 170.  
 пойдѣмъ, 170.  
 пойдѣи, 27.  
 поймáть (*pf.*), 216,  
 228, 229.  
 поймáю, 228.  
 поймѹ, 216, 252.  
 поискáть (*pf.*), 211.  
 пóйте, 169.  
 пойтѣ (*pf.*), 198, 227.  
 пойтѣ (*i.*), 228.  
 покá, 118, 182, 250.  
 показáлось, 230.  
 показáть (*pf.*), 152,  
 229.  
 показывáть (*i.*), 229.  
 по-какóвски, 106.  
 [покамѣсть = покá.]  
 покá не, 186, 189.  
 покидáть (*i.*), 219.  
 покинуть (*pf.*), 219.  
 по крайней мѣрѣ,  
 114.  
 покровѣтельство-  
 вать (*i.*), 230.  
 покрѣть (*pf.*), 175,  
 212.
- [поку́да = покá].  
 покупáть (*i.*), 134,  
 217, 219.  
 [полá = *skirt of over-  
coat.*]  
 полага́ется, 229.  
 полага́ть (*i.*), 229.  
 полгóда, 101.  
 полд́ень, 98.  
 пол́е, 62.  
 полѣмъ, 138.  
 полетѣть (*pf.*), 224.  
 ползáть (*i.*), 223.  
 ползтѣ (*i.*), 152, 223.  
 ползѹ, 152, 223.  
 [пол́ка = *shelf.*]  
 [пол́къ = *regiment.*]  
 пол́ночь, 98.  
 пол́нный, 77, 85.  
 полнѣе, 85.  
 полови́на, 97.  
 положи́мъ, 229.  
 положи́ть (*pf.*), 137,  
 228, 229.  
 положи́ться (*pf.*),  
 136.  
 полóнь, 77, 122.  
 полóть (*i.*), 155.  
 полрѹмки, 98.  
 полтѣна, 103.  
 полтѣнникъ, 103.  
 полтора́, 97.  
 полтора́ста, 98.  
 полѹдня, 100.  
 полѹночи, 100.  
 полѹтора, 97.  
 получáть (*i.*), 155,  
 220, 240.  
 получи́ть (*pf.*), 127,  
 220, 240.  
 полфѹнта, 98.  
 полчаса́, 99.  
 [поль = (1) *floor*, (2)  
*sex.*]  
 поль́ка, 56.  
 полѹ, 155.  
 поля́къ, 56.  
 по-мѣньше, 113.
- помѣлуй(те), 251.  
 помина́й, 194.  
 по-минѹтно, 100.  
 помнѣть (*i.*), 70.  
 помогáть (*i.*), 214.  
 по моѣй чáсти, 132.  
 по-моѣму, 106, 131.  
 пó-морю, 131.  
 помóчь (*pf.*), 190,  
 214.  
 по-невóлѣ, 132.  
 по-немно́жку, 132.  
 понестѣ (*pf.*), 225,  
 227.  
 понимáть (*i.*), 66,  
 216, 229.  
 поно́сить (*pf.*), 225,  
 227.  
 по-нѣмецки, 106.  
 понáть (*pf.*), 216,  
 229.  
 пообѣдáть (*pf.*),  
 214.  
 попадáть (*i.*), 221.  
 попа́сть (*pf.*), 221.  
 по-полѹдни, 100.  
 по-прѣжнему, 132.  
 попробовáть (*pf.*),  
 197.  
 попросѣть (*pf.*), 212.  
 попытáть (*pf.*), 210.  
 порá, 103, 130.  
 порáботáть (*pf.*),  
 211.  
 порáми, 103.  
 порóй, 103.  
 порóть (*i.*), 155.  
 по-рѹсски, 106.  
 порю, 155.  
 по-своѣму, 106.  
 по-скорѣе, 109.  
 послáть (*pf.*), 142,  
 215, 240.  
 послѹшáть (*pf.*),  
 192, 211.  
 послѣ́, 119, 128,  
 187, 240.  
 послѣ́днѣй, 78, 240.

- по́слѣ-завтра, 109.  
 по́слѣ того́, какъ,  
 186, 189, 251.  
 посмотре́ть (*pf.*),  
 192, 197, 209, 211.  
 посредѣ, 119, 128.  
 посредствомъ, 139.  
 поста́вить (*pf.*), 115,  
 220.  
 пострóить (*pf.*), 211.  
 поступи́ть (*i.*), 218,  
 219.  
 поступи́ть (*pf.*),  
 133, 218.  
 посыла́ть (*i.*), 215,  
 240.  
 посы́пать (*pf.*), 221.  
 по́стѣть (*pf.*), 160,  
 174, 220, 240.  
 по́сѣщать (*i.*), 220,  
 240.  
 по́сѣщѹ, 160.  
 поте́рѣть (*pf.*), 215.  
 поте́рѣть (*pf.*), 173.  
 по-тихо́ньку, 132.  
 потому́, 63.  
 потому́, что, 65, 132,  
 181.  
 потóмъ, 63.  
 по́тчевать (*i.*), 156.  
 по́тчую, 156.  
 потяну́ть (*pf.*), 211,  
 218.  
 по-фра́нцузски, 106.  
 похо́жь, 78, 84, 136.  
 почему́, 65, 132.  
 по-чѣмъ, 104, 145.  
 [почива́ть (*i.*), *N.V.*  
 = *to repose.*]  
 почита́ть (*pf.*), 211.  
 почтѣ (что), 113.  
 поше́ль, 68, 185,  
 204.  
 пошла́, 186.  
 по́ѣздъ, 139.  
 по́ѣзжай(те), 169.  
 по́ѣсть (*pf.*), 214.  
 по́ѣхаль, 110, 185.
- по́ѣхать (*pf.*), 226,  
 227.  
 по́ѣтически, 106.  
 пою́, 156.  
 пра́вда, 181.  
 пра́вить (*i.*), 141.  
 пра́вый, 137.  
 пре- (prepositional  
 prefix), 233, 234.  
 пре- (superlative  
 prefix), 88, 234.  
 превос- (prefix),  
 234.  
 пред- (prefix), 241.  
 предвѣ́дѣть (*i.*),  
 226.  
 предло́гъ, 142, 143.  
 пре́до=предъ.  
 предпочита́ть (*i.*),  
 197, 241.  
 представлѣ́нiе, 122.  
 предста́в(те), 245.  
 предстои́тъ, 206.  
 предсто́ять (*i.*), 230.  
 предчу́вствовать  
 (*i.*), 230.  
 предъ=пéредъ.  
 пре́жде, 182.  
 пре́жде, чѣмъ, 186.  
 пре́жний, 78.  
 преслѣ́довать (*i.*),  
 230.  
 при, 44, 119, 145,  
 242.  
 прибу́гать (*i.*), 226.  
 прибу́гнуть (*pf.*),  
 226.  
 прибу́жать (*pf.*),  
 226.  
 привезти́ (*pf.*), 224.  
 привле́кать (*i.*), 214.  
 привле́чь (*pf.*), 214.  
 привози́ть (*i.*), 224.  
 приви́кать (*i.*), 219.  
 приви́кнуть (*pf.*),  
 219.  
 придава́ть (*i.*), 213.  
 прида́ть (*pf.*), 213.
- придѣ́тся, 203.  
 придти́=прийти́.  
 прижа́ть (*pf.*), 215.  
 прижима́ть (*i.*), 215.  
 призна́ться (*pf.*),  
 203.  
 приказа́ть (*pf.*),  
 191, 229.  
 прика́зывать (*i.*),  
 229.  
 прики́дываться (*i.*),  
 219.  
 прики́нуться (*pf.*),  
 219.  
 приму́, 153, 216.  
 принадлежа́ть (*i.*),  
 230, 239.  
 принести́ (*pf.*), 225,  
 227.  
 принима́ть (*i.*), 216,  
 242.  
 приноси́ть (*i.*), 225,  
 227.  
 приня́ть (*pf.*), 153,  
 216, 242.  
 приписа́ть (*pf.*),  
 209, 211.  
 приписыва́ть (*i.*),  
 211.  
 при се́мъ, 64.  
 прислѹ́га, 51.  
 притворя́ться (*i.*),  
 142.  
 притóмъ (or *sepa-*  
*rately*), 145.  
 прихóдится, 130,  
 203.  
 приходи́ть, 131,  
 225, 242.  
 причѣмъ (or *sepa-*  
*rately*), 145.  
 прише́ль, 65, 69,  
 131.  
 пришло́сь, 203.  
 прийти́, 225, 242.  
 приобре́ль, 25.  
 приобре́сти (*pf.*),  
 25, 154.

- прѣздъ, 122, 145.  
 прѣзж́ать (*i.*), 110,  
 179, 226, 242.  
 прѣх́ать (*pf.*), 226,  
 242.  
 про, 119, 137, 242.  
 провести (*pf.*), 224.  
 проводить (*i.*), 224,  
 227.  
 проводить (*pf.*), 227.  
 провож́ать (*i.*), 227.  
 продава́ть (*i.*), 135,  
 213, 242.  
 прода́ть (*pf.*), 135,  
 213, 242.  
 продолж́ать (*i.*),  
 195, 202.  
 продолж́аться (*i.*),  
 202.  
 прои́звести (*pf.*),  
 133.  
 пройти, 225, 242.  
 прокля́тый, 175,  
 202.  
 прола́мывать (*i.*),  
 211.  
 пролома́ть (*pf.*), 211.  
 пропада́ть (*i.*), 221.  
 пропа́сть (*pf.*), 221.  
 пропива́ть (*i.*), 212.  
 пропи́ть (*pf.*), 212.  
 просвѣ́щенный,  
 174.  
 проси́ть (*i.*), 121,  
 122, 191, 212.  
 просну́ться (*pf.*),  
 221.  
 простере́ть (*pf.*),  
 154.  
 [простира́ть=*i.* of  
 простере́ть.]  
 прости́ть(*ся*) (*pf.*),  
 217, 245.  
 просто́й, 84, 96.  
 простру́, 154.  
 просту́да, 125, 242.  
 простуди́ться (*pf.*),  
 203.  
 просыпа́ться (*i.*),  
 221.  
 просьба, 131.  
 прот́ивъ, 119, 128,  
 242.  
 протяну́ть (*pf.*), 175.  
 профе́ссоръ, 47.  
 проходи́ть (*i.*), 225,  
 242.  
 прочёлъ, 165.  
 проче́сть (*pf.*), 154,  
 165, 174, 211.  
 прочита́ть (*pf.*), 211.  
 прочи́тывать (*i.*),  
 211.  
 прот́ий, 142, 248.  
 прочла́, 165.  
 прочту́, 154.  
 прошед́ший, 201.  
 прошлогод́ний, 102.  
 прошлы́й, 102, 133,  
 201.  
 проща́ть(*ся*) (*i.*),  
 217, 245.  
 прот́е, 84.  
 пряду́, 152.  
 прямо́й, 83.  
 прья́сть (*i.*), 152.  
 прятать (*i.*), 154.  
 прячу́, 154.  
 пуска́й, 170, 192.  
 пуска́ть (*i.*), 217.  
 пусти́ть (*pf.*), 160,  
 217.  
 пусть, 170, 192.  
 путь, 54, 121, 139.  
 пуцу́, 160.  
 пыта́ть (*i.*), 210.  
 пью́, 156.  
 пья́ница, 51.  
 пѣвѣ́ць, 56, 224.  
 пѣви́ца, 56.  
 пѣсня́, 51.  
 пѣть (*i.*), 156, 175,  
 212.  
 пята́къ, 103.  
 пятачо́къ, 103.  
 пятина́лты́нный, 103.  
 пѣто, 29.  
 пять, 29, 88, 92, 93,  
 102.  
 пятьдеся́тъ, 43, 89,  
 92.  
 пятьсо́тъ, 89, 93.  
 раб́отать (*i.*), 211.  
 ра́ди, 119, 128.  
 ра́доваться (*i.*), 129.  
 ра́достный, 76.  
 ра́дость, 53, 127.  
 радъ, 53, 71, 84, 130.  
 раз- (разѣ́х), 35, 234,  
 235.  
 разви́тие, 86, 234.  
 развѣ́, 116.  
 развѣ́ не, 116.  
 разговари́вать (*i.*),  
 219, 229.  
 раздава́ть (*i.*), 213.  
 разда́ть (*pf.*), 213.  
 раздѣ́вать(*ся*) (*i.*),  
 214, 234.  
 раздѣ́ть(*ся*) (*pf.*),  
 214, 234.  
 разо́мъ, 139.  
 разрѣ́шать (*i.*), 218.  
 разрѣ́шить (*pf.*),  
 218.  
 сказа́ть (*pf.*),  
 229.  
 сказа́ывать (*i.*),  
 229.  
 размат́ривать (*i.*),  
 211.  
 рассмотре́ть (*pf.*),  
 211.  
 разстава́ться (*i.*),  
 214.  
 разста́ться (*pf.*),  
 214.  
 разу́мъ, 230, 235.  
 разу́мѣется (*i.*), 59,  
 139, 203, 230.  
 разъ, 49, 75, 95, 96,  
 134, 136.

- развѣздить (*pf.*), 227.  
 развѣзжаться (*i.*), 227.  
 развѣживать (*i.*), 227.  
 развѣхаться (*pf.*), 227, 235.  
 раненный, 173.  
 ранить (*i.* and *pf.*), 173, 230.  
 ранний, 78, 84, 105.  
 рано, 105.  
 раньше, 84.  
 ранѣе, 251.  
 рас- (=раз-), 235.  
 раскрывать (*i.*), 212.  
 раскрыть (*pf.*), 212.  
 распять (*pf.*), 153.  
 расти (*i.*), 154, 166, 228.  
 ребенокъ, 53, 55.  
 ребята, 53, 55.  
 ревѣть (*i.*), 151.  
 ржать (*i.*), 152.  
 ровно, 111.  
 рогъ, 47.  
 родина, 132, 145.  
 родиться (*pf.*), 142.  
 родомъ, 140. [202.  
 родъ, 75.  
 рождѣніе, 134.  
 Рождество (*Christmas*), 123.  
 рожь, 54.  
 роз- (prefix), 235.  
 роптать (*i.*), 155.  
 рос- (=роз-), 235.  
 росла, 166.  
 Россія, 50, 76, 133, 138, 226.  
 рості=расті.  
 ростомъ, 137.  
 росъ, 166.  
 рою, 156.  
 рубль, 31, 70, 103, 104, 132, 134.  
 ружьё, 52.  
 рука, 43, 135, 136, 138.  
 руководить (*i.*), 141.  
 русскій, 74, 76, 144.  
 русско-, 77.  
 Русь, 38.  
 ручей, 47.  
 рыба, 82.  
 рыбий, 82.  
 рыть (*i.*), 156.  
 рѣдкій, 84.  
 рѣже, 84.  
 рѣжу, 152.  
 рѣзать (*i.*), 152.  
 рѣка, 138, 140.  
 рѣшать (*i.*), 217, 218.  
 рѣшить (*pf.*), 217, 218.  
 рядомъ, 139.  
 садить (*i.*), 173, 223.  
 садиться (*i.*), 217, 218.  
 садъ, 47.  
 сажать (*i.*), 223.  
 сажень, 54, 97.  
 сажу, 223.  
 самецъ, 56.  
 сажка, 56.  
 само собою, 59, 68, 139.  
 самъ, 67.  
 самъ-другъ, 97.  
 самъ-третій, 94.  
 самый, 68, 87, 144.  
 сани, 53.  
 сверкать (*i.*), 204.  
 сверху=съ вѣрху.  
 сверхъ, 119, 128.  
 свобода, 144.  
 свободно, 252.  
 свой, 60, 61, 106, 144.  
 свѣдущій, 200.  
 свѣжій, 79, 84, 144.  
 свѣтло-, 77.  
 свѣтъ, 144.  
 сдавать (*i.*), 213.  
 сдать (*pf.*), 213.  
 сдѣлать (*pf.*), 71, 173, 178.  
 себѣ, 59, 131, 137.  
 себя, 58, 59, 137, 203.  
 сегодня, 64, 109, 122, 140, 147.  
 сегодняшній, 78.  
 сей, 62, 64, 99.  
 сейчасъ, 64, 99, 109.  
 село, 24, 39, 51, 52, 80.  
 семь, 36, 88.  
 семья, 30.  
 сестра, 49-51.  
 сжечь (*pf.*), 215.  
 сидя, 170, 199.  
 сижу, 159.  
 сію мину́ту, 64, 99, 109.  
 сію секунду, 99.  
 скажи(те), 129, 251.  
 сказать (*pf.*), 152, 197, 228, 229, 252.  
 сказуемое, 200.  
 сказывать (*i.*), 229.  
 скакать (*i.*), 217.  
 скверно, 105.  
 сквозь, 119, 137.  
 сколько, 95, 112, 126, 130.  
 сколько-нибудь, 112.  
 скоро, 109.  
 скорость, 53.  
 скорѣе, 113.  
 скосить (*pf.*), 174.  
 скочить (*pf.*), 217.  
 скребу, 151.  
 скресті (*i.*), 151.  
 скука, 126, 127.  
 скучать (*i.*), 145.  
 скушать (*pf.*), 71.  
 слать (*i.*), 150, 155, 215.  
 слишкомъ, 113.

- словарь, 77.  
 слóвно, 250.  
 слóво, 90, 128, 139.  
 сломать (*pf.*), 59, 211.  
 слуга, 51, 55.  
 служба, 144.  
 служить (*i.*), 142.  
 случай, 75, 132.  
 случайно, 110.  
 случаться (*i.*), 203.  
 случиться (*pf.*), 66, 194.  
 слúшать (*i.*), 66, 192, 211.  
 слыу, 151.  
 слыть (*i.*), 142, 151.  
 слыхать (*i.*), 69, 198, 224, 225.  
 слышать (*i.*), 70, 158, 160, 224, 225.  
 слéдить (*i.*), 240.  
 слéдовательно, 110.  
 слéдовать (*i.*), 206, 240.  
 слéдуеть, 206.  
 слéдующий, 144, 200, 240.  
 смеркается, 203.  
 сморкаться (*i.*), 203.  
 смотреть (*i.*), 160, 209, 211.  
 смотря, 200.  
 смочь (*pf.*), 196, 214.  
 смётъ (*i.*), 157.  
 смётаться (*i.*), 129, 157, 203, 211, 237.  
 снаружи, 108.  
 сначала, 109, 126.  
 снизу = съ низу.  
 снимать (*i.*), 216, 243.  
 сниму, 153, 216.  
 снятся, 203.  
 сно́ва, 109, 126.  
 сновать (*i.*), 156.  
 сную, 156.  
 снэгъ, 204.  
 снять (*pf.*), 153, 216, 243.  
 со (= съ), 143, 243.  
 собака, 82, 123, 125, 186.  
 собирать (*i.*), 229.  
 собой, 59, 60, 139.  
 собою = собой.  
 собрать (*pf.*), 229.  
 совать (*i.*), 156, 218, 219.  
 со временемъ, 102, 143.  
 совсёмъ, 68, 114.  
 совсёмъ не, 113.  
 совётывать (*i.*), 156, 169.  
 содержать (*i.*), 230.  
 содѣйствовать (*i.*), 230.  
 сожалеть (*i.*), 230.  
 создавать (*i.*), 213.  
 создать (*pf.*), 213.  
 сойти (*pf.*), 201, 225.  
 сойтись (*pf.*), 225.  
 солдаты, 49, 123, 133.  
 солнце, 144.  
 соловей, 47.  
 сомнѣваться (*i.*), 243.  
 сорокъ, 89, 93.  
 сорть, 86.  
 состоять (*i.*), 206, 230, 252.  
 состояться (*pf.*), 206, 230.  
 сосѣдъ, 48, 130.  
 сотня, 97.  
 сохнуть (*i.*), 153, 165.  
 сочувствовать (*i.*), 230.  
 спать (*i.*), 158, 159 (cf. 221).  
 спится, 130, 203.  
 сплошь, 114.  
 сплю, 158, 159 (cf. 221).  
 спокóбенъ, 77.  
 сполна, 114.  
 способный, 76.  
 способъ, 139.  
 спою, 157.  
 спрашивать (*i.*), 71, 212.  
 спросить (*pf.*), 70, 212.  
 спрошу, 70.  
 спѣть (*i.* = *ripen*), 157.  
 спѣть (*pf.* = *sing*), 157, 212.  
 сразу, 95, 126.  
 среда, 100.  
 среди, 128.  
 средне-, 79.  
 средній, 78.  
 -ставать (*i.*), 155, 214.  
 ставить (*i.*), 220.  
 стаканъ, 120.  
 стало-быть, 195, 205.  
 становиться (*i.*), 141, 203, 217, 218.  
 стану, 153, 187.  
 старше, 85.  
 старший, 86.  
 старый, 85.  
 стареть (*i.*), 157.  
 статья (*pf.*), 153, 187, 214, 217, 218.  
 статья, 50.  
 стелю, 155 (cf. 240).  
 стéпень, 75, 86.  
 стерегу, 151.  
 стеречь (*i.*), 151.  
 стиль, 132, 248.  
 стлать (*i.*), 155.  
 сто, 49, 89, 93.  
 стоить (*i.*), 112, 121, 122, 160, 190, 230.  
 столовая, 73.  
 столъ, 45, 134-136, 142.  
 столько, 112.

- столѣтіе, 102.  
 стонать (*i.*), 153.  
 сторона, 137.  
 сто́я, 170, 199.  
 стоять (*i.*), 160.  
 страна́но, 110.  
 страсть, 53.  
 сгрѣмя, 55.  
 сгрѣ́ть, 151.  
 сгрѣчь (*i.*), 151, 174.  
 сгрѣ́ть (*i.*), 211.  
 сгрѣ́лой, 138.  
 стуль, 48.  
 ступа́ть (*i.*), 217, 218.  
 сгу́нить (*pf.*), 217, 218.  
 сгнѣнуть (*v.*), 153, 165.  
 сгнѣ́вать (*i.*), 211.  
 сгнѣ́уть (*pf.*), 211.  
 сдѣ́рыня, 118.  
 сдѣ́ръ, 118.  
 сдѣ́но, 52.  
 судьба́, 51.  
 судья́, 50, 51, 55.  
 сумасше́дшій, 201.  
 сумѣ́ть (*pf.*), 195, 196.  
 сѣ́нуть (*pf.*), 218, 219.  
 сѣ́тки, 99.  
 суть, 161, 208.  
 сухѣ́мь путе́мь, сую́, 156. [138.  
 сходѣ́ть (*i.*), 225.  
 сходѣ́ть (*pf.*), 225-227.  
 сходѣ́ться (*i.*), 225.  
 счита́ть (*i.*), 243.  
 счита́ться (*i.*), 142.  
 съ (+acc.), 119, 137.  
 съ (+gen.), 119, 126.  
 съ (+ inst.), 60, 69-71, 119, 143.  
 -съ (suffix of politeness), 118.  
 съ вѣ́рху, 47.  
 съ вѣ́ду, 47.  
 съ нѣ́зу, 47.  
 съ тѣ́мь, что́бы, 251.  
 съ тѣ́хъ поръ, 103.  
 съ т. п., какъ, 251.  
 сѣ́дѣ́ть (*i.*), 214.  
 сѣ́здить (*pf.*), 226, 227.  
 сѣ́сть (*pf.*), 214.  
 сыгра́ть (*pf.*), 71.  
 сы́знова, 126.  
 сыновья́, 48.  
 сынь, 48.  
 сы́пать (*i.*), 155, 221.  
 сы́плю, 155, 168, 221.  
 сы́ть, 83, 123.  
 -сь (reflexive pronoun), 59, 175, 176.  
 сѣ́веръ, 136.  
 сѣ́дло, 25.  
 сѣ́дой, 73.  
 сѣ́ку́, 152.  
 сѣ́мя, 38, 55.  
 сѣ́рый, 77.  
 сѣ́сть (*pf.*), 152, 165, 217, 218.  
 сѣ́чь (*i.*), 152.  
 сѣ́ять (*i.*), 157.  
 сѣ́ю́, 107.  
 -ся (reflexive pronoun), 59, 175, 176.  
 сѣ́ю, 134, 152.  
 сѣ́д(те), 168.  
 -таки, 115, 181.  
 та́кже, 116.  
 таковѣ́й, 64, 74.  
 таковѣ́, 249.  
 тако́й, 63, 64, 74, 75.  
 тако́й же, 64, 74, 75.  
 тако́й-то, 144, 249.  
 такъ (= *in that case*), 198.  
 такъ, 65, 109, 111, 250.  
 такъ и, 115, 250.  
 такъ и бы́ть, 195.  
 такъ и ся́къ, 111.  
 такъ какъ, 181, 248.  
 такъ себѣ́, 59, 131.  
 та́къ-то, 111, 250.  
 такъ что, 182.  
 та́мошній, 78.  
 тамъ, 63, 106.  
 тамъ и ся́мь, 107.  
 танцова́ть (*i.*), 156, 240.  
 та́ять (*i.*), 155.  
 твой, 60, 61.  
 тебѣ́, 58.  
 тебѣ́, 58.  
 теку́, 152.  
 темно́, 43, 105.  
 темнѣ́ть (*i.*), 206.  
 тепе́решній, 78.  
 тепе́рь, 108, 111.  
 тепло́, 105, 208.  
 терѣ́ть (*i.*), 154, 164, 175, 215.  
 терпѣ́ть (*i.*), 159.  
 [терѣ́ть, *N.B.* = *i.* of потеря́ть.]  
 течь (*i.*), 152, 164.  
 тка́ть (*i.*), 152.  
 то (= *in that case*), 180, 181, 194.  
 то — то —, 188.  
 -то (suffix of emphasis), 60, 62, 63, 111.  
 -то (suffix of uncertainty), 70, 107, 110.  
 -то (suffix to infinitive), 198.  
 тобо́й, 58, 60.  
 тобо́ю = тобо́й.  
 тогда́, 108.  
 тогда́шній, 78.  
 тогѣ́ и, 194.  
 то́же, 64, 116.  
 то и дѣ́ло, 64.  
 толку́, 152.  
 толо́чь (*i.*), 152.  
 Толсто́й, 73.

то́лстый, 73, 84.  
 то́лько, 112.  
 то́му наза́дъ, 102.  
 то́ну́тъ (*i.*), 153.  
 то́птать (*i.*), 155.  
 то́ропиться (*i.*), 159.  
 то́-то, 63.  
 то́тъ, 62-64.  
 то́тъ же, 64.  
 то́тъ же са́мый, 68.  
 то́тъ-часть (ог то́тъ-часть), 109.  
 то́чка, 26.  
 то́чно, 111.  
 то́чь-въ-то́чь, 250.  
 тре́петать (*i.*), 155.  
 тре́ть, 98.  
 тре́тьяго дня, 82, 109.  
 три, 88, 91, 101.  
 три́ста, 89, 93.  
 тро́гать (*i.*), 218, 219.  
 тро́е, 97.  
 тро́нуть (*pf.*), 153, 164, 218, 219.  
 тру, 154, 215.  
 трясти́ (*i.*), 25, 154.  
 Турге́невъ, 81, 250.  
 ты, 58, 146.  
 ты́сяча, 89, 93.  
 ты́ма, 39.  
 тѣ́, 62.  
 тѣ́ло, 38.  
 тѣ́мъ, 140.  
 тяжё́лый, 85.  
 тяжё́кий, 77.  
 тяну́тъ (*i.*), 153, 211, 218.  
 у, 119, 124-126, 243, 244.  
 у (= *from*), 126.  
 уби́вать (*i.*), 212, 229.  
 уби́ть (*pf.*), 212, 229.

уби́ица, 51.  
 убо́дѣть (*pf.*), 220.  
 убо́ждать (*i.*), 220.  
 уви́дѣть (*pf.*), 225.  
 уви́дѣвши, 199.  
 уви́дѣть (*pf.*), 111, 225.  
 уви́дя, 199.  
 уви́, 245.  
 уго́дно, 130, 244.  
 уго́ль, 47.  
 уго́ль, 47.  
 уда́рить (*pf.*), 220, 228, 229.  
 уда́рять (*i.*), 220, 229.  
 уди́влѣніе, 131.  
 уди́вляться (*i.*), 129.  
 удо́бно, 244.  
 удо́вольствіе, 143.  
 ука́зать (*pf.*), 173.  
 уже́, 84, 109.  
 уже́, 84.  
 уже́ не, 109, 249.  
 уже́ нѣтъ, 109.  
 ужь (= *уже*), 195.  
 узна́вать (*i.*), 155, 212, 213.  
 узна́ть (*pf.*), 71, 212, 213.  
 уи́ти (*pf.*), 227.  
 указа́ть (*pf.*), 229.  
 указа́ь, 35.  
 указы́вать (*i.*), 229.  
 укла́дывать (*ся*) (*i.*), 229.  
 ў́лица, 73, 131.  
 уложі́ть (*ся*) (*pf.*), 229.  
 улыба́ться (*i.*), 203.  
 у мені́ есть, 112, 124.  
 умерѣ́ть (*pf.*), 154, 172, 215.  
 уми́рать (*i.*), 215.  
 ў́мница, 56, 126.  
 умру́, 154, 215.  
 ў́мъ, 235.

умы́ваться (*i.*), 212.  
 умы́ться (*pf.*), 212.  
 умѣ́ть (*i.*), 66, 157.  
 унаслѣ́довать (*pf.*), 230.  
 употре́бить (*pf.*), 220.  
 употре́блять (*i.*), 220.  
 управі́ть (*i.*), 141.  
 услы́хать (*pf.*), 225, 226.  
 устáнать (*pf.*), 225, 226.  
 успѣ́вать (*i.*), 196.  
 успѣ́ть (*pf.*), 196.  
 уста́вать (*i.*), 155, 213.  
 уста́ть (*pf.*), 213.  
 устрáивать (*i.*), 211.  
 устро́ить (*pf.*), 110, 111, 211.  
 ў́тренній, 78.  
 ў́тромъ, 139, 140.  
 уха́живать (*i.*), 227.  
 ў́хо, 52.  
 уходи́ть (*i.*), 227.  
 уходи́ть (*pf.*), 227.  
 учени́къ, 56.  
 учени́ца, 56.  
 учёный, 173.  
 учи́лище, 52.  
 учи́тель, 47, 56.  
 учи́тельница, 56.  
 учи́ть (*i.*), 129, 158, 160, 173.  
 учи́ться (*i.*), 129, 160.  
 ў́ши, 52.  
 уши́бить (*pf.*), 151, 166.  
 уѣ́зжать (*i.*), 226.  
 уѣ́хать (*pf.*), 66, 226.  
 формирова́ть (*i.*), 156.  
 фунтъ, 47, 97, 121.  
 футъ, 49, 140.

хватаетъ, 205.  
 хватать (*i.*), 217.  
 хватить, 205.  
 хватить (*pf.*), 217.  
 хлопъ, 246.  
 хлѣбъ, 48, 120.  
 ходить (*i.*), 68, 159,  
 223, 225, 227, 252.  
 хожу, 159, 222, 223.  
 хозяйева, 48.  
 хозяинъ, 48.  
 холодно, 105, 191,  
 208.  
 хорошенькій, 88.  
 хорошенько, 110,  
 189.  
 хорошій, 79, 105.  
 хорошо, 78, 105,  
 197, 204.  
 хоть, 181, 194.  
 хоть куда, 108.  
 хотѣль, 166, 196.  
 хотѣль-бы, 167.  
 хотѣть (*i.*), 154,  
 160, 161, 249.  
 хотя, 118, 181, 194,  
 199.  
 хохотать (*i.*), 154.  
 хочется, 129, 203.  
 хочу, 154, 161, 196.  
 христианинъ, 48.  
 Христосъ, 49.  
 худой, 85.  
 худшій, 86.  
 худѣе, 85.  
 хуже, 85, 114.  
 царіца (or госуда-  
 рыня), 50, 81.  
 царь (*N.B.* the  
 reigning sovereign  
 is usually referred  
 to as государь,  
*q.v.*), 45.  
 цвѣль, 25.  
 цвѣсті (*i.*), 25, 154.  
 цвѣта, 48.  
 цвѣтокъ, 48.

цвѣту, 154.  
 цвѣтъ, 48.  
 цвѣты, 48, 83.  
 центръ, 68.  
 церковь, 54.  
 цѣликóмъ, 139.  
 цѣлкóвый, 103.  
 цѣлый, 99, 133.  
 цѣль, 143.  
 цѣна, 86, 130, 132.  
 цѣпъ, 37.  
 цѣпь, 37.

чай, 47, 120.  
 Чайковскій, 74.  
 часто, 208.  
 часть, 53, 86, 139.  
 часть, 75, 98-100,  
 144.  
 часы, 97, 98.  
 чего, 64.  
 чей, 62, 65.  
 человекъ, 49, 53,  
 56, 82.  
 человѣчій, 82.  
 чему, 64, 132.  
 чѣмъ, 64, 145.  
 черезчуръ, 113.  
 черезъ, 99, 102,  
 119, 137, 138.  
 чертъ, 48.  
 чесать (*i.*), 154.  
 четверо, 94, 96.  
 четверть, 98.  
 четыре, 88, 91.  
 четыреста, 89, 93.  
 чешется, 154, 203.  
 число, 75, 101.  
 чисто, 40.  
 читать (*i.*), 155, 171,  
 172, 211.  
 чрезвычайно, 111.  
 чрезъ=черезъ.  
 что (conjunction),  
 65, 180, 186, 188.  
 что (introducing  
 question), 67, 116.

что (pronoun), 63,  
 187, 197.  
 чтобъ=чтобы.  
 чтобы, 66, 118, 182,  
 190, 191, 249, 251.  
 чтобы! (introduc-  
 ing wish), 66.  
 чтобы не, 118, 191.  
 что бы ни, 66, 190.  
 что же, 66, 197.  
 чтожъ, 66.  
 что-ли, 116.  
 что-либо, 70.  
 что ни, 188.  
 что-нибудь, 70.  
 что-то; 70.  
 чувствовать (*i.*), 69,  
 203.  
 чудеса, 40, 52.  
 чудо, 40, 52.  
 чужой, 73, 74, 194.  
 чуть, 114, 186.  
 чуть было не, 183.  
 чуть-чуть, 114.  
 чуть-чуть не, 114.  
 чують (*i.*), 156.  
 чьѣ, чьи, чья, 65.  
 чѣмъ, 64, 140.  
 чѣмъ (=than), 83.  
 шагомъ, 138, 197.  
 шагъ, 75.  
 шѣдши, 171.  
 шѣдшій, 172.  
 шѣль, 166, 171, 172.  
 шепнуть (*pf.*), 153,  
 218.  
 шептать (*i.*), 154,  
 218.  
 шея, 50.  
 ширина, 140 (cf. 84).  
 шить (*i.*), 156, 169.  
 шла, 166.  
 шлю, 150, 155, 215.  
 шмыгъ, 246.  
 шумѣть (*i.*), 159.  
 шью, 156.



щ-, 24, 40.	ѣсть ( <i>i.</i> ), 161, 169, 172, 214.	югъ, 136. юноша, 51.
ѣдá, 23.	ѣхать ( <i>i.</i> ), 138, 139, 161, 169, 223, 226, 227.	я, 58, 146. яблоко, 52, 132.
ѣдѣмъ, 161.	ѣшь, 161, 169.	явѣться ( <i>pf.</i> ), 217, 218.
ѣду, 23, 133, 162, 223, 226.	экипажъ, 46.	являться ( <i>i.</i> ), 217, 218.
ѣздить ( <i>i.</i> ), 223, 226, 227, 232.	эрмитажъ, 20.	яйцѣ, 52.
-ѣзжáть, 169, 226, 227, 232.	этакой, 64, 74.	яко-бы, 118.
-ѣзживать, 227, 232.	это, 206.	
ѣзжу, 35, 223, 226.	этотъ, 20, 62-64.	оптá, 18, 41.
ѣмъ, 23, 161.		

SUBJECT-INDEX

abbreviations (Russian)—сокращенія, 248.	attributive adjectives, 76, 77.
accent (stress, emphasis) = удареніе.	attributive comparative, 86.
accusative—винительный падежъ, 99, 100, 132-138.	augmentative nouns—и. <sup>1</sup> с. <sup>1</sup> увеличительныя, 58.
addressing letters, 15, 16.	
adjectival suffixes, 82, 83.	<i>be (to)</i> —быть, 106, 206.
adjectives—именá прилагательныя, 71-88.	
adverbs—нарѣчія, 104-114.	cards (names of)—карты, 97.
adverbs of degree and manner—нарѣчія образности качественной, 109-114, 250.	case=падежъ.
adverbs of place—н. мѣста, 106-108, 250.	Christian names—именá, 20, 27, 41, 51, 80, 81.
adverbs of quantity—н. образности количественной, 111-114, 250.	coins (names of)—монеты, 103.
adverbs of time—н. времени, 108, 109, 250.	collective numerals—н. <sup>2</sup> ч. <sup>2</sup> собирательныя, 96.
affection (terminations of)—и. <sup>1</sup> с. <sup>1</sup> ласкательныя, 58, 83.	comparative adjectives, 83-87, 121.
age (expression of)—вѣзраст, 102, 130, 134.	comparative adverbs, 114, 251.
alphabet—азбука, 12-14.	comparative degree—сравнительная степенъ, <i>v.</i> above.
anomalous verbs, 228-230.	compound imperfective verbs formed by change of accent, 221.
attribute = сказуемое.	conditional—условное (or соглаголательное) наклоненіе, 167, 189, 197.
	conjunctions—союзы, 115, 118, 180, 186, 188, 190.

<sup>1</sup> = именá существительныя.

<sup>2</sup> = именá числительныя.

- date (the)—число, 101, 121.  
 dative—дательный падежъ, 108, 128-132.  
 days of the week (the)—дни недѣли, 100, 132, 134.  
 definite pronouns—опредѣлительныя м.<sup>1</sup>, 67, 68.  
 demonstrative pronouns—указательныя м.<sup>1</sup>, 62-64, 249.  
 depreciation (terminations of)—и. с. унижительныя, 58.  
 diminutive nouns—и. с. уменьшительныя, 56, 57, 83.  
 dual (remains of the)—двойственное число, 47, 52, 91.
- family names—фамиліи, 25, 73, 74, 80; 81, 249.  
 feminine nouns—именá женскаго рода, 49-51, 53, 54, 56, 57.  
 food and drink—пища и питіе, 120, 129.  
 fractions—дроби, 97, 98.  
 future—будущее время, 167, 186-189, 200, 252.
- genitive — родительный падежъ, 47, 51, 52, 83, 91, 93, 98, 99, 101, 120-128.  
 gerunds—дѣепричастія, 170, 171, 199, 200.
- have (to)*, 124, 157.
- imperative — повелительное наклоненіе, 168, 169, 192-194, 251.  
 imperfective compound verbs, 219, 220.  
 imperfective verbs—глаголы несовершеннаго вида, 176ff., 209 ff.  
 impersonal verbs, 129, 204-206.
- indeclinable nouns, 249.  
 indeclinable participles, *v.* gerunds.  
 indefinite pronouns—неопредѣленные м.<sup>1</sup>, 68-71, 249.  
 infinitive — неопредѣленное наклоненіе от инфинитивъ, 170, 195-198, 245, 252.  
 instrumental — творительный падежъ, 138-143, 202.  
 interjections—междометія, 245.  
 interrogative pronouns—вопросительныя м.<sup>1</sup>, 64-67.  
 irregular verbs, 161, 162, 165, 166, 169.
- locative — предложный падежъ, 47, 143-145.
- masculine nouns—именá мужскаго рода, 45-49, 56, 57.  
 measures—мѣры, 140, 247.  
 money—деньги, 91, 94, 103, 104.  
 months (names of the) — мѣсяцы, 101, 131.
- names (personal)—именá личные, 51, 73, 74, 80, 81.  
 nationalities—народности, 48; 56, 74, 76, 144.  
 negations — отрицанія, 117, 122, 207.  
 neuter nouns—именá среднего рода, 51-55.  
 nominal suffixes, 56-58.  
 nominative — именительный падежъ, 90, 91, 120.  
 notes (money)—бумажки, 104.  
 nouns—именá существительныя, 44-58.  
 numbers (the), 88, 89.  
 numerals—именá числительныя, 88-104.

<sup>1</sup> = мѣстоименія.

- object=дополнѣніе.  
*one* (French *on*, German *man*), 252.
- participles—причѣстія, 172-175, 200-202, 251.
- passive—страдательный залогъ, 202-204.
- past—прошедшее время, 162-166, 182-186, 201.
- patronymics—отчества, 57, 80, 81.
- perfective simple verbs, 217-219.
- perfective verbs—глаголы совершеннаго вида, 176 ff., 209 ff.
- personal names, *v.* names.
- personal pronouns—личныя мѣстоимѣнія, 58, 60, 146.
- plural=множественное число.
- possessive adjectives—и.<sup>1</sup> п.<sup>1</sup> притяжательныя, 80, 249.
- possessive pronouns—притяжательныя м.<sup>2</sup>, 60, 61.
- predicate=сказуемое.
- predicative comparative, 83-85.
- predicative instrumental—творительный предикативный, 141, 142.
- prepositional prefixes—предлоги-приставки, 231-244.
- prepositions—предлоги, 118-145.
- present—настоящее время, 147-162, 179-182.
- price—цѣна, 104, 112, 130, 132, 134, 145.
- pronouns—мѣстоимѣнія, 58-71.
- questions—вопросы, 116, 117, 197, 207.
- reflexive pronoun—возвратное мѣстоимѣніе, 58, 59.
- reflexive verbs—возвратный залогъ, 175, 176, 202, 203.
- relationships—родство, 246.
- relative pronouns—относительныя мѣстоимѣнія, 64-67.
- seasons—времена года, 130, 139.
- simple imperfective verbs with two forms, 221-228.
- singular=единственное число.
- stamps—марки, 104.
- subject=подлежащее.
- subordinate sentences—придаточныя предложѣнія, 180, 186, 188-191, 198, 251.
- subordinative conjunctions, 118, 180, 186, 188, 251.
- substantival suffixes, *v.* nominal.
- substantives, *v.* nouns.
- superlative adjectives, 87, 88, 234.
- superlative adverbs, 113, 114.
- superlative degree=превосходная стѣпень.
- surnames, *v.* family names.
- terminations=окончанія.
- terminations of adjectives, 82, 83.
- terminations of substantives, 55-58.
- time of day—часъ, 75, 98-100, 134, 139, 144.
- times of the year, *v.* seasons.
- towns (names of)—города, 21, 29, 33, 127, 249.
- verbs—глаголы, 146-230.
- vocative (remains of the)—звательный падежъ, 49.
- weather—погода, 75, 204.
- weights—вѣсы, 97, 98, 247.
- wishes—желанія, 66, 68, 121, 170, 192, 193, 245.

<sup>1</sup> = имена прилагательныя.<sup>2</sup> = мѣстоимѣнія.

PRINTED IN ENGLAND  
AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

# OXFORD RUSSIAN PLAIN TEXTS

New Series under the general editorship of

NEVILL FORBES

Crown 8vo, limp cloth. In clear type.

'It is impossible to praise too highly the series of Russian Plain Texts. . . . Printed on excellent paper . . . in a type which should one day be universal in Russia and which in the Oxford editions is very much more readable than any other type, large or small, that we have seen; short works by all the great Russian authors in prose and verse have either appeared or are in preparation.'—*Journal of Education*.

'Show what exquisite printing in Russian type can be done in England . . . should be in the hands of all students of Russian.'—*The Times*.

(Of Tolstoy's *Prisoner of the Caucasus*, annotated). 'A model little reader for beginners. . . . The notes and glossary are ideal.'—*Daily Mail*.

---

**Leo Tolstóy.** *A Prisoner of the Caucasus*, edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD. Pp. 64. 1s. 6d. net. Also with introduction, notes, and vocabulary, by E. G. UNDERWOOD and NEVILL FORBES. Pp. xxxvi + 128. 2s. 6d. net.

**Turgénev.** *Pegasus, Biryúk, Forest and Steppe*, edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD and NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 56. 1s. 6d. net.

**Púshkin.** *The Queen of Spades*, edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD. Pp. 64. 1s. 6d. net.

**Gógol.** *An Old-World Country-House*, edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 64. 1s. 6d. net.

**Dostoévski.** *A Christmas-Tree and a Wedding, An Honest Thief*, edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 64. 1s. 6d. net.

**Saltykóv.** *Pilgrims and Wayfarers, Bygone Times* (from the *Provincial Sketches*), edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 80. 1s. 9d. net.

**Koroíénko.** *In the Night, Easter Eve*, edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 96. 1s. 9d. net.

**Goncharóv.** *Men-servants of Other Days*, edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 80. 1s. 9d. net.

**Krilóv.** *Select Fables*, edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD. Pp. 62. 1s. 6d. net.

**Lérmontov.** *Selected Poems*, edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD. Pp. 64. 1s. 6d. net.

Editions of the above will also be issued with introductions, notes and vocabularies. Other volumes by Grigoróvich, Gárshin, Aksákov, Gleb Uspénski, Púshkin, and Chékhov are in preparation.

[August 1919]

## BOOKS BY NEVILL FORBES

**Russian Grammar.** Second edition, revised and enlarged with indexes. 6s. net.

'Admirably suited for its purpose.'—*Athenaeum*.

'Practical as well as scholarly.'—*Manchester Guardian*.

'The fullest and most scientific of these books is Mr. Forbes's *Russian Grammar*. Mr. Forbes has a wide experience of Slavonic languages; their pronunciation.'—*Modern Language Review*.

**Serbian Grammar.** By DRAGUTIN SUBOTIĆ and NEVILL FORBES. 7s. 6d. net.

'This work will prove of great assistance to those desirous of acquiring the language . . . There should be increasing demand for such a volume as the present one.'—*Asiatic Review*.

'A great difficulty with beginners is the accent. Throughout the grammar the Serbian words are marked with their appropriate accents so that blunders of pronunciation can be avoided. . . . The grammar includes a large quantity of helpful examples, and is very clear on all difficult points.'—*Balkan News*.

**First Russian Book.** Second edition. A Practical Manual of Russian Declensions. The case-endings and vocabularies, with phonetic transcription and easy phrases. 3s. net.

'This admirably arranged manual by an accomplished philologist meets the needs of the beginner in Russian in a thoroughly adequate way. Difficulties are not shirked, and real help is afforded.'—*Journal of Education*.

'Original and useful to the student in that it treats the language with reference to touching the complicated question of the verb.'—*Modern Language Review*.

**Second Russian Book.** Second edition. A Practical Manual of Russian Verbs. The most important verbs with full phonetic transcription and numerous examples of their use. 3s. 6d. net.

Deals with the verb on the same principle as the First Book with reference to case-endings, and is so planned that those who prefer to begin Russian by learning the verb can start with this book and use the other as a supplement.

**Third Russian Book.** Extracts from Aksákov, Grigoróv, Hérlen, and Saltykóv, edited with full foot-notes and complete vocabularies. 3s. net.

A reading-book adapted for use with the Russian Grammar and the First and Second Russian Books. The selections are graduated in difficulty and the vocabulary and notes make it possible to read the book without the aid of any other volumes than the above.

'The notes are scholarly and are just what is wanted by an intelligent student, and the vocabulary is quite full enough to enable the learner to dispense with a larger dictionary.'—*Journal of Education*.

'Mr. Forbes supplies a capital and varied collection of fine literature.'—*Glasgow Herald*.

**Fourth Russian Book.** Russian and English Exercises, Specially designed for use with the above volumes, including examples of Russian correspondence. Part I, English into Russian Exercises. 2s. 6d. Now ready. Part II, Russian into English Exercises. In preparation.

P.H. 2317145

Two Volumes in the New Series of Histories of the Nations

ussia. A History fr  
C. RAYMOND  
th six maps.  
and away th  
come across  
an intelligi  
elopment of  
k should be  
e welcome t  
posed book.  
e Balkan  
mania, Turke  
EARTH. Wit  
most valuable  
he Balkan pe  
just and san  
n the write  
plement.  
A worthy re  
ch the seriou  
ducation.  
ch a compa  
the writers'  
importance.  
ree Lect  
vonic Langu  
Short Hi  
, with eight  
mply and suc  
really good e  
es its facts n  
A. RE

165217  
Forbes, Nevill  
Russian grammar. 2d ed.  
LaR.Gr  
F6943r

University of Toronto  
Library

---

DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET

ms  
S. Curtin 538

---

Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

First Rus  
h English n  
own 8vo, cloth, pp. 66.  
ill enable the student to obtain an excellent knowledge of the Russian  
guage.'—*The Schoolmaster*.  
ne notes to these short extracts are precisely what the learner needs.'—  
*Journal of Education*.

